





0. 22-118 of ...
years after first use of
copy - Arnold, Thomas Kerchever

ARNOLD'S

FIRST LATIN BOOK;

REMODELLED AND REWRITTEN,

AND ADAPTED TO THE

OLLENDORFF METHOD OF INSTRUCTION

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS

SENIOR MASTER IN THE PROVIDENCE HIGH SCHOOL.

SIXTEENTH EDITION.

NEW-YORK:

D APPLETON & COMPANY,

346 & 348 BROADWAY.

M.DCCC.LVII.

(1867-2)

PA 2087
A68
1857

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1851, by
D. APPLETON & COMPANY,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of New-York.

486555

AUG - 4 1942

508-43

P R E F A C E.

ARNOLD'S *First and Second Latin Book* was introduced to the American public some five years since, under the editorial care of Professor Spencer. As the system was, at that time, quite new in this country, and comparatively so in England, the American editor did not think it best "to make any material alteration in the original work." The marked favor with which the volume was at once received, and the almost unprecedented success which has since attended it, are a sufficient proof of its excellence. The test of the class-room and the improved methods of instruction have, however, convinced teachers that, with many rare merits, and with a general plan most happily adapted to the wants of the beginner in Latin, it was still, in some important respects, quite incomplete in its execution and details. The present volume, undertaken at the request of the publishers, is the result of an attempt to remove these defects, and thus to render

the work worthy of yet higher favor and success. The entire book has been rewritten and many important additions have been made.

The Latin of the *First and Second Latin Book* has been retained, so far as consistent with our purpose; but as it has been found necessary to add many new selections, care has been taken to secure pure classic Latin, by resorting exclusively to the pages of Caesar and Cicero.

In the preparation of this book, it has been a leading object with the editor, so to classify and arrange the various topics as to *simplify*, and, as far as possible, to *remove* the disheartening difficulties too often encountered by the learner at the very outset in the study of an ancient language. He has accordingly endeavored so to present each new subject as to enable the beginner fully to master it, before he is called upon to perplex himself with its more difficult combinations. The lessons have been prepared with constant reference to the Ollendorff method of instruction, while, at the same time, special pains have been taken to present a complete and systematic outline, both of the grammatical forms and of the elementary principles of the language. An effort has thus been made to combine the respective advantages of two systems, distinct in themselves, but by no means inconsistent with each other.

In the earlier portions of the book, the exercises for translation consist of two paragraphs of Latin sentences and two of English,

the first of each being designed to illustrate the particular topic which chances to be the subject of the lesson, and the second to furnish miscellaneous examples on the various subjects already learned. Thus each lesson becomes at once an *advance* and a *review*.

For convenience of reference and for the purposes of general review, a summary of Paradigms and an outline of Syntax have been appended to the lessons. The Syntax will be found, it is hoped, to be an improvement, at least in point of classification and arrangement, upon that ordinarily presented in Latin Grammars. In a Second Latin Book, now in preparation—being at once a Reader and an Exercise Book—the editor contemplates a fuller development and illustration of the Latin Syntax, in a series of exercises on the principle of *analysis* and *synthesis*.

The present volume, as already intimated, has been prepared *mainly* from Arnold's *First and Second Latin Book*; the editor has, however, had before him numerous other works of a kindred character, from some of which he has derived valuable aid. Among these may be mentioned, in addition to the various Latin Grammars in use in this country and in England, Allen's *New Latin Delectus*; *Analysis of Latin Verbs*, by the same author; and Pinnock's *First Latin Grammar*; together with numerous other elementary works, among which the editor is happy to specify the *First Latin Book*, by Professors M'Clintock and Crooks.

Professor Spencer's edition of Arnold's *Latin Prose Compo-*

sition, one of the volumes of the excellent Classical Series published by the Messrs. Appleton, has been consulted with much advantage.

For valuable assistance in the preparation of the Syntax, the editor is happy to acknowledge his indebtedness to Greene's Analysis of the English Language.

A. HARKNESS.

Providence, July 16, 1851

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION.

PRONUNCIATION.

	Page
I. Letters	1
II. Syllables	2
III. Quantity	2
IV. Accentuation	2
V. Sounds of the Letters	3
i. The Continental Method	3
ii. The English Method	4

LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

Lesson.		
I.	Parts of Speech.—Proposition.—Subject.—Predicate	7
II.	Verbs.—First Conjugation	8
III.	First Conjugation—continued	11
IV.	Second Conjugation	12
V.	Third Conjugation	14
VI.	Fourth Conjugation	16
VII.	Four Conjugations.—Plural Number	17
VIII.	Nouns.—Nominative Case	19
IX.	Nominative Case—continued	23
X.	Vocative Case	24
XI.	Apposition.—Modified Subject	26
XII.	Genitive Case.—Modified Subject	27
XIII.	Accusative Case.—Direct Object of Predicate	31
XIV.	Accusative—continued.—Adverbial Modifiers	34
XV.	Dative Case.—Indirect Object of Predicate	35
XVI.	Ablative Case.—Modified Predicate	38
XVII.	First Declension	40
XVIII.	Second Declension.—Nouns in <i>ūs</i> and <i>ūm</i>	43

Less. L	Page.
XIX. Second Declension.—Nouns in <i>ěr</i> and <i>ěr</i>	46
XX. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension	47
XXI. First and Second Declension—continued	51
XXII. First and Second Declension, continued.—Price, Value, and Degree of Estimation	53
XXIII. Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class I.	55
XXIV. Third Declension.—Class II.	58
XXV. Third Declension.—Class III.	60
XXVI. Third Declension.—Class IV.	63
XXVII. Third Declension.—Genitives in <i>iŭm</i> .—Gender	66
XXVIII. Third Declension.—Formation of Cases from each other	68
XXIX. Adjectives.—Third Declension	71
XXX. Adjectives, continued.—Nouns.—Fourth Declension	75
XXXI. Nouns.—Fifth Declension	78
XXXII. Five Declensions.—Greek Nouns.—Gender	81
XXXIII. Verbs.— <i>Esse</i> , to be.—Predicate, <i>Essě</i> with a Noun or an Adjective	85
XXXIV. Infinitive as Subject.—Genitive with <i>Essě</i> in the Pre- dicate	87
XXXV. Tenses for Completed Action.—First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations	90
XXXVI. Third Conjugation.—Class I.— <i>Second Root the same as the First</i>	93
XXXVII. Third Conjugation.—Class II.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i>	96
XXXVIII. Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i>	97
XXXIX. Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.— <i>Second Root formed by adding s to the First</i>	100
XL. Formation of the Second Root.—First Irregularity— <i>Radical Vowel lengthened (and often changed)</i>	103
XLI. Formation of the Second Root.—Second Irregularity— <i>Reduplication</i>	105
XLII. Formation of the Second Root.—Third Irregularity— <i>Second Root after the analogy of other conjugations</i>	107
XLIII. Subjunctive Mood	110
XLIV. Subjunctive Mood.—Purpose	113
XLV. Persons of Verbs.—Indicative Mood.—First Conjugation	115
XLVI. Indicative Mood.—Four Conjugations.—Personal Pro- nouns	119
XLVII. Subjunctive Mood.—Four Conjugations	123

Lesson.	Page.
XLVIII. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Verbs in <i>iš</i> of the Third Conjugation.—Demonstrative Pronouns	127
XLIX. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Intensive Pronoun	130
L. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns	132
LI. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Interrogative Particles	134
LII. Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Indefinite and Possessive Pronouns	136
LIII. Verb <i>Essě</i> , to be	138
LIV. Verb <i>Essě</i> , continued.—Comparison of Adjectives	142
LV. Compounds of <i>Essě</i> .—Comparison of Adverbs.—Numerical Adjectives	145
LVI. Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Continued Action	148
LVII. Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Completed Action	151
LVIII. Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice	154
LIX. Subjunctive Mood of the Passive Voice	158
LX. Imperative Mood—Active and Passive	160
LXI. Infinitive Mood	163
LXII. Participles.—Ablative Absolute	166
LXIII. Gerunds and Supines	169
LXIV. Participle in <i>dūs</i>	172
LXV. First Conjugation	174
LXVI. Second Conjugation	175
LXVII. Third Conjugation	176
LXVIII. Fourth Conjugation	177
LXIX. Verbs with the Dative.—Indirect Object	180
LXX. Deponent Verbs	180
LXXI. Irregular Verbs.— <i>Possě, Vellě, Nollě, Mallě</i>	182
LXXII. Irregular Verbs, continued.— <i>Ferrě, Fiērī</i>	185
LXXIII. Irregular Verbs, continued.— <i>Irě, Edērě</i>	189
LXXIV. Periphrastic Conjugations	191
LXXV. Impersonal Verbs	193
LXXVI. Impersonal Periphrastic	195
LXXVII. Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Prepositions	197
LXXVIII. Conjunctions	199
LXXIX. Subjunctive Mood with <i>ūt, ně, quō</i>	201

Lesson.	Page.
LXXX. Subjunctive with <i>quōmānūs</i> , <i>quān</i> , and other Conjunctions	203
LXXXI. Interrogative Sentences	205
LXXXII. Conditional Sentences.—Subjunctive in Relative Clauses and with <i>quām</i>	207
LXXXIII. Participles	209
LXXXIV. Participles, continued	212
LXXXV. Derivation of Nouns	215
LXXXVI. Derivation of Adjectives	217
LXXXVII. Derivation of Verbs and Adverbs	219
LXXXVIII. Composition of Words	222

PARADIGMS, &c.

1. Nouns.—Endings of Genitive Singular	227
2. Gender	227
3. First Declension	227
4. Second Declension	228
5. Third Declension	229
6. Fourth Declension	232
7. Fifth Declension	233
8. Case-Endings of Substantives	233
9. Table of Genders	234
10. Adjectives.—First and Second Declension	235
11. Third Declension	236
12. Comparison of Adjectives	238
13. Numerals	238
14. Substantive Pronouns	239
15. Adjective Pronouns	239
16. Verbs.— <i>Essē</i>	241
17. Infinitive Endings	243
18. First Conjugation	243
19. Second Conjugation	245
20. Third Conjugation	247
21. Fourth Conjugation	250
22. Formation of Second Root	252
23. Deponent Verbs	252
24. Irregular Verbs	252
25. Periphrastic Conjugations	257
26. Impersonal Verbs	257

SYNTAX.

	Page.
Introduction	259

CHAPTER I.

Essential Elements of Sentences.—Subject and Predicate.

Section I. Subject	260
“ II. Predicate	260

CHAPTER II.

Subordinate Elements.—Modifiers.

Section I. Use of Modifiers	262
“ II. Modifiers of Nouns	262
“ III. Modifiers of Adjectives	263
“ IV. Modifiers of Verbs	264
“ “ § I. Objects	265
“ “ § II. Adverbial Modifiers	268
“ V. Modifiers of Adverbs	271

CHAPTER III.

<i>Use of Moods, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines</i>	271
--	-----

DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM	275
CAUTIONS	277
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	279
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	291

EXPLANATIONS.

The small numerals above the line in the Exercises refer to *Differences of Idiom*, page 275; the small letters to *Cautions*, page 277.

The numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to articles in the body of the work.

In the Exercises, words connected by hyphens are to be rendered **into Latin** by a single word; as, *natural-to-man*, hūmānūs; *it-is*, est, &c.

INTRODUCTION.

PRONUNCIATION.

THE two Methods, the Continental and the English, which at present prevail in the pronunciation of Latin, differ from each other chiefly in the sounds of the vowels; we shall accordingly first state the settled principles in which they agree (as accent, quantity, &c.), and then present the vowel sounds of each separately, hoping, however, that, in this country, the Continental Method will soon commend itself to general favor. With the important merit of uniform consistency, it is, at the same time, the only pronunciation intelligible on the Continent of Europe, the very place where the American scholar will most need his Latin as a medium of communication.

I. LETTERS.

The Latin Language has six characters, or letters, representing vowel sounds, and nineteen representing consonant sounds.

REM. 1. The vowel sounds are *a, e, i, o, u,* and *y*; the consonants are the same as in English, with the omission of *w*, which is not used in Latin.

REM. 2. Two vowels sometimes unite in sound, and form a diphthong, as in English; e. g., *æ* in *Cæsar*.

REM. 3. *X* and *z** are called double consonants; *l, m, n,* and *r,* liquids, and the other consonants, with the exception of *h* and *s,* mutes.

* *X* is equivalent to *cs* or *gs*, and *z* to *ds*.

II. SYLLABLES.

In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words, *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade*, are pronounced; not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus, *mo-re*, *vi-ce*, *a-cu-te*, *per-sua-de*.

III. QUANTITY.

Syllables are, in *quantity* or *length*, either *long*, *short*, or *common* (i. e. sometimes long and sometimes short).

1. A syllable is *long* in quantity :

1) When it contains a *diphthong*, as the first syllable of *cædo*.

2) When its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any *two consonants*, except a *mute* followed by a *liquid*; as the second syllables of *erexit* and *magister*.

2. A syllable is *short*, when its vowel is followed by another vowel, or a diphthong, as the second syllable of *indies*.

REM. The letter *h* does not affect the quantity of the preceding vowel.

The quantity of syllables, when not determined by these rules, will be indicated in the vocabularies (and, in some instances, in the exercises) by the dash — when *long*, by the curve ~ when *short*, and by the two together ≈ when *common*.

IV. ACCENTUATION.

1. The primary (or principal) accent, or stress of voice, is placed :

1) In words of two syllables, always on the first; as, *ho'mo*, a man.

2) In words of more than two syllables, on the *penult* (the last syllable but one), if that is *long* in quantity; otherwise on the *antepenult* (the last syllable but two); as, *rādī'cīs*, *con'sūlīs*.

2. An additional accent is placed on each second syllable preceding the *primary* accent; as, *dē'mon'strātūr*.

V. SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

I. THE CONTINENTAL METHOD.*

1. *The Sounds of the Vowels.*

The Continental sounds of the vowels are as follows:—

a	ä in <i>father</i> ; e. g.,	ārīs.
e	} 1. ā in <i>made</i> ; e. g., 2. ě in <i>met</i> ; e. g.,	ēdīt. āmět.
i		ē in <i>me</i> ; e. g.,
o	} 1. ō in <i>no</i> ; e. g., 2. ǒ in <i>nor</i> ; e. g.,	ōrā. āmör.
u		ó in <i>do</i> ; e. g.,
y	ē in <i>me</i> ; e. g.,	nŷmphā.

REM. *Y* is used only in words derived from the Greek.

These sounds are uniformly the same in all situations, except as modified by *quantity* and *accent*, (III. and IV.)

2. *The Sounds of the Diphthongs.*

æ and œ . . .	ā in <i>made</i> ; e. g.,	ætās, coelŷm.
au	ou in <i>out</i> ; e. g.,	aurŷm.

REM. The vowels in *ei* and *eu* are generally pronounced separately

* For the Continental Pronunciation the editor is indebted to the kindness of Mr. George W. Greene, Instructor in Modern Languages in Brown University.

3. *The Sounds of the Consonants.*

The pronunciation of the consonants is nearly the same as in English, though it varies somewhat in different countries.

II. THE ENGLISH METHOD.

1. *The Sounds of the Vowels* *

In the English method, the vowels generally have the long or short English sounds: the length of the sound, however, is not dependent upon the quantity of the vowel, but must be determined by its situation or accent.

(a) In all *monosyllables*, vowels have

- 1) The *long* sound if at the end of the word; as, *si, re.*
- 2) The *short* sound if followed by a consonant; as, *sit, rem*; except *post, monosyllables* in *es*, and *plural cases* in *os*; as, *hos* (a plural case).

(b) In an *accented penult*, vowels have

- 1) The *long* sound before a vowel, diphthong, single consonant, or a mute followed by *l, r, or h*; as, *deus, pater, patres*; except *tibi* and *sibi*.
- 2) The *short* sound before a double consonant, or any two single consonants except a mute followed by *l, r, or h*; as, *bellum, rexit*.

(c) In any *accented syllable* except the penult, vowels have

- 1) The *long* sound before a vowel or diphthong; as *e* in *éadem*.

* The system of vowel sounds here presented is the same as that given in Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and, like that, is based upon Walker's Key to the Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names. The *rules*, however, unlike those of Andrews and Stoddard, are so prepared as to show the sounds of the vowels, in all their various situations, independently of the division of words into syllables. This, it is hoped, will facilitate their application.

2) The *short* sound before a consonant; as *o* in *dēminus*: except,

a) *U* before a single consonant, or a mute followed by *r* or *h* (and perhaps *l*); as, *Pūnicus*, *salūbritas*.

b) *A*, *e*, and *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute before *l*, *r*, or *h*), followed by *e* or *i* before another vowel; as, *dóceo*, *ácria*.

(d) In all *unaccented syllables*, vowels have the *short* sound; as, *cantámus*, *vígilat*: except,

1) Final *a* in words of more than one syllable. This has the sound of *ah*, as in the word *America*; e. g., *musa* (*musah*).

2) Final syllables in *i* (except *tibi* and *sibi*), *es*, and *os*, in *plural cases*; as, *hómini*, *dies*, *illos* (a plural case).

3) The first syllable of words accented on the second, when the first either begins with an *i* followed by a single consonant, or contains *i* before a vowel; as, *diēbus*, *irátus*.

REM. *E*, *o*, and *u*, unaccented before a vowel, diphthong, a single consonant, or a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h*, are not quite as short in sound as the other vowels in the same situations.

2. *The Sounds of the Diphthongs.*

Æ and œ, like *e* in the same situation; e. g., *Cæsar*, *Daédalus*.

Au, as in the English, *author*; e. g., *aurum*.

Eu, " " *neuter*; e. g., *neuter* (both Eng. and Latin).

Ei, as in the English, *height*; e. g., *dein*.

Oi, " " *coin*; e. g., *proin*.

REM. 1. The vowels in *ei* and *oi* are generally pronounced separately.

REM. 2. A few other combinations seem sometimes to be used as

diphthongs. *U* is always the first element of these combinations, and has then the sound of *w*; as, *suade* = *swade*: except, *Ui* in *huic*, and *cui*, which has the sound of long *ī*.

3. *The Sounds of the Consonants.*

The consonants are pronounced nearly as in English; *c* and *g*, however, are soft before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *œ*, and hard in other situations: *ch* is always hard, like *k*; as, *charta* (*kartah*).

FIRST LATIN BOOK.

LESSON I.

Parts of Speech.—Proposition.—Subject.—Predicate.

1. IN Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*, viz.: *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

2. These parts of speech, either singly or combined, form *propositions* or *sentences*; as, *ămās*, thou lovest; *puër lūdīt*, the boy plays.

3. Every proposition, however simple, consists of two parts: (1.) the *subject*, or the person or thing of which it speaks; and, (2.) the *predicate*, or that which is said of the subject: thus, in the proposition, *puër lūdīt*, *puër* (the boy) is the subject of which the proposition speaks, and *lūdīt* (plays) is the predicate which is affirmed of the subject.

4. In Latin the subject is often omitted, because the form of the predicate shows what subject is meant; thus the proposition *ămās*, thou lovest, consists in Latin of a single word, because the ending *ās*, of *ămās*, shows (as we shall see by and by) that the subject cannot be *I, he, or they*, but must be *thou*.

5. When a proposition thus consists of a single word, that word is always a *verb*; e. g., *ămăt*, he loves.

6. The *analysis* of a proposition consists in separating it into its elements.

EXAMPLE 1.—Proposition, *Puēr* (the boy) *lūdīt* (plays).

Puēr (the boy) is the *subject*, because it is that of which the proposition speaks (3). *Lūdīt* (plays) is the *predicate*, because it is that which is said of the subject (3).

EXAMPLE 2.—Proposition, *Amās* (thou lovest).

Amās is the *predicate*, because it is that which is said of the subject. *Thou*, the subject in English, is omitted in Latin, because the ending *ās*, of the predicate *āmās*, fully implies it.

7. Exercise in Analysis.*

Puellă (the girl) *cantăt* (sings). *Puēr* (the boy) *lūdēt* (will play). *Pătēr* (the father) *vīdēbīt* (will see). *Mătēr* (the mother) *rīdēbăt* (was laughing). *Currēbăt* (he was running). *Cantābīt* (he will sing). *Lūdēbăt* (he was playing). *Arābăt* (he was ploughing).

LESSON II.

Verbs.—First Conjugation.

8. A VERB expresses *existence, condition, or action* (generally the *existence, condition, or action* of some *person*

* These propositions are to be analyzed according to the examples just given. The object is twofold: first, to fix definitely the distinction between *subject* and *predicate*; and, secondly, to show the learner that when the subject is a personal pronoun (English, *I, thou, he, &c.*), it is generally omitted in Latin. The use of the pronoun to express *emphasis* or *contrast* will be considered in another place.

or *thing*, called its *subject*): as, *est*, he is; *dormīt*, he sleeps (is sleeping, or is asleep); *āmāt*, he loves.

9. When a verb expresses simply its *meaning*, without reference to any person or thing, as *āmārē*, to love, it is said to be in the *Infinitive Mood*.

10. When a verb expresses its meaning in the form of an *assertion* or *question*, referring to its subject, as *āmāt*, he loves, it is said to be in the *Indicative Mood*.*

11. A verb may represent its subject,

1) As acting in *present* time; as, *āmāt*, he loves. It is then said to be in the *Present Tense*.

2) As acting in *past* time; as, *āmābāt*, he was loving. It is then said to be in the *Imperfect Tense*.

3) As acting in *future* time (i. e., about to act); as, *āmābīt*, he will love. It is then said to be in the *Future Tense*.*

12. A verb may represent its subject,

1) As *speaking of himself*; as, *āmō*, I love, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *First Person*.

2) As *spoken to*; as, *āmās*, thou lovest, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Second Person*.

3) As *spoken of*; as, *āmāt*, he loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Third Person*.

13. A verb may represent its subject,

1) As consisting of *only one* person or thing; as, *āmāt*, he, she, or it loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Singular Number*.

* The other *moods* and *tenses* will be noticed in another place.

2) As consisting of *more than one* person or thing; as, *āmant*, they love; and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Plural Number*.

14. Every verb consists of two parts, viz.:

1) *The Root*, or that part of the verb which remains unchanged throughout the various moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; as, *ām* in *āmārē*, *āmō*, *āmāt*, and *āmābīt*.

2) *The Endings* which are added to this root, to form the moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; thus, in the forms just noticed—viz., *āmārē*, *āmō*, *āmāt*, and *āmābīt*—the endings are, *ārē*, *ō*, *āt*, and *ābīt*.

15. Some verbs have the *infinitive* in *ārē*; as, *āmārē*, to love. These are said to be of

The First Conjugation.

16. In verbs of this conjugation,

1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ārē*; as, *āmārē*; root, *ām*.

2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
āt,	ābāt,	ābīt.

PARADIGM.

Amārē, to love: root, *ām*.

Present. Am-āt, he, she, or it loves (or, is loving).

Imperfect. Am-ābāt, “ “ “ was loving.

Future. Am-ābīt, “ “ “ will love (will be loving).

17. VOCABULARY.

<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>	<i>Key-words.*</i>
Amără,	to love	(<i>amorous</i>).
Arără,	to plough	(<i>arable</i>).
Cantără,	to sing	(<i>canto</i>).
Lăbărără,	to labor	(<i>labor</i>).
Vigilără,	to watch	(<i>vigilant</i>).

18. *Exercise.*

1. Labōrat.† 2. Cantat. 3. Arat. 4. Arābat.
 5. Amābat. 6. Vigilābat. 7. Vigilābit. 8. Cantābit.
 9. Laborābit. 10. Vigilat. 11. Laborābat. 12. Amā-
 bit. 13. Amat. 14. Cantābat. 15. Arābit.

LESSON III.

First Conjugation—continued.

19. VOCABULARY.

Ambulără,	to walk	(<i>ambulatory</i>).
Jurără,	to swear.	
Pugnără,	to fight	(<i>pugnacious</i>).
Saltără,	to dance.	
Spērără,	to hope.	
Vocără,	to call	(<i>vocation</i>).

* These Key-words, derived from the Latin, are introduced partly as a key or help to the learner, in fixing the meaning of the Latin, and partly as specimens of English derivatives of Latin origin.

† The subject of each of these verbs may be, in English, either *he*, *she*, or *it*. The ending, *at*, shows the number and person of the subject, but not its gender (see Paradigm). When the subject is thus omitted in Latin, we can usually determine from the connection which subject to use, just as in English we determine the meaning of the pronoun *they*, which may represent either *things* or *persons*, and either *males* or *females*. In these exercises the pupil may use *he* as the subject.

20. In English, the *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons* of verbs are indicated by certain *words* or *signs*; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>He</i> loves,	<i>He was</i> loving,	<i>He will</i> love.

In Latin, however, no such *signs* are used; but their place is supplied by the *endings* of the verb. Hence, in translating English into Latin, omit these signs and express the *tense*, *number*, and *person* of the verb by the *proper endings*; e. g.:

	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Eng. <i>He</i> loves,	<i>He was</i> loving,	<i>He will</i> love.	
Lat. Amat,	Amābat,	Amābit.	

21. Exercises.

(a) 1. Saltat. 2. Cantat. 3. Ambūlat. 4. Ambulābat. 5. Jurābat. 6. Vocābat. 7. Sperābat. 8. Sperābit. 9. Ambulābit. 10. Saltābit. 11. Jurat. 12. Cantābat. 13. Vocat. 14. Laborābat. 15. Jurābit.

(b) 1. He calls. 2. He is ploughing. 3. He hopes. 4. He swears. 5. He is laboring. 6. He was laboring. 7. He was walking. 8. He was dancing. 9. He was singing. 10. He was ploughing. 11. He will plough. 12. He will call. 13. He will swear. 14. He will hope. 15. He will labor. 16. He is walking. 17. He was hoping. 18. He will walk. 19. He dances. 20. He was fighting. 21. He will sing.

LESSON IV.

Verbs.—Second Conjugation.

22. SOME Verbs have the *infinitive* in *ērē*; as, *mōnērē*, to advise. These are said to be of

The Second Conjugation.

23. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ērě* ; as, *mōnērě* ; root, *mōn*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings* :

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
ēt,	ēbāt,	ēbīt.

PARADIGM.

Mōnērě, to advise : root, *mōn*.

Present.	Mōn-ēt,	he, she, or it	advises (is advising).
Imperfect.	Mōn-ēbāt,	“ “	“ was advising.
Future.	Mōn-ēbīt,	“ “	“ will advise.

24. VOCABULARY.

Dōcērě,	to teach	(<i>docile</i>).
Dōlērě,	to grieve	(<i>doleful</i>).
Flērě,	to weep.	
Mānērě,	to remain.	
Mōvērě,	to move	(<i>move</i>).
Nērě,	to spin.	
Respondērě,	to answer	(<i>respond</i>).
Rīdērě,	to laugh	(<i>ridicule</i>).
Tīmērě,	to fear, to be afraid	(<i>timid</i>).

25. *Exercises.*

- (a) 1. Ridet. 2. Docet. 3. Respondet. 4. Dolet.
 5. Dolēbat. 6. Nebat. 7. Flebat. 8. Manēbat. 9. Movēbat.
 10. Movēbit. 11. Dolēbit. 12. Docēbit. 13. Respondēbit.
 14. Ridēbit. 15. Movet. 16. Docēbat. 17. Manēbit.
 18. Flet. 19. Ridēbat. 20. Nebit.

21. Pugnāt. 22. Manet. 23. Pugnābat. 24. Manēbat. 25. Pugnābit. 26. Manēbit. 27. Cantat. 28. Timet. 29. Saltābat. 30. Respondēbat. 31. Ambulābit. 32. Timēbit. 33. Labōrat. 34. Movet. 35. Saltābat. 36. Docēbat. 37. Vocābit. 38. Dolēbit.

(b) 1. He remains. 2. He moves. 3. He weeps. 4. He spins. 5. He was spinning. 6. He was laughing. 7. He was teaching. 8. He was grieving. 9. He was answering. 10. He will answer. 11. He will weep. 12. He will remain. 13. He will spin. 14. He is laughing. 15. He was weeping. 16. He will teach. 17. He teaches. 18. He was moving. 19. He will laugh.

20. He dances. 21. He laughs. 22. He was calling. 23. He was weeping. 24. He walks. 25. He answers. 26. He was ploughing. 27. He was laughing. 28. He will sing. 29. He will move.

LESSON V.

Verbs.—Third Conjugation.

26. SOME verbs have the *infinitive* in *ĕrĕ*; as, *rĕgĕrĕ*, to rule. These are said to be of

The Third Conjugation.

27. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ĕrĕ*; as, *rĕgĕrĕ*; root, *rĕg*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
īt,	ēbāt,	ēt.

PARADIGM.

Rĕgĕrĕ, to rule : root, *rĕg*.

Present.	Rĕg-īt,	he, she, or it rules (is ruling).
Imperfect.	Rĕg-ēbāt,	“ “ “ was ruling.
Future.	Rĕg-ēt,	“ “ “ will rule.

28. VOCABULARY.

Bĭbĕrĕ,	to drink	(<i>bibber</i> ; as, <i>wine-bibber</i>)
Cādĕrĕ,	to fall	(<i>cadence</i>).
Currĕrĕ,	to run	(<i>current</i>).
Discĕrĕ,	to learn	(<i>disciple</i>).
Lĕgĕrĕ,	to read	(<i>legible</i>).
Lūdĕrĕ,	to play	(<i>ludicrous</i>).
Scribĕrĕ,	to write	(<i>scribe, scribble</i>).

29. *Excercises.*

(a) 1. Ludit. 2. Currit. 3. Discit. 4. Discēbat. 5. Scribēbat. 6. Bibēbat. 7. Bibet. 8. Cadet. 9. Leget. 10. Legit. 11. Currēbat. 12. Scribet. 13. Scribit. 14. Ludēbat. 15. Discet.

16. Labōrat. 17. Movet. 18. Cadit. 19. Vocābat. 20. Ridēbat. 21. Legēbat. 22. Sperat. 23. Dolet. 24. Bibit. 25. Jurābat. 26. Flebat. 27. Cadēbat. 28. Arābit. 29. Respondēbit. 30. Ludet.

(b) 1. He writes. 2. He drinks. 3. He falls. 4. He was falling. 5. He was reading. 6. He was playing. 7. He will play. 8. He will run. 9. He will learn. 10. He learns. 11. He was writing. 12. He will read. 13. He is playing. 14. He was running. 15. He will fall.

16. He is fighting. 17. He fears. 18. He reads. 19. He was singing. 20. He was spinning. 21. He was learning. 22. He will labor. 23. He will remain. 24. He will write.

LESSON VI.

Verbs.—Fourth Conjugation.

30. SOME verbs have the infinitive in *īrē*; as, *audīrē*, to hear. These are said to be of

The Fourth Conjugation.

31. In verbs of this conjugation,

- 1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *īrē*; as, *audīrē*; root, *aud*.
- 2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings*:

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
īt,	iēbāt,	iēt.

PARADIGM.

Audīrē, to hear : root, *aud*.

Present.	Aud-īt,	he, she, or it	hears (is hearing).
Imperfect.	Aud-iēbāt,	“ “	“ was hearing.
Future.	Aud-iēt,	“ “	“ will hear.

32. VOCABULARY.

Audīrē,	to hear	(<i>audible</i>).
Custōdirē,	to guard	(<i>custody</i>).
Dormīrē,	to sleep	(<i>dormant</i>).
Erūdirē,	to instruct	(<i>erudition</i>).
Sciē,	to know	(<i>science</i>).
Sitīrē,	to thirst.	
Vēnīrē,	to come.	

33. *Exercises.*

- (a) 1. Custōdit. 2. Erūdit. 3. Sitit. 4. Sitiēbat.
 5. Veniēbat. 6. Sciēbat. 7. Sciet. 8. Audiet. 9.
 Dormiet. 10. Dormit. 11. Erudiēbat. 12. Custodiet.
 13. Venit. 14. Audiēbat. 15. Erudiet.

16. Ambūlat. 17. Docet. 18. Currit. 19. Audit
20. Cantābat. 21. Ridēbat. 22. Ludēbat. 23. Dormiē
bat. 24. Saltābit. 25. Nebit. 26. Discet. 27. Veniet.

(b) 1. He thirsts. 2. He knows. 3. He guards. 4.
He was guarding. 5. He was instructing. 6. He was
coming. 7. He will come. 8. He will hear. 9. He
will thirst. 10. He will know. 11. He hears. 12.
He was thirsting. 13. He will instruct. 14. He sleeps.
15. He was hearing. 16. He will guard.

17. He walks. 18. He spins. 19. He runs. 20. He
comes. 21. He was dancing. 22. He was teaching.
23. He was writing. 24. He was sleeping. 25. He will
sing. 26. He will laugh. 27. He will play. 28. He
will instruct. 29. He labors. 30. He was weeping.
31. He will learn. 32. He will sleep.

LESSON VII.

Verbs.—Four Conjugations.—Plural Number.

34. THE *Four Conjugations* already noticed contain all the *regular* verbs of the Latin language: hence,

1) In any *regular* verb, the *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending of the conjugation to which it belongs. These endings in the four conjugations are as follows:

<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
āř,	ēř,	ěř,	īř.

a) These endings, it must be observed, differ from each other only in the vowel before *ř*, which is called the *characteristic* vowel of the conjugation. The *characteristic* vowels in the four conjugations are as follows:

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
ā,	ē,	ě,	ī.

REM.—These vowels occur so frequently in their respective conjugations, that they are called *favorite* vowels of the conjugations. The third conjugation has also *ī* as a *favorite* vowel, as in the present ending, *it* ; e. g., *rēgīt*, he rules.

2) In any *regular* verb, the *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* are formed by adding to the root the endings of the conjugation to which the verb belongs. These endings in the four conjugations are as follows :

	Pres.	Imperf.	Fut.
Conj. I.	āt,	abāt,	abīt.
II.	ēt,	ēbāt,	ēbīt.
III.	īt,	ēbāt,	ēt.
IV.	īt,	iēbāt,	iēt.

35. In any *regular* verb, the *third persons plural*, in the tenses already noticed, are formed by simply inserting *n* before *t* in the *endings* of the *third singular*.

Exc.—If *ī* immediately precedes *t*, it must be changed, in the fourth conjugation, into *iu* ; as, *audīt*, he hears ; *audiunt*, they hear : and in the other conjugations into *u* ; as, *āmābīt*, he will love ; *āmābunt*, they will love.

PARADIGM.

		Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
Conj. I.	Sing.	Am-āt,	ām-abāt,	ām-abīt.
	Plur.	Am-ant,	ām-abant,	ām-abunt.
II.	Sing.	Mōn-ēt,	mōn-ēbāt,	mōn-ēbīt.
	Plur.	Mōn-ent,	mōn-ēbant,	mōn-ēbunt.
III.	Sing.	Rēg-it,	rēg-ēbāt,	rēg-ēt.
	Plur.	Rēg-unt,	rēg-ēbant,	rēg-ent.
IV.	Sing.	Aud-īt,	aud-iēbāt,	aud-iēt.
	Plur.	Aud-iunt,	aud-iēbant,	aud-ient.

36. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Saltat. 2. Saltant. 3. Ambulābat. 4. Ambulābant. 5. Arābit. 6. Arābunt. 7. Docet. 8. Docent. 9. Timēbat. 10. Timēbant. 11. Ridēbit. 12. Ridēbunt. 13. Ludit. 14. Ludunt. 15. Scribēbat. 16. Scribēbant. 17. Curret. 18. Current. 19. Dormit. 20. Dormiunt. 21. Veniēbat. 22. Veniēbant. 23. Custodiet. 24. Custodient. 25. Vocant. 26. Dolent. 27. Discunt. 28. Sciunt. 29. Saltābunt. 30. Movēbant. 31. Legēbant. 32. Erudiēbant. 33. Jurābunt. 34. Manēbunt. 35. Cadent. 36. Sitient.

(b) 1. He sings. 2. They sing. 3. He was swearing. 4. They were swearing. 5. He will labor. 6. They will labor. 7. He laughs. 8. They laugh. 9. He was spinning. 10. They were spinning. 11. He will remain. 12. They will remain. 13. He runs. 14. They run. 15. He was playing. 16. They were playing. 17. He will drink. 18. They will drink. 19. He knows. 20. They know. 21. He was guarding. 22. They were guarding. 23. He will hear. 24. They will hear. 25. They walk. 26. They answer. 27. They write. 28. They sleep. 29. They were ploughing. 30. They were teaching. 31. They were learning. 32. They were instructing. 33. They will sing. 34. They will weep. 35. They will read. 36. They will come.

LESSON VIII.

Nouns.—Nominative Case.

37. IN Latin, as in English, all names, whether of persons, places, or things, are called *Nouns*; as, *Cæsār*, *puēr*, a boy, &c.

REM. 1.—Names of *individual* persons or objects are called *proper nouns*; as, *Cæsär*; *Römă*, Rome.

REM. 2.—Names applicable to persons or objects, not as *individuals*, but as *members of a class*, are called *common nouns*; as, *ëquŭs*, a horse (a name applicable to all animals of this class).

38. All nouns have *gender, number, person, and case*.

39. The *Gender* of a noun is either *masculine, feminine, common, or neuter*.

40. In Latin, as in English, all nouns denoting objects which have sex, except such names of animals as are applicable to both sexes, are,

- 1) *Masculine*, when they denote *male* beings; as, *hŏmĭnēs*, men; *puēr*, a boy; *leŏnēs*, lions.
- 2) *Feminine*, when they denote *female* beings; as, *mŭliēr*, a woman; *puellă*, a girl; *leŏnă*, a lioness.
- 3) *Common*, when they apply alike to both sexes; as, *părens*, a parent (either *male* or *female*); *testĭs*, a witness (either *male* or *female*).

41. When gender is employed to denote sex, as in the cases just noticed, it is called *natural* gender.

42. In nouns denoting objects without sex (*neuter in English*), and in most names applicable to animals of both sexes, the gender in Latin is entirely independent of sex, and is accordingly called *grammatical* gender.

Some of these nouns are grammatically masculine; some, grammatically feminine; and some, grammatically neuter.

43. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined *partly* by their *signification*, but *principally* by their *endings*.

44. The general rules for ascertaining the grammatical gender of nouns, independently of their endings, are:

- 1) Most names of *rivers*, *winds*, and *months* are masculine; as, *Rhēnūs*, the Rhine; *austēr*, the south wind; *Aprīlīs*, April.
- 2) Most names of *countries*, *towns*, *islands*, and *trees* are feminine; as *Ægyptūs*, Egypt; *Rōmā*, Rome; *Dēlōs*, name of an island; *laurūs*, the laurel-tree.
- 3) *Indeclinable nouns*,* and *clauses used as nouns*, are neuter; as, *fās*, right; *nihīl*, nothing.

Gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

45. The *Numbers* and *Persons* are the same in Latin as in English. The *first* person denotes the *speaker*; the *second*, the *person spoken to*; and the *third*, the *person spoken of*. The singular number denotes one; and the plural, more than one.

46. The *Cases* of Latin nouns are six in number, viz.: *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.

47. The case of a noun is indicated by its ending; and the formation of its several cases is called *Declension*.

48. The *Nominative Case* corresponds to the nominative in English, both in name and use; e. g.,

Puēr lūdīt, the boy plays.

49. RULE OF SYNTAX.†—The subject of a finite (i. e. *not infinitive*) verb is put in the nominative.

REM. 1.—Thus, in the example, *puēr* is in the nominative by this rule.


REM. 2.—The subject stands before the verb, as in English.

* Such as have but one form for all cases and both numbers.

† Rules for the government and agreement of words are called *Rules of Syntax*.

50. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A finite verb must agree with its subject in *number* and *person*.

REM.—Thus, in the above example, *lūdit* is in the third person singular, to agree with its subject *puēr*.

 Determine which of the nouns in the following Vocabularies have *natural* gender, and which *grammatical*, and apply rules.

51. VOCABULARY.*

Caesār, <i>m.</i>	Caesar,	
	<i>a celebrated Roman general.</i>	
Filiūs, <i>m.</i>	son	(<i>filial</i>).
Pătēr, <i>m.</i>	father	(<i>paternal</i>).
Puellă, <i>f.</i>	girl.	
Puēr, <i>m.</i>	boy	(<i>puerile</i>).
Vincērē,	to conquer,	(<i>vincible</i>).

52. Exercises.

(a) 1. Pater† docet. 2. Puer ludit. 3. Filius discēbat. 4. Caesar vincēbat. 5. Puer veniet. 6. Puella cantābat. 7. Pater scribēbat.

(b) 1. The girl will learn. 2. The father will conquer. 3. The boy dances. 4. The son was learning. 5. The father was ploughing. 6. The boy was playing. 7. The girl will sing. 8. Caesar was coming.

* Gender is indicated in the Vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, *c.* for *common*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

† As the Latin has no article, a noun may be translated, (1) without the article; as, *pătēr*, father: (2) with the indefinite article; as, *pătēr*, a father: (3) with the definite article; as, *pătēr*, the father.

LESSON IX.

Nouns.—Nominative Case—Continued.

53. VOCABULARY.*

Aquă, <i>f.</i>	water	(<i>aqueous</i>).
Aquilă, <i>f.</i>	eagle	(<i>aquiline</i>).
Avīs, <i>f.</i>	bird.	
Cănis, <i>c.</i>	dog	(<i>canine</i>).
Equus, <i>m.</i>	horse	(<i>equestrian</i>).
Filiă, <i>f.</i>	daughter	(<i>filial</i>).
Fluērē,	to flow	(<i>fluent</i>).
Hostis, <i>c.</i>	enemy	(<i>hostile</i>).
Impērārē	to command	(<i>imperative</i>).
Măgistr,	master, teacher	(<i>magisterial</i>).
Mătēr,	mother	(<i>maternal</i>).
Mors, <i>f.</i>	death	(<i>mortal</i>).
Nūbēs, <i>f.</i>	cloud.	
Rex,	king	(<i>regal</i>).
Servūs, <i>m.</i>	slave	(<i>servant</i>).
Vōlārē,	to fly	(<i>volatile</i>).

54. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Mors veniet. 2. Aquila volat. 3. Hostis veniēbat. 4. Nubes movet. 5. Aqua fluit. 6. Canis ludēbat. 7. Equus curret. 8. Magister erudiēbat. 9. Rex imperābat.

10. Avis volat. 11. Volant. 12. Servus pugnābit. 13. Pugnābant. 14. Puer timēbat. 15. Timēbant. 16. Puella discēbat. 17. Discēbant. 18. Filia dormiēbat. 19. Dormiēbant.

(b) 1. The bird will fly. 2. The eagle was flying. 3. The king will come. 4. The mother will teach. 5. The daughter will learn. 6. The dog will run. 7. The

* In this and the following Vocabularies, whenever the gender of a noun is not marked, the pupil is expected to determine it by the rules already given.

slave will swear. 8. Caesar was coming. 9. The slave is ploughing.

10. They were ploughing. 11. The king will conquer. 12. They are conquering. 13. The dog will come. 14. They were coming. 15. The girl is weeping. 16. They will weep. 17. The boy is singing. 18. They will laugh.

LESSON X.

Nouns.—Vocative Case.

55. THE same form* of the noun which is called the *nominative*, when *spoken of*, is called the *vocative*, when *spoken to*. This corresponds to the *nominative independent* in English; e. g.

<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>
Pătër,	puër cădět.
Father (or, <i>O father</i>), the boy will fall.	

REM.—In very short sentences, like the above, the vocative may be placed either at the beginning or close; in other cases, however, it is generally preceded by one or more words in the sentence.

56. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative.

REM.—The interjection *O* is sometimes used before the name addressed, both in Latin and English.

57. VOCABULARY.

Agricölä,	husbandman	(<i>agriculture</i>).
Balbüs,	Balbus,	<i>a man's name.</i>
Caiüs,	Caius,	<i>a man's name.</i>
Discipülüs,	pupil	(<i>disciple</i>).
Mordërë,	to bite.	

* A single exception will be noticed in another place.

O (<i>interj.</i>),	O, <i>used in direct address.</i>
Peccārē,	to sin (<i>peccant</i>).
Rēginā,	queen.
Sōrōr,	sister.

58. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer jurat. 2. O mater, puer jurat. 3. Puer adēbat. 4. Puer ludēbat, magister. 5. Rex saltābat. 6. O regīna, rex saltābat. 7. Mater dolēbit. 8. Soror, mater dolēbit. 9. Canis mordēbit. 10. O puer, canis mordēbit.

11. Mors veniet. 12. Balbus jurābat: 13. Jurābunt. 14. Agricōla arābit. 15. Arant. 16. Servus peccat. 17. Peccābant. 18. Magister erudiet. 19. Hostis vincet. 20. Vincēbant. 21. Scient. 22. Discēbant. 23. Puella legēbat. 24. Rex imperābat. 25. Nubes movet. 26. Pugnābant. 27. Vincunt.

(b) 1. The king will conquer. 2. O queen, the king will conquer. 3. The slave was weeping. 4. Father, the slave was weeping. 5. The boy is swearing (*swears*). 6. Master, the boy is swearing (*swears*). 7. The dog will bite. 8. Brother, the dog will bite. 9. They will dance. 10. Mother, they will dance. 11. The master will hear. 12. Sister, the master will hear. 13. The horse will run. 14. Daughter, the horse will run. 15. Death will come. 16. Death will come, O king.

17. Caius is ploughing. 18. They will plough. 19. Balbus was fighting. 20. They are fighting. 21. The girl was writing. 22. They will learn. 23. The pupil will learn. 24. The master is teaching. 25. The queen is weeping. 26. They will weep. 27. They were reading. 28. The eagle was flying. 29. The king will command. 30. The mother will teach. 31. The king is conquering. 32. The father will come.

LESSON XI.

Nouns.—Apposition.—Modified Subject.

59. THE subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting the same person or thing connected with it to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be *modified* by the limiting noun; e. g.

*Subject not modified.**Subject modified.*

1. Lătīnūs rēgnābāt. 2. Lătīnūs *rex* rēgnābāt.
 Latinus was reigning. Latinus *the king* was reigning.

REM. 1.—*Rex*, in the above example, limits Lătīnūs; i. e. it shows that the predicate *rēgnābāt* is not affirmed of every one who may have borne the name Latinus, but only of Latinus *the king*. *Rex* is in the same case as the subject, i. e. *nominative*, and is said to be in *apposition* with it.

REM. 2.—The noun in apposition is generally placed after the noun which it limits, as in the above example; if, however, it is *emphatic*, it is placed before that noun.

60. VOCABULARY.

Aurūm,	gold.	
Crescĕrĕ,	{ to grow,	} (crescent).
	{ to wax (as moon)	
Faustūlūs,	Faustulus, <i>an Italian shepherd.</i>	
Lătīnūs,	Latinus, <i>a king of Latium.</i>	
Lāvīniā,	Lavinia, <i>daughter of Latinus.</i>	
Lūnā,	moon	(lunar).
Mīcārĕ,	to glitter, to shine.	
Milĕs,	soldier	(military).
Nūmā,	Numa, <i>second king of Rome.</i>	
Pastŏr,	shepherd	(pastor, pastoral).

Rēgnārē,	to reign	(<i>regnant, reign</i>).
Tulliā,	Tullia,	
	<i>a queen of Rome.</i>	
Victōriā,	Victoria,	
	<i>queen of England.</i>	

61. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbus dormiēbat. 2. Balbus *servus* dormit. 3. Latīnus regnābat. 4. Latīnus *rex* vincēbat. 5. Tullia cantābat. 6. Tullia *regīna* saltābit. 7. Caius *pastor* cantābit.

8. Luna crescit. 9. Aurum micat. 10. Lavinia *regīna* regnābat. 11. Currēbant. 12. Current. 13. Pastor ridēbit. 14. Ridēbant. 15. Canis mordēbit. 16. Mordēbunt. 17. Puella nebit. 18. Nebunt.

(b) 1. Numa was reigning. 2. *King* Numa was reigning. 3. Faustus *a shepherd* was singing. 4. *Queen* Victoria was reigning.

5. The boy was ploughing. 6. They were playing. 7. They will write. 8. The queen was weeping. 9. They are weeping. 10. The soldier will fight. 11. The girl will learn. 12. The daughter is spinning. 13. They will spin. 14. The boy will fight. 15. They will fight.

LESSON XII.

Nouns.—Genitive Case.—Modified Subject.

62. NOUNS in Latin are declined in five different ways, and are accordingly divided into five classes, called *Declensions*, distinguished from each other by the following

GENITIVE ENDINGS.

<i>Dec. I.</i>	<i>Dec. II.</i>	<i>Dec. III.</i>	<i>Dec. IV.</i>	<i>Dec. V.</i>
ae,	ī,	īs,	ūs,	ēī.*

EXAMPLES.

	<i>Nominative.</i>	<i>Genitive.</i>
Dec. I.	Mūsā, <i>a muse,</i>	mūsae, <i>of a muse.</i>
II.	Servūs, <i>a slave,</i>	servī, <i>of a slave.</i>
III.	Hōnōr, <i>an honor,</i>	hōnōrīs, <i>of an honor.</i>
IV.	Fructūs, <i>a fruit,</i>	fructūs, <i>of a fruit.</i>
V.	Dīēs, <i>a day,</i>	dīēī, <i>of a day.</i>

REM.—The genitive endings are usually added to the word after the ending of the nominative is dropped; but, as this is not always the case, it becomes necessary, in order to decline a noun correctly, to know both the *nominative* and the *genitive*: accordingly, both these forms are given in the Vocabularies.

63. The *Genitive Case* expresses *possession*, and the *various relations* denoted by the preposition *of*, and accordingly corresponds both to the *English Possessive*, and the *English Objective* with *of*; as, *rēgīs cōrōnā*, the king's crown (or the crown of the king); *āmōr glōriæ*, the love of glory.

64. The subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting a *different person* or *thing* connected with it, to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be *modified* by such noun; e. g.

Subject not modified.

Subject modified.

1. Fīliūs rēgnābīt. 2. Rēgīs fīliūs rēgnābīt.

The son will reign. The son of *the king* will reign.

REM.—The genitive *rēgīs* (of the king), in the above example, modifies *fīliūs* (the son); i. e. it shows that the predicate *rēgnābīt*

* In this ending *e* is long except in *spēī*, *fīdēī*, and *rēī*.

(will reign) is not affirmed of *every* son, but only of the son of *the king*.

a) In the example, the limiting genitive stands before the noun which it limits. This seems to be the more common order, when no *emphasis* is intended, though we often find it reversed.

b) If the noun which is limited by the genitive is *emphatic*, or is a *monosyllable*, it generally stands before the genitive; e. g.

1. Cicerō, *pătēr* păt̄riæ.

Cicero, *the father* of (his) country.

2. Lex nātūrae.

The law of nature.

REM.—In the first example, *pătēr* is emphatic, and in the second, *lex* is a monosyllable; they accordingly stand before their genitives.

65. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

1) In the *same* case as that noun, when it denotes the *same* person or thing; e. g. *Lătīnūs rex*, Latinus the king (59, REM. 1).

2) In the *genitive*, when it denotes a *different* person or thing; e. g. *Rēgīs fīliūs*, the son of the king.

66. VOCABULARY.*

Agricōlā,	Gen. āgricōlæ,	husbandman	(agriculture)
Amīcūs,	“ āmicī,	friend	(amicable).
Balbūs,	“ Balbī,	Balbus, a man's name.	
Caiūs,	“ Caiī,	Caius, a man's name.	
Cānis,	“ cānis,	dog	(canine).
Filiā,	“ filiae,	daughter.	

* The genitive is given in the Vocabulary; and the pupil may determine from the genitive ending to which declension the noun belongs.

Filiūs,	Gen. filiī,	son	(<i>filial</i>).
Fratēr,	“ fratris,	brother	(<i>fraternal</i>).
Lātīnūs,	“ Lātīnī,	Latinus,	
		<i>a king of Latium.</i>	
Milēs,	“ militis,	soldier	(<i>military</i>).
Pātēr,	“ patris,	father	(<i>paternal</i>).
Puēr,	“ puērī,	boy	(<i>puerile</i>).
Rēginā,	“ rēginae,	queen.	
Rex,	“ rēgis,	king	(<i>regal</i>).
Servūs,	“ servī,	slave	(<i>servant</i>)
Tulliā,	“ Tulliae,	Tullia,	
		<i>a queen of Rome.</i>	

67. Exercises.

(a) 1. Servus dormit. 2. *Balbi* servus dormiet. 3. Filius ludit. 4. *Regis* filius ludēbat. 5. *Reginae* pater docēbat. 6. Filia ridēbat. 7. Filia *reginae* ridēbat. 8. Amīcus *regis* cadet.

9. *Balbus* servus veniēbat. 10. *Balbi* servus dormit. 11. Pastor cantābit. 12. Canis *pastoris* mordēbit. 13. Mordēbunt. 14. Filia *pastoris* nebit. 15. *Regis* amīcus timēbit. 16. *Caius*, *regis* amīcus, timēbit. 17. *Tullia*, *regis* filia, cantābat.

(b) 1. The brother will conquer. 2. The king will conquer. 3. The brother of the king will conquer. 4. The daughter of the king is singing. 5. The queen will read. 6. The daughter of the queen will read. 7. The father of *Balbus* was laughing.

8. The shepherd's dog (the dog of the shepherd) will bite. 9. The boy's dog will bite. 10. The husbandman's dog will play. 11. The soldier will fight. 12. The son of the soldier will fight. 13. *Latinus* the king was conquering. 14. The shepherd's daughter (the daughter of the shepherd) is spinning.

LESSON XIII.

Nouns.—Accusative Case.—Direct Object of Predicate.

68. EVERY noun consists of two distinct parts, viz:—

- 1) The *Root*, or that part which remains *unchanged* throughout the various cases of both numbers, as *mūs* in *mūsā*, *mūsae*, and *mūsām*.
- 2) The *Endings*, which are added to the root to form these cases; thus, in the forms just noticed, viz., *mūsā*, *mūsae*, and *mūsām*, the endings are *ā*, *ae*, and *ām*.

69. In any noun, of whatever declension,

- 1) The *root* may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular (62); as, *mūsā*, Gen. *mūsae*; root, *mūs*: *servūs*, Gen. *servī*; root, *serv*: *hōnōr*, Gen. *hōnōrīs*; root, *hōnōr*, &c.
- 2) Any *case* may be formed (with a few exceptions) by adding to this root the proper ending.

70. 1) The *Accusative Singular* of *neuter* nouns is the same as the *Nominative*; e. g., Nom. *sceptrūm*, a sceptre; Accus. *sceptrūm*.

- 2) The *Accusative Singular* of *masculine* and *feminine* nouns is formed from the root, by adding one* of the following

ACCUSATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ām,	ūm,	ēm,	ūm,	ēm.

* If the noun is of the first declension, the learner will, of course, add the ending given for the first declension; if of the second, the ending given for the second; and so on.

EXAMPLES.

	<i>Genitive.</i>	<i>Root. Ending.</i>	<i>Accusative.</i>
Dec. I.	Mūsae, <i>of a muse</i> ;	mūs -ām; mūsām, <i>a muse.</i>	
II.	Servī, <i>of a slave</i> ;	serv -ūm; servūm, <i>a slave.</i>	
III.	Hōnōris, <i>of an honor</i> ;	hōnōr-ēm; hōnōrēm, <i>an honor.</i>	
IV.	Fructūs, <i>of a fruit</i> ;	fruct -ūm; fructūm, <i>a fruit.</i>	
V.	Diēi, <i>of a day</i> ;	di -ēm; diēm, <i>a day.</i>	

71. The accusative case corresponds very *nearly* to the English objective, and is used after *transitive verbs* and *certain prepositions*.

72. When a verb represents its subject as acting upon some other person or thing, it is said to be *transitive*; and the person or thing upon which the action is exerted, is called its *direct object*; e. g.

Serviūs *impēriūm* admīnistrāt.

(*Servius the government administers.*)

Servius administers *the government.*

73. In English the object is placed after the verb; thus, *government* is placed after *administers*; but in Latin the object precedes the verb; thus, *impēriūm* precedes *admīnistrāt*.

74. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *Direct Object* of an action is put in the *accusative*.

75. VOCABULARY.

Aedificārē,		to build	(<i>edifice</i>).
Diēs,	<i>Gen. diēi,</i>	day.	
Dōmīnūs,	“ dōmīnī,	master, as owner	(<i>domineer</i>)
Epistolā,	“ epistolae, <i>f.</i>	letter	(<i>epistle</i>).
Laudārē,		to praise	(<i>laud</i>).
Monstrārē,		to show.	
Mors,	“ mortīs, <i>f.</i>	death	(<i>mortal</i>).

Mūrūs,	Gen. mūrī, m.	wall	(<i>mural</i>).
Occīdērē,		to kill.	
Puellā,	“ puellae,	girl.	
Sēnātūs,	“ sēnātūs, m.	senate	(<i>senate</i>).
Spērārē,		to hope for.	
Terrērē,		to terrify.	
Tīmērē,		to fear	(<i>timid</i>).
Vīā,	“ viae, f.	way, road.	
Vīdērē,		to see.	
Vītārē,		to shun.	

76. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius ~~puellam~~ laudat. 2. Puer murum aedificabat. 3. Rex puerum ridet. 4. Puer mortem vitat. 5. Puella diem sperabat. 6. Puella viam monstrabit. 7. Servus dominum occidit.

8. Puella puerum laudat. 9. Rex senatum timet. 10. Puer canem timebit. 11. Epistolam scribit. 12. Puer canem occidebat. 13. Mortem vitant. 14. Mortem timent. 15. Balbus servus dominum timebit. 16. Balbum servum docent. 17. Balbi filius puerum laudabat.

(b) 1. The boy will show *the road*. 2. Balbus is building *a wall*. 3. Caius was praising *the boy*. 4. The slave is showing *the way*. 5. The king hopes for *the day*. 6. The girl will shun *the dog*.

7. The dog will bite the girl. 8. Father is writing a letter. 9. The father will praise the daughter. 10. They are building a wall. 11. They are killing the slave. 12. The king's son will play. 13. The king fears death. 14. The death of the father will terrify the son.

LESSON XIV.

Nouns.—Accusative, continued.—Adverbial Modifiers.

77. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Certain qualifying words, called *adverbs*, are often connected with verbs, merely to modify their meaning; e. g.,

1. *Mīlēs fortītēr pūgnāt.* 2. *Mīlēs nōn pūgnāt.*
 (*The soldier bravely fights.*) (*The soldier not fights.*)
 The soldier fights *bravely*. The soldier *does not* fight.

REM.—In these examples, *fortītēr* (bravely) and *nōn* (not) are adverbs modifying *pūgnāt*. In Latin the adverb generally precedes the verb, as in these instances.

78. VOCABULARY.*

Anguīs, anguīs, c.	snake, serpent.	
Christiānus, ī, m.	Christian	(<i>Christian</i>).
Fortītēr,	bravely.	
Lex, lēgīs, f.	law	(<i>legal</i>).
Mātēr, matrīs,	mother	(<i>maternal</i>).
Nēglīgērē,	to disregard	(<i>neglect</i>).
Nōn,	not.	
Pastōr, pastōrīs,	shepherd	(<i>pastor</i>).
Pēcūniā, ae, f.	money	(<i>pecuniary</i>).
Serviūs, ī,	Servius, a man's name.	
Vox, vōcīs, f.	voice	(<i>vocal</i>).

79. Exercises.

- (a) 1. *Serviūs pugnat.* 2. *Serviūs fortītēr pugnat.*
 3. *Mors Christiānum non† terret.* 4. *Agricōla anguem timēbit.*
 5. *Agricōla anguem non timēbit.* 6. *Pater*

* In this and the following Vocabularies, either the genitive or its ending is given immediately after each substantive.

† In translating *nōn* before a verb, place 'not' after the English tense-sign; thus, *nōn terrēt*, *does not terrify*, or *is not terrifying*.

filiam audiēbat. 7. Pater filii vocem audiēbat. 8. Mater vocem negliget. 9. Mater filiae vocem *non* negliget.

10. Caius legem negligēbat. 11. Christiānus pecuniam negliget. 12. Pecuniam negligent. 13. Puērum docent. 14. Christiānus mortem non timet.

(b) 1. The husbandman will fight. 2. The husbandman will *not* fight. 3. Servius fears death. 4. Servius does *not* fear death. 5. The slave hears the voice of (his) master. 6. The boy was killing the dog. 7. The boy was killing the shepherd's dog. 8. The dog will *not* bite. 9. Servius will avenge the death of the king.

10. They do not fear death. 11. They will fight bravely. 12. Caius is teaching the boy. 13. The daughter of the queen is singing. 14. They did not hear (were not hearing). 15. They will not disregard the law.

LESSON XV.

Nouns.—Dative Case.—Indirect Object of Predicate.

80. THE *Dative Case* in Latin corresponds to the *objective* with *to* or *for* in English; as, *mūsā*, a muse; Dat. *mūsae*, *to* or *for* a muse.

81. The *Dative Singular* of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

DATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	ō,	ī,	uī,*	ēī.†

* Neuter nouns of the fourth declension are exceptions, as they have the *dative singular* like the *nominative*.

† In this ending *e* is long except in *spēī*, *fīdēī*, and *rēī*.

EXAMPLES.

	<i>Genitive.</i>	<i>Root. Ending.</i>	<i>Dative.</i>
Dec. I.	Mūsae, <i>of a muse</i> ;	mūs - ae;	mūsae, <i>to or for a muse.</i>
II.	Servī, <i>of a slave</i> ;	serv - ō;	servō, “ “ <i>a slave.</i>
III.	Hōnōrīs, <i>of honor</i> ;	hōnōr - ī;	hōnōrī, “ “ <i>an honor.</i>
IV.	Fructūs, <i>of fruit</i> ;	fruct - uī;	fructuī, “ “ <i>a fruit.</i>
V.	Diēī, <i>of day</i> ;	di - ēī;	diēī, “ “ <i>a day.</i>

82. The person or thing *to or for which* any thing is, or is done, is called an *indirect object*; e. g.,

Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt.

(*Balbus to the boy the way shows.*)

Balbus shows the way *to the boy*.

REM.—In the example it will be observed that the *indirect object* precedes the *direct*. This is the more common order, though not unfrequently reversed.

83. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Any transitive verb may take the *accusative* of the *direct* object and the *dative* of the *indirect* object.

84. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārē,	to accuse.	
Bellūm, ī, n.	war.	
Claudērē,	to shut	(close).
Condērē,	to found, to build.	
Dārē,*	to give	
Dōmūs, dōmūs, or dōmī, f.	house	(domestic).
Evertērē,	to pull down, to overthrow.	
Indicērē,	to declare (as war).	
Leō, leōnis, m.	lion.	
Milēs, itis, m. (rarely f.),	soldier	(military).

* *Dārē* is of the first conjugation, with *ā* short, contrary to the general rule.

Portā, ae, f.	gate	} (portal). { (porter).
Rĕpĕrĭrĕ, Rōmŭlŭs, ī,	to find. Romulus, <i>the founder of Rome.</i>	
Sceptrŭm, ī, n.	sceptre.	
Urbs, ĩs, f.	city	(urbane).

85. Exercises.

(a) 1. Pastor viam monstrat. 2. Pastor *puĕro* viam monstrat. 3. Puer viam monstrābit. 4. Puer *pastōri* viam monstrābit. 5. Servus portam claudet. 6. Servus *regi* portam claudet.

7. Romŭlus urbem condĕbat. 8. Agricōla anguem repĕrit. 9. Miles agricōlae domum evertet. 10. Regis sceptrum vidĕbant. 11. Milĭti viam monstrant. 12. Leōnem timĕbant.

(b) 1. The slave is building a wall. 2. The slave is building a wall *for the king*. 3. The boy was showing the road. 4. The boy was showing the road *to the husbandman*. 5. The husbandman is showing the road *to the boy*. 6. They will declare war *against the city*.

7. They are founding a city for the queen. 8. They will not disregard the law. 9. They were writing for the king. 10. They will accuse the boy. 11. They were praising the queen. 12. They will praise the queen's daughter. 13. The king will declare war against the senate. 14. The king will give the city to (his) son.

LESSON XVI.

Nouns.—Ablative Case.—Modified Predicate.

86. THE *Ablative Case* in Latin corresponds to the *objective* with *from, by, in, or with* in English; as, *mūsā*, a muse; Abl. *mūsā*, from a muse, or *by, in, or with* a muse.*

87. The *Ablative Singular* of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

ABLATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ā,	ō,	ě, †	ū,	ē.

EXAMPLES.

	<i>Genitive.</i>	<i>Root.</i>	<i>Ending.</i>	<i>Ablative.</i>
Dec. I.	<i>Mūsae, of a muse;</i>	<i>mūs</i>	<i>- ā;</i>	<i>mūsā, from, in, &c., a muse.</i>
II.	<i>Servī, of a slave;</i>	<i>serv</i>	<i>- ō;</i>	<i>servō, “ “ “ a slave.</i>
III.	<i>Hōnōris, of honor;</i>	<i>hōnōr</i>	<i>- ě;</i>	<i>hōnōřě, “ “ “ honor.</i>
IV.	<i>Fructūs, of fruit;</i>	<i>fruct</i>	<i>- ū;</i>	<i>fructū, “ “ “ fruit.</i>
V.	<i>Diēī, of day;</i>	<i>di</i>	<i>- ē;</i>	<i>diē, “ “ “ day.</i>

88. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the *time* of an action; e. g.,

Hiěmě ursūs dormīt.

(*In winter the bear sleeps.*)

The bear sleeps (when?) *in winter.*

89. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The time *when* is put in the

* The preposition is, however, often expressed before the ablative, as it is before the objective in English.

† As an exception to this, a few nouns of the third declension form the ablative in *ī*, as we shall see by-and-by.

ablative without a preposition (i. e., without any word for the English *at, in, &c.*)

REM.—The ablative of time often stands first in a sentence, as in the example.

90. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the *place* of its action; e. g.,

Ursūs *in antrō* dormit.

(*The bear in a cave sleeps.*)

The bear sleeps (where?) *in a cave.*

91. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town (227), is generally put in the ablative with a preposition.

☞ The pupil, in preparing his exercises, should imitate the *order* in the examples, whenever nothing is said on the point.

92. VOCABULARY.

Aestās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	summer.	
Agēr, āgrī, <i>m.</i>	field	(<i>agriculture</i>).
Antrūm, ī, <i>n.</i>	cave.	
Asinūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	ass.	
Avīs, īs, <i>f.</i>	bird	(<i>aviary</i>).
Dilāniārē,	to bear in pieces.	
Equūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	horse	(<i>equestrian</i>).
Hiems, ěmīs, <i>f.</i>	winter.	
Hortūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	garden	(<i>horticulture</i>).
In (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	in.	
Lūcūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	grove.	
Mons, tis, <i>m.</i>	mountain.	
Prātūm, ī, <i>n.</i>	meadow.	
Ursūs, ī, <i>m.</i>	bear.	

93. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ursus dormit. 2. Ursus *in antro* dormit. 3. Canis currit. 4. Canis *in horto* currit. 5. Puer ludēbat. 6. Puer *in agro* ludēbat. 7. Hiēme ursus *in*

antro dormiet. 8. Romŭlus urbem condēbat. 9. Romŭlus urbem *in monte* condēbat. 10. *Hiēme* ursus *in antro* dormit.

11. Servus regem occīdet. 12. Leo asīnum dilaniat. 13. Rex regīnam accusābat. 14. Regīna filiam docēbit. 15. In luco ludunt. 16. Leo equum dilaniābit.

(b) 1. The boy is playing. 2. The boy is playing *in the garden*. 3. The dog is running. 4. The dog is running *in the meadow*. 5. The bird will not sing. 6. The bird will not sing *in winter*. 7. The daughter was singing *in the grove*. 8. They will walk *in the field*. 9. They will play *in summer*.

10. Balbus will fear Caius. 11. They will fear the queen. 12. He was building a wall. 13. They are building a wall. 14. The queen is walking in the field. 15. The queen's mother was weeping. 16. The slave is showing the boy (to the boy) the way. 17. The slave was shutting the gate. 18. The boy will shut the gate.

LESSON XVII.

*Nouns.—First Declension.**

94. To the *First Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive in *ae* (62). They all end in *ā* (except a few *Greek* nouns. See 174).

95. Latin nouns of this declension are grammatically feminine; unless their gender is determined by their *signification*, according to previous rules (40, 44).

* Having learned in the previous Lessons the *use* of the *several cases* of the Latin language, the pupil will now find little difficulty in mastering the *five declensions* (62) in all the cases of *both numbers*.

96. We have already learned that the root of a noun may always be found from the genitive singular (69, 1), but, as it may *also* be formed without much difficulty from the nominative, it will be well for us to notice, in connection with the different declensions, the manner in which this may be done.

97. In the First Declension,

- 1) The *root* may be found by dropping the nominative ending *ă*, as *mūsă*; root, *mūs* (69, 1).
- 2) Any noun *may be declined* (i. e., all the cases of both numbers may be formed) by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ă,	ae,	ae,	ăm,	ă,	ă,
Plur.	ae,	ărüm,	īs,	ās,	ae,	īs.

PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	Mūs-ă, <i>a muse.</i>	Nom.	Mūs-ae, <i>muses.</i>
Gen.	Mūs-ae, <i>of a muse.</i>	Gen.	Mūs-ărüm, <i>of muses.</i>
Dat.	Mūs-ae, <i>to, for a muse.</i>	Dat.	Mūs-īs, <i>to, for muses.</i>
Acc.	Mūs-ăm, <i>a muse.</i>	Acc.	Mūs-ās, <i>muses.</i>
Voc.	Mūs-ă, <i>O muse.</i>	Voc.	Mūs-ae, <i>O muses.</i>
Abl.	Mūs-ă, <i>from, &c. a muse.</i>	Abl.	Mūs-īs, <i>from, &c. muses.</i>

98. VOCABULARY.*

Apërirë,	to open, to uncover	(<i>aperture</i>).
Aquilă, ae,	eagle	(<i>aquiline</i>).
Căpăt, itis, n.	head	(<i>capital</i>).
Cölobă, ae,	dove.	

* The pupil must apply rules for gender.

Cōrōnā, ae,	garland, crown	(<i>coronation</i>).
Dōlōr, ōrīs, m.	pain, grief, sorrow	(<i>dolorous</i>).
Luscīniā, ae,	nightingale.	
Ridērē,	{ to laugh, } { to laugh at }	(<i>ridicule</i>)
Sentirē,	{ to feel, to perceive } { by the senses.	
Vincirē,	{ to bind, } { to bind up.	

99. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puellae saltant. 2. Aquilae volant. 3. Regīna puellas docēbit. 4. Tulliae filiae ridēbunt. 5. Tulliae filias ridēbit. 6. Aquila columbas occīdet. 7. Luscīniae cantābant.

8. Balbus vocem audit. 9. Caius dolōrem vitābit. 10. Puellae dolōrem sentiunt. 11. Servus epistōlas scribit. 12. Puer caput vinciēbat. 13. Regīna puellae corōnam dabit. 14. Regīna puellis corōnas dabit.

(b) 1. The girl was writing a letter. 2. The girls are writing letters. 3. The queen will call (her) daughter. 4. The queen is calling (her) daughters. 5. Tullia will give a garland to her daughter.

6. They will give garlands to (their) daughters. 7. He is reading the queen's letter. 8. They are reading the girls' letters (the letters of the girls). 9. They will show the way to the queen. 10. The husbandman will shut the gate. 11. The doves will fly. 12. The nightingales are singing. 13. The boy hears (his) father's voice. 14. The boy is opening the letters. 15. The slave will open (his) master's letters.

LESSON XVIII.

Nouns.—Second Declension.—Nouns in ūs and ūm.

100. To the *Second Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in *ī* (62). They end in *ūs*, *ūm*, *ēr*, and *īr* (except a few Greek nouns. See 174).

101. In this declension nouns in *ūm* are grammatically *neuter*; and the *rest* (with a few exceptions*) are grammatically *masculine*; unless their gender is determined by their signification, according to previous rules (40, 44).

102. In nouns in *ūs* and *ūm*, of this declension, the *root* is found by dropping the *nominative ending*; as, *serv-ūs*, a slave; root, *serv*: *rēgn-ūm*, a kingdom; root, *rēgn*.

103. Nouns in *ūs* are declined by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ūs,	ī,	ō,	ūm,	ě, †	ō,
Plur.	ī,	ōrūm,	īs,	ōs,	ī,	īs.

* It has not been thought best to burden the memory of the learner with *lists* of exceptions, at this early stage of his study. Accordingly, *general rules*, covering the great majority of cases, are given for *immediate* and *constant use*; thus the pupil may fix the general principles of the language, and become better prepared to understand and recollect the exceptions as they occur in his lessons. Such exceptions, whether pertaining to gender or other subjects, will be marked in the *Vocabularies*.

† The vocative singular, in nouns in *ūs* of this declension, is not like the nominative (see 55 and note). Proper nouns in *iūs* drop the ending *ě* in the vocative singular; as, *Tullius* (proper name), Voc. *Tullī*. *Filiūs*, a son, and *gēniūs*, a guardian angel, also drop the ending *ě* in the vocative singular.

PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Serv-ūs, <i>a slave.</i>	Nom. Serv-i, <i>slaves.</i>
Gen. Serv-ī, <i>of a slave.</i>	Gen. Serv-ōrūm, <i>of slaves.</i>
Dat. Serv-ō, <i>to, for a slave.</i>	Dat. Serv-īs, <i>to, for slaves.</i>
Acc. Serv-ūm, <i>a slave.</i>	Acc. Serv-ōs, <i>slaves.</i>
Voc. Serv-ě, <i>O slave.</i>	Voc. Serv-i, <i>O slaves.</i>
Abl. Serv-ō, <i>from, by a slave.</i>	Abl. Serv-īs, <i>from, by slaves.</i>

REM.—It will be well for the pupil to accustom himself to compare the several cases with each other, and to associate together such as are alike, or nearly so.

104. Nouns in *ūm* are declined by adding to the root the following

NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ūm,	ī,	ō,	ūm,	ūm,	ō,
Plur.	ā,	ōrūm,	īs,	ā,	ā,	īs.

PARADIGM.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Rēgn-ūm, <i>a kingdom.</i>	Nom. Rēgn-ā, <i>kingdoms.</i>
Gen. Rēgn-ī, <i>of a kingdom.</i>	Gen. Rēgn-ōrūm, <i>of kingdoms.</i>
Dat. Rēgn-ō, <i>to, for a kingdom.</i>	Dat. Rēgn-īs, <i>to, for kingdoms.</i>
Acc. Rēgn-ūm, <i>a kingdom.</i>	Acc. Rēgn-ā, <i>kingdoms.</i>
Voc. Rēgn-ūm, <i>O kingdom.</i>	Voc. Rēgn-ā, <i>O kingdoms.</i>
Abl. Rēgn-ō, <i>from, by a kingdom.</i>	Abl. Rēgn-īs, <i>from, by kingdoms.</i>

REM. 1.—In neuters of all declensions, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* are alike in each number, and in the plural end in *ā*, as in the paradigm just given.

REM. 2.—Neuters in *ūm* are declined like masculines in *ūs* of this declension, except in the cases just mentioned (*nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.*). Compare paradigms.

105. VOCABULARY.

Agnūs, ī,	lamb.	
Discipūlus, ī,	pupil	(disciple).
Dōmīnūs, ī,	master, as owner	(domineer).
Gērērē,	} to carry on, to wage (as war).	
Haedūs, ī,		kid.
Lūpūs, ī,	wolf.	
Māgīstēr, trī,	master, as teacher	(magisteria).

106. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius Balbum docēbat. 2. Balbus Caium docēbat. 3. Servus domīnum occīdet. 4. Servi domīnos timent. 5. Balbus filios laudābit. 6. Servus domīni filios timet. 7. Servi dominōrum filios timēbunt.

8. Puellae dōlōrem sentiēbant. 9. Servi muros aedificābunt. 10. Pastor filiis canem dabit. 11. Pastor filiābus* haedum dabit.

(b) 1. Balbus will instruct the slave. 2. Caius will punish the pupil. 3. They will instruct (their) pupils. 4. The slaves will fear Balbus. 5. The master was punishing (his) slaves. 6. Caius will kill the wolf. 7. Wolves will kill lambs. 8. The wolves do not see (see not) the kids.

9. Caius was waging war. 10. They are waging wars. 11. Balbus will fight. 12. The sons of Balbus will fight. 13. The master is teaching the boys. 14. The master is teaching his pupils in the garden. 15. The girls were walking in the garden. 16. He was playing in the meadow. 17. They will play in the fields. 18. The slaves were reading (their) master's letters.

* Filiā has the dative and ablative plur. in *abūs*, to distinguish it from the same cases of *filiūs*.

LESSON XIX.

Nouns.—Second Declension, continued.—Nouns in ěr and ĭr.

107. NOUNS in ěr and ĭr, of the second declension, have the *nominative* and *vocative singular* alike, and in all the other cases are declined like *servŭs* (103), with the single exception that most nouns in ěr drop ě in the root.


PARADIGMS.

1. Gĕnĕr, a son-in-law : root, *gĕnĕr* (ĕ not dropped).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Gĕnĕr, <i>a son-in-law.</i>	Nom. Gĕnĕr-ĭ, <i>sons-in-law.</i>
Gen. Gĕnĕr-ĭ, <i>of son-in-law.</i>	Gen. Gĕnĕr-ŏrum, <i>of sons-in-law.</i>
Dat. Gĕnĕr-ŏ, <i>to son-in-law.</i>	Dat. Gĕnĕr-ĭs, <i>to sons-in-law.</i>
Acc. Gĕnĕr-ŭm, <i>son-in-law.</i>	Acc. Gĕnĕr-ŏs, <i>sons-in-law.</i>
Voc. Gĕnĕr, <i>O son-in-law.</i>	Voc. Gĕnĕr-ĭ, <i>O sons-in-law.</i>
Abl. Gĕnĕr-ŏ, <i>from son-in-law.</i>	Abl. Gĕnĕr-ĭs, <i>from sons-in-law.</i>

2. Agĕr, a field : root, *ăgr* (ĕ dropped).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Agĕr, <i>a field.</i>	Nom. Agr-ĭ, <i>fields.</i>
Gen. Agr-ĭ, <i>of a field.</i>	Gen. Agr-ŏrŭm, <i>of fields.</i>
Dat. Agr-ŏ, <i>to a field.</i>	Dat. Agr-ĭs, <i>to fields.</i>
Acc. Agr-ŭm, <i>a field.</i>	Acc. Agr-ŏs, <i>fields.</i>
Voc. Agĕr, <i>O field.</i>	Voc. Agr-ĭ, <i>O fields.</i>
Abl. Agr-ŏ, <i>from a field.</i>	Abl. Agr-ĭs, <i>from fields.</i>

 Vĭr (*a man*) and its compounds are the only nouns in ĭr, and are declined like *gĕnĕr*.

108. VOCABULARY.

Armĭgĕr, ĭ,	armor-bearer.
Dilĭgentiā, ae,	diligence.
Gĕnĕr, ĭ,	son-in-law.
Lĭbĕr, lĭbrĭ,	book.
Vulpĕs, ĭs, f.	fox.

109. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer in agro ludit. 2. Pueri in agris ludēbant. 3. Magister puēros docēbit. 4. Magistri discipūlos docēbunt. 5. Magister puēris libros dabit. 6. Armigērum occidēbant.

7. Pater diligentiam (64, b) filiōrum laudābat. 8. Regīnae filia in luco ambulābat. 9. Lusciniae in lucis cantant. 10. Magistri legem non negligēt. 11. Puēri vulpem non occīdent.

(b) 1. The boy was running in the fields. 2. The boys will run in the fields. 3. The boys saw the master's book. 4. The pupils will give the master a book (a book to the master). 5. They will give books to (their) masters. 6. He will punish the armor-bearer. 7. He will accuse (his) son-in-law. 8. They will accuse (their) sons-in-law.

9. The master was praising (his) pupils. 10. The master was praising the diligence of (his) pupils. 11. The pupils do not hear the master. 12. The slaves will shut the gates of the city. 13. The boys were reading in the garden. 14. The girls are reading in the meadow.

LESSON XX.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

110. THE *Adjective* is that part of speech which is used to qualify substantives; as, *bōnūs*, good; *māgnūs*, great.

111. The form of the adjective often depends, in part, upon the gender of the noun which it quali-^{ties};

e. g., *Bōnūs puēr*, a good boy; *Bōnā puellā*, a good girl; and *Bōnūm rēgnūm*, a good kingdom. Thus, *bōnūs* is the form of the adjective when used with *masc.* nouns, *bōnā* with *fem.*, and *bōnūm* with *neuter*.

112. These three forms of the adjective are declined like nouns of the same endings. Thus, the masculine is declined like *servūs* (103), and is accordingly of the *second* declension; the feminine like *mūsā* (97), and is of the *first* declension; and the neuter like *rēgnūm* (104), and is of the *second* declension.

PARADIGM.

Bōnūs, good.			
SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Bōn-ūs,	bōn-ā,	bōn-ūm.
Gen.	Bōn-ī,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ī.
Dat.	Bōn-ō,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ō.
Acc.	Bōn-ūm,	bōn-ām,	bōn-ūm.
Voc.	Bōn-ē,	bōn-ā,	bōn-ūm.
Abl.	Bōn-ō,	bōn-ā,	bōn-ō.
PLURAL.			
Nom.	Bōn-ī,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ā.
Gen.	Bōn-ōrūm,	bōn-ārūm,	bōn-ōrūm.
Dat.	Bōn-īs,	bōn-īs,	bōn-īs.
Acc.	Bōn-ōs,	bōn-ās,	bōn-ā.
Voc.	Bōn-ī,	bōn-ae,	bōn-ā.
Abl.	Bōn-īs,	bōn-īs,	bōn-īs.

REM.—Adjectives like the above are called adjectives of the *First* and *Second Declension*, because they are declined like nouns of these declensions; the *masc.* and *neut.* being declined like nouns of the *second* declension, and the *fem.* like those of the *first*.

113. Some adjectives of this declension have the *nom.* and *voc. sing.* in *ēr*, like nouns in *ēr* of the *second* declension. These, in all their other forms, are de-

clined like *bõnũs* in the Paradigm above, with the exception, that most of them drop *ě* before *r* of the *root* in all genders.

PARADIGMS.

1. Těněr, tender : root, *těněr* (*ě* not dropped).

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Těněr,	těněr-ă,	těněr-ũm.
Gen.	Těněr-ĩ,	těněr-ae,	těněr-ĩ.
Dat.	Těněr-õ,	těněr-ae,	těněr-õ.
Acc.	Těněr-ũm,	těněr-ăm,	těněr-ũm.
Voc.	Těněr,	těněr-ă,	těněr-ũm.
Abl.	Těněr-õ,	těněr-ă,	těněr-õ.

PLURAL.

Nom.	Těněr-ĩ,	těněr-ae,	těněr-ă.
Gen.	Těněr-õrũm,	těněr-ărũm,	těněr-õrum.
Dat.	Těněr-ĩs,	těněr-ĩs,	těněr-ĩs.
Acc.	Těněr-õs,	těněr-ăs,	těněr-ă.
Voc.	Těněr-ĩ,	těněr-ae,	těněr-ă.
Abl.	Těněr-ĩs,	těněr-ĩs,	těněr-ĩs.

2. Aegěr, sick : root, *aegr* (*ě* dropped).

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Aegěr,	aegr-ă,	aegr-ũm.
Gen.	Aegr-ĩ,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ĩ.
Dat.	Aegr-õ,	aegr-ae,	aegr-õ.
Acc.	Aegr-ũm,	aegr-ăm,	aegr-ũm.
Voc.	Aegěr,	aegr-ă,	aegr-ũm.
Abl.	Aegr-õ,	aegr-ă,	aegr-õ.

PLURAL.

Nom.	Aegr-ĩ,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ă.
Gen.	Aegr-õrũm,	aegr-ărũm,	aegr-õrũm.
Dat.	Aegr-ĩs,	aegr-ĩs,	aegr-ĩs.
Acc.	Aegr-õs,	aegr-ăs,	aegr-ă.
Voc.	Aegr-ĩ,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ă.
Abl.	Aegr-ĩs,	aegr-ĩs,	aegr-ĩs.

REM.—The following adjectives have the genitive singular in *ūs* (the *i* is generally short in *alterius*), and the dative singular in *i* in all genders, viz. : *aliūs*, another ; *nullūs*, no one ; *solūs*, alone ; *totūs*, the whole ; *ullūs*, any ; *unūs*, one ; *altēr*, the other ; *neutēr*, neither ; and *utēr*, which (of the two).

114. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Adjectives agree with the nouns which they qualify, in *gender, number, and case*; e. g.,

Mātēr bōnām filiām laudāt.

(The mother (her) good daughter praises).

The mother praises her good daughter.

REM. 1.—The adjective *bōnām* is in the *feminine accusative singular*, to agree with its noun *filiām*.

REM. 2.—The position of the adjective seems to depend principally upon *emphasis* ; and accordingly the adjective *precedes* or *follows* its noun, according as it is or is not emphatic. In the example, *bōnām* is emphatic.

REM. 3.—*Meūs*, my ; *tuūs*, your (or thy) ; *suūs*, his, her, &c., though called *adjective pronouns* (273 and 295), are in declension and agreement really adjectives. They usually follow their nouns : e. g.,

Mūliēr ancillām suām excitāt.

(The woman maid her awakens.)

The woman awakens her maid.

115. VOCABULARY.

Bēnignūs, ā, ūm,	kind	(benign).
Bōnūs, ā, ūm,	good.	
Māgnūs, ā, ūm,	large, great	(magnitude).
Meūs,* ā, ūm,	my.	
Pulchēr, chrā, chrūm,	beautiful.	
Sēpēlirē,	to bury.	
Stūdiōsūs, ā, ūm,	studious.	
Suūs, † ā, um,	his, her, its, their.	
Tuūs, ā, ūm,	your, thy.	

* Voc. sing. masc. is *mī*.

† The meaning of this word depends in part upon the *gender and number* of the subject of the proposition in which it is used. Thus, in the

116. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Regīna puēros laudābat. 2. Regīna puēros bonos laudābat. 3. Pater filium *suum*^a docēbat. 4. Mater filias *suas* amābit. 5. Bona mater filias *suas* amābit.

6. Magister puēros docēbit. 7. Bonus magister studiōsos puēros docēbit. 8. Agricōlae anguem non timēbunt. 9. Caius bonam legem non neglīget. 10. Christiāni legem bonam non neglīgunt. 11. Pater meus in prato ambūlat.

(b) 1. The father was burying *his*^a son. 2. They are burying *their*^a sons. 3. My friend does not hear my voice. 4. The daughters love (their) kind mother. 5. The mother will instruct her beautiful daughters.

6. Caius disregards the law. 7. They disregard the good laws. 8. The boys are killing your dog. 9. Good boys will not kill dogs. 10. Your dog will kill the wolf. 11. Dogs will kill large wolves.

LESSON XXI.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, continuea.

117. THE noun which the adjective qualifies is often omitted in Latin; and then in translating into English the word *man* must be supplied, if the adjective is masc. sing.; *woman*, if fem. sing.; and *thing*, if neuter sing.; e. g.,

above example (Mūliēr ancillām suām excītāt), *suām* means *her*, because the subject *mūliēr* is *fem. sing.*; with a masculine subject it would mean *his*, and with a plural subject, *their*, &c.

Avārūs pēcūniām āmāt.

(*The avaricious (man) money loves.*)

The avaricious man loves money.

REM.—After a plur. adjec. the noun is sometimes expressed and sometimes omitted in the Eng. translation; thus, *āvārī* may be translated *avaricious men*, or simply *the avaricious*.

118. When a noun is limited by a genitive, one or both nouns may be qualified by an adjective; e. g.,

1. Māgnā rēgīs cōrōnā.

(*The great of the king crown.*)

The king's great crown.

2. Māgnā bōnī rēgīs cōrōnā.

(*The great of the good king crown.*)

The good king's great crown.

119. VOCABULARY.

Aureūs, ā, ūm,	golden.
Avārītiā, ae,	avarice.
Avārūs, ā, ūm,	avaricious.
Impiūs, ā, ūm,	impious.
Indoctūs, ā, ūm,	unlearned.
Lābōr, ōrīs, m.	labor.
Poētā, ae, m.	poet.
Sāpientiā, ae,	wisdom.
Vindīcārē	to avenge.

120. Exercises.

(a) 1. Aurum regis coronam videbant. 2. Servi magnam regis coronam videbunt. 3. Balbi domum evertent. 4. Impii domum evertēbant. 5. Indoctus sapientiam laudābat.

6. Magnum boni regis sceptrum timēbunt. 7. Amīci sapientiam tuam laudant. 8. Christiāni avaritiam vitābunt. 9. Mater bonas filias laudābat.

(b) 1. He disregards his slave's labor. 2. He disre-

gards his slave's great labor. 3. The beautiful daughters of the queen will dance. 4. The poet was holding the beautiful crown. 5. The poet was holding the good queen's beautiful crown. 6. The good (man) will not disregard the law. 7. The poet will *laugh at* the unlearned (man). 8. The good will not fear death.

9. They will avenge the death of their father. 10. They were avenging the death of the good (woman). 11. The impious (man) will fear death. 12. The poet will build a beautiful house.

LESSON XXII.

Nouns and Adjectives.—First and Second Declension, continued.—Price, Value, and Degree of Estimation.

121. THE predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun or adjective denoting *price, value, or degree of estimation*; e. g.,

1. Avārūs pātriām aurō vendēt.

(*The avaricious (man) (his) country for gold will sell.*)

The avaricious man will sell his country for gold.

2. Avārūs pēcūniām māgnī aestīmāt.

(*The avaricious (man) money at a great (price) values.*)

The avaricious man values money at a great price
(or highly).

122. RULE OF SYNTAX.—*Price*, when expressed by nouns, is generally put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, generally in the genitive.

REM. 1.—The genitive of a few nouns and the ablative of a few adjectives sometimes occur in expressions of price and value.

REM. 2.—In example 1. the noun *aurō* is in the ablative, and in example 2. the adjective *māgnī* is in the genitive, by the above rule.

123. VOCABULARY.

Aestĭmārĕ,	to value	(<i>estimate</i>).
Aurŭm, ĩ,	gold.	
Māgnĭ,	{ at a great price, { at a high price.	
Māgnĭ aestĭmārĕ,	{ to prize highly, { to think highly of.	
Parvĭ,	{ at a little price, { at a low price.	
Parvĭ aestĭmārĕ,	to think little of.	
Pātriā, ae,	native country	(<i>patriotic</i>).
Prōdĭtōr, ōrĭs,	traitor.	
Vendĕrĕ,	to sell	(<i>vend</i>).
Vĕrŭs, ā, ūm,	true, real.	
Virtŭs, ūtĭs, f.	virtue.	

124. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Impius patriam auro vendēbat. 2. Prođitor patriam *parvi*³ aestimābit. 3. Caius amĭci sui labōrem *parvi* aestĭmat. 4. Boni virtŭtem *magni*² aestĭmant.

5. Rex servum *magni* aestimābit. 6. Regĭna aurĕam corōnam *magni* aestĭmat. 7. Magnam urbis portam claudent. 8. Domĭnus servi sui epistōlas aperiet. 9. Servus puĕros vocābit.

(b) 1. The traitor will sell (his) country for gold. 2. Caius values true virtue *at a great (price)*.² 3. The master thinks *little*³ of^r the labor of his slave.

4. The poet will feel real sorrow. 5. A father will not disregard the sorrow of his son. 6. The avaricious (man) will value virtue *at a low (price)*.³ 7. The avaricious value money *at a high (price)*.² 8. Christians think *little*³ of^r money.

LESSON XXIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class I.

125. To the *Third Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in *īs*. They end in *a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x*, and may be divided into four classes:

- 1) Those which have the root the same as the nominative singular (except, in a few instances, the omission or change of the radical vowel): as, *mūliēr*, a woman; root, *mūliēr*.
- 2) Those which form the root by adding a single letter to the nominative singular: as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.
- 3) Those which form the root by dropping the ending of the nominative singular: as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*.
- 4) Those which form the root by changing the ending of the nominative singular: as, *piētās*, piety; root, *piētāt*.

126. CLASS I.—This class comprises nouns in *c,* l, n, r, t, and y*. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel changes:

- 1) Nouns in *tēr* and *bēr* generally drop *e* in the root: as, *pătēr*, a father; root, *pătr*.
- 2) Nouns in *ēr* generally change *ě* into *ĩ* in the root: as, *flūmĕn*, a river; root, *flūmĭn*.
- 3) Nouns in *ūt* change *ũ* into *ĩ* in the root: as, *căpūt*, a head; root, *căpĭt*.

* There are only two nouns with this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

REM.—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed; this is the case in most nouns in *āl* and *ōr*, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

127. Neuter nouns of this declension have the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular alike, and are declined in the other cases by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	—	īs,	ī,	—	—	ě (ī).
Plur.	ā (iā),	ūm (iūm),	ībūs,	ā (iā),	ā (iā),	ibūs.

REM.—The inclosed endings belong only to neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.

PARADIGMS.

1. Căpūt, <i>n.</i> , a head. (root, <i>căpīt</i> [126, 3].)		2. Anīmāl, <i>n.</i> , an animal. (root, <i>same as nom.*</i> [126].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Căpūt,	Căpīt-ă.	Nom. Anīmāl,	Anīmāl-iă.
Gen. Căpīt-īs,	Căpīt-ūm.	Gen. Anīmāl-īs,	Anīmāl-iūm.
Dat. Căpīt-ī,	Căpīt-ībūs.	Dat. Anīmāl-ī,	Anīmāl-ībūs.
Acc. Căpūt,	Căpīt-ă.	Acc. Anīmāl,	Anīmāl-iă.
Voc. Căpūt,	Căpīt-ă.	Voc. Anīmāl,	Anīmāl-iă.
Abl. Căpīt-ě,	Căpīt-ībūs.	Abl. Anīmāl-ī,	Anīmāl-ībūs.

128. Masculine and feminine nouns of this declension are declined, in all the cases except the *nominative* and *vocative singular* (which are alike), by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	—	īs,	ī,	ēm (im),	—	ě (ī).
Plur.	ēs,	ūm (iūm),	ībūs,	ēs,	ēs,	ibūs.

* With the radical vowel lengthened (126, REM.).

REM.—The inclosed endings (except that of the genitive plural, which will be noticed again, 141) belong only to a few words.

PARADIGMS.

1. Lăbör, <i>m., labor.</i>		2. Muliër, <i>f., a woman.</i>	
(root, same as nom.* [126].)		(root, same as nom. [126].)	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Lăbör,	Lăbör-ēs.	Nom. Muliër,	Muliër-ēs.
Gen. Lăbör-īs,	Lăbör-ŭm.	Gen. Muliër-īs,	Muliër-ŭm.
Dat. Lăbör-ī,	Lăbör-ībŭs.	Dat. Muliër-ī,	Muliër-ībŭs.
Acc. Lăbör-ēm,	Lăbör-ēs.	Acc. Muliër-ēm,	Muliër-ēs.
Voc. Lăbör,	Lăbör-ēs.	Voc. Muliër,	Muliër-ēs.
Abl. Lăbör-ě,	Lăbör-ībŭs.	Abl. Muliër-ě,	Muliër-ībŭs.
3. Pătër, <i>a father.</i>		4. Frătër, <i>a brother.</i>	
(root, patr [126, 1].)		(root, frătr [126, 1].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Pătër,	Pătr-ēs.	Nom. Frătër,	Frătr-ēs.
Gen. Pătr-īs,	Pătr-ŭm.	Gen. Frătr-īs,	Frătr-ŭm.
Dat. Pătr-ī,	Pătr-ībŭs.	Dat. Frătr-ī,	Frătr-ībŭs.
Acc. Pătr-ēm,	Pătr-ēs.	Acc. Frătr-ēm,	Frătr-ēs.
Voc. Pătër,	Pătr-ēs.	Voc. Frătër,	Frătr-ēs.
Abl. Pătr-ě,	Pătr-ībŭs.	Abl. Frătr-ě,	Frătr-ībŭs.

129. VOCABULARY.

Brütŭs, ī,	Brutus, <i>a Roman consul.</i>
Caecŭs, ā, ŭm,	blind.
Consŭl, īs,	consul, <i>Roman chief magistrate.</i>
Finirë,	to finish.
Frătër, trīs.	brother.
Lŭcërë,	to shine.
Muliër, ěrīs,	woman.
Sĕnătör, örīs,	senator.
Širĕn, īs, <i>f.</i>	siren.
Söl, īs, <i>m.</i>	sun.
Sörör, örīs,	sister.

* With the radical vowel lengthened (126, REM.).

130. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Agricōla labōrem finiēbat. 2. Mulier sorōres accusābit. 3. Brutum consūlem occidēbat. 4. Senatōres Caesārem occidēbant.

5. Bonus puer caput aperiet. 6. Servi capīta aperiēbant. 7. Sirēnes cantābant. 8. Sol lucēbat. 9. Caeci solem non vident. 10. Pastōres aurum magni aestīmant.

(b) 1. The boy accuses his brother. 2. They accuse their brothers. 3. The consuls were waging war. 4. The senators fear the consul. 5. The consuls fear the senators. 6. The shepherd values his dog *at a high (price).*² 7. They will finish their labor.

8. They fear the sirens. 9. Good boys uncover their heads. 10. The blind boy does not see the sun. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The good woman loves (her) beautiful daughters. 13. Good daughters love their mothers. 14. Good mothers instruct their daughters.

LESSON XXIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class II.

131. CLASS II. comprises nouns of the third declension in *a*, *o*, and a few in *i*. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

1) Nouns in *a*, and a few in *i*, add *t*: as, *poēmā*, a poem; root, *poēmāt*: *hydrōmēlī*, mead; root, *hydrōmēlīt*.

2) Nouns in *o* add *n*: as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.

REM. 1.—*O* is long in the root.

REM. 2.—Nouns in *do* and *go* change *o* into *ī*, before *n* in the root. as *virgo*, a virgin; root, *virgīn*.

PARADIGMS.

1. Poēma, *n.*, a poem: root, *poēmāt* (131, 1).*Singular.*

N. Poēmā,
G. Poēmāt-īs,
D. Poēmāt-ī,
A. Poēmā,
V. Poēmā,
A. Poēmāt-ě,

Plural.

N. Poēmāt-ā.
G. Poēmāt-ům.
D. Poēmāt-ībūs, or <i>īs</i> .*
A. Poēmāt-ā.
V. Poēmāt-ā.
A. Poēmāt-ībūs, or <i>īs</i> .*

2. Sermō, *m.*, a discourse.(root, *sermōn* [131, 2].)*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Sermō,	Sermōn-ēs.
G. Sermōn-īs,	Sermōn-ům.
D. Sermōn-ī,	Sermōn-ībūs.
A. Sermōn-ēm,	Sermōn-ēs.
V. Sermō,	Sermōn-ēs.
A. Sermōn-ě,	Sermōn-ībūs.

3. Virgō, *f.*, a virgin.(root, *virgĭn* [131, 2. REM. 2].)*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Virgō,	Virgĭn-ēs.
G. Virgĭn-īs,	Virgĭn-ům.
D. Virgĭn-ī,	Virgĭn-ībūs.
A. Virgĭn-ēm,	Virgĭn-ēs.
V. Virgō,	Virgĭn-ēs.
A. Virgĭn-ě,	Virgĭn-ībūs.

132. VOCABULARY.

Accĭpĭtĕr, trĭs, <i>m.</i>	hawk.	
Hōmō, ĭnĭs,	man.	
Optiō, ōnĭs, <i>f.</i>	choice	(<i>optional</i>).
Orātiō, ōnĭs, <i>f.</i>	oration.	
Orātōr, ōrĭs,	orator.	
Pāvō, ōnĭs, <i>m.</i>	peacock.	
Poēmā, tĭs, <i>n.</i>	poem.	
Sermō, ōnĭs, <i>m.</i>	discourse	(<i>sermon</i>).
Tĭmĭd-ūs, ā, ūm,	timid.	
Virgō, ĭnĭs,	maiden, virgin	(<i>virgin</i>).

* Nouns in *a* generally take the ending *īs* instead of *ībūs* in the **dat.** and **abl.** plural.

133. *Exercitia.*

(a) 1. Pater tuus poemata laebat. 2. Poeta sermōnem tuum laudabit. 3. Timidae puellae pavōnem timent. 4. Virgines homīni viam monstrābunt.

5. Bonus puer fratri optiōnem dabit. 6. Puēri homīnes timent. 7. Indocti sapientiam *parvi*³ aestimābunt. 8. Puellae sorōres suas amant.

(b) 1. My brother is reading your discourse. 2. The boys will kill the peacock. 3. They will kill the beautiful peacocks. 4. Your mother is reading the poem. 5. The girls are reading poems. 6. The doves fear the hawk. 7. The hawk will kill your dove.

8. The hawks will kill the beautiful doves. 9. Mothers feel real sorrow. 10. The unlearned will laugh at the orator. 11. The poet will hear the oration. 12. The orator prizes wisdom *highly*.² 13. The avaricious think *little*³ of wisdom.

LESSON XXV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class III.

134. CLASS III. comprises nouns of the third declension in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *is*, *ys*, *e*, a few in *i*,* and a few in *es*. They form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

1) Nouns in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, and *ys*, drop *s*: as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*; *hiems*, winter; root, *hiēm*.

2) Nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) drop the *s* in *x*: as, *vox* (*cs*), a voice; root, *vōc*; *rex* (*gs*), a king; root, *rēg*.

* Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin: most of these are indeclinable; a few form the root by dropping *i*, and a few by adding *t* (131, 1).

- 3) Nouns in *is*, *e*, and a few in *es*, drop those endings; *hostis*, an enemy; root, *host*: *nūbēs*, a cloud; root, *nūb*: *mārē*, a sea; root, *mār*.

PARADIGMS.

1. <i>Urbs, f., a city.</i>		2. <i>Mārē, n., a sea.</i>	
(root, <i>urb</i> [134, 1].)		(root, <i>mār</i> [134, 3].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Urb-s,</i>	<i>Urb-ēs.</i>	N. <i>Mār-ē,</i>	<i>Mār-iā.†</i>
G. <i>Urb-is,</i>	<i>Urb-iūm.*</i>	G. <i>Mār-is,</i>	<i>Mār-iūm.†</i>
D. <i>Urb-i,</i>	<i>Urb-ībūs.</i>	D. <i>Mār-i,</i>	<i>Mār-ībūs.</i>
A. <i>Urb-ēm,</i>	<i>Urb-ēs.</i>	A. <i>Mār-ē,</i>	<i>Mār-iā.</i>
V. <i>Urb-s,</i>	<i>Urb-ēs.</i>	V. <i>Mār-ē,</i>	<i>Mār-iā.</i>
A. <i>Urb-ē,</i>	<i>Urb-ībūs.</i>	A. <i>Mār-i,†</i>	<i>Mār-ībūs.</i>
3. <i>Arx (cs), f., a citadel.</i>		4. <i>Rex (gs), m., a king.</i>	
(root, <i>arc</i> [134, 2].)		(root, <i>rēg</i> [134, 2].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Arx,</i>	<i>Arc-ēs.</i>	N. <i>Rex,</i>	<i>Rēg-ēs.</i>
G. <i>Arc-is,</i>	<i>Arc-iūm.*</i>	G. <i>Rēg-is,</i>	<i>Rēg-ūm.</i>
D. <i>Arc-i,</i>	<i>Arc-ībūs.</i>	D. <i>Rēg-i,</i>	<i>Rēg-ībūs.</i>
A. <i>Arc-ēm,</i>	<i>Arc-ēs.</i>	A. <i>Rēg-ēm,</i>	<i>Rēg-ēs.</i>
V. <i>Arx,</i>	<i>Arc-ēs.</i>	V. <i>Rex,</i>	<i>Rēg-ēs.</i>
A. <i>Arc-ē,</i>	<i>Arc-ībūs.</i>	A. <i>Rēg-ē,</i>	<i>Rēg-ībūs.</i>
5. <i>Hostis, c., an enemy.</i>		6. <i>Nūbēs, f., a cloud.</i>	
(root, <i>host</i> [134, 3].)		(root, <i>nūb</i> [134, 3].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Host-is,</i>	<i>Host-ēs.</i>	N. <i>Nūb-ēs,</i>	<i>Nūb-ēs.</i>
G. <i>Host-is,</i>	<i>Host-iūm.</i>	G. <i>Nūb-is,</i>	<i>Nūb-iūm.</i>
D. <i>Host-i,</i>	<i>Host-ībūs.</i>	D. <i>Nūb-i,</i>	<i>Nūb-ībūs.</i>
A. <i>Host-ēm,</i>	<i>Host-ēs.</i>	A. <i>Nūb-ēm,</i>	<i>Nūb-ēs.</i>
V. <i>Host-is,</i>	<i>Host-ēs.</i>	V. <i>Nūb-ēs,</i>	<i>Nūb-ēs.</i>
A. <i>Host-ē,</i>	<i>Host-ībūs.</i>	A. <i>Nūb-ē,</i>	<i>Nūb-ībūs.</i>

* Monosyllables in *s* or *x*, preceded by a consonant, have *iūm* in the genitive plural. See 141, 3.

† See 127.

135. VOCABULARY.

Arx, arcis, <i>f.</i>	citadel, tower.	
Civis, is, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	citizen	(civil).
Frutex, icis, <i>m.</i>	shrub.	
Grex, egis, <i>m.</i>	flock, herd	(gregarious).
Hostis, is, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	enemy	(hostile).
Judex, icis,	judge	(judicial).
Pax, pacis, <i>f.</i>	peace	(pacific).
Reus, i,	criminal.	
Servare,	to keep, observe	(serve)
Violare,	to violate.	

136. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caius leges violabit. 2. Regina urbem condēbat. 3. Pueri magnam urbis portam claudunt. 4. Pastores arcem condent. 5. Reus iudicis vocem timet.

6. Cives regem accusabant. 7. Consules hostes vincēbant. 8. Pastor gregem magni² aestimat. 9. Boni cives pacem magni aestimant. 10. Filii patrem vindicābunt. 11. Servus fruticem in horto reperiēbat. 12. Impii patriam auro vendunt. 13. Rei iudicis vocem timēbunt. 14. Proditor patriam parvi³ aestimat. 15. Proditores patriam parvi aestimabunt. 16. Agricola laborem finiēbat.

(b) 1. The boys will not observe the law. 2. Good citizens observe the laws. 3. They will guard the city. 4. Soldiers will guard the cities. 5. They accuse the judge. 6. The criminals will accuse their judges. 7. The king is violating the law.

8. Slaves fear their masters. 9. Slaves fear the voices of their masters. 10. The king will conquer the enemy (*pl.*). 11. The shepherd will guard his flock. 12. Shepherds guard their flocks. 13. The poet will

praise the judge. 14. They praise the judges. 15. Christians will observe the laws of the city. 16. He does not observe the laws of the city. 17. Good citizens will not violate the laws. 18. The boy is accusing his sister. 19. They are accusing their fathers. 20. Traitors will sell their country for gold. 21. They think *little*³ of *virtue*. 22. They prize money *highly*.²

LESSON XXVI.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class IV.

137. CLASS IV. comprises nouns of the third declension in *as*, *os*, *us*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*. These form the root by changing *s* into *r*, *t*, or *d*.

- 1) Nouns in *as*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*, generally change *s* into *t*: *as*, *piētās*, piety; root, *piētāt*: *mons*, a mountain; root, *mont*: *ābiēs*, a fir-tree; root, *ābiēt*: *mīlēs*, a soldier; root, *mīlīt*. (See REM. 2, below.)

REM. 1.—Masculines in *as*, of Greek origin, insert *n* before *t* in the root: *as*, *ēlēphās*, an elephant; root, *ēlēphant*.

REM. 2.—Many nouns in *es* change *e* into *i*, before *t*, in the root: *as*, *mīlēs*; root, *mīlīt*.

- 2) Nouns in *os* and *us* generally change *s* into *r* or *t*: *as*, *flōs*, a flower; root, *flōr*: *sācerdōs*, a priest; root, *sācerdōt*: *virtūs*, virtue; root, *virtūt*: *gēnūs*, a kind; root, *gēnēr*: *tempūs*, time; root, *tempōr*.

REM.—Most nouns in *us* change *s* into *r*, and *u* of the nominative becomes *ē* or *ō* in the root, as in these examples.

PARADIGMS.

1. Cīvītās, <i>f.</i> , a state. (root, <i>cīvītāt</i> [137, 1].)		2. Ars, <i>f.</i> , art. (root, <i>art</i> [137, 1].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Cīvītās,	Cīvītāt-ēs.	N. Ars,	Art-ēs.
G. Cīvītāt-īs,	Cīvītāt-ūm.	G. Art-īs,	Art-iūm.
D. Cīvītāt-ī,	Cīvītāt-ībūs.	D. Art-ī,	Art-ībūs.
A. Cīvītāt-ēm,	Cīvītāt-ēs.	A. Art-ēm,	Art-ēs.
V. Cīvītās,	Cīvītāt-ēs.	V. Ars,	Art-ēs.
A. Cīvītāt-ē,	Cīvītāt-ībūs.	A. Art-ē,	Art-ībūs.
3. Milēs, <i>c.</i> , a soldier. (root, <i>milit</i> [137, 1, REM. 2].)		4. Corpūs, <i>n.</i> , a body. (root, <i>corpōr</i> [137, 2].)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Milēs,	Milit-ēs.	N. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ā.
G. Milit-īs,	Milit-ūm.	G. Corpōr-īs,	Corpōr-ūm.
D. Milit-ī,	Milit-ībūs.	D. Corpōr-ī,	Corpōr-ībūs.
A. Milit-ēm,	Milit-ēs.	A. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ā.
V. Milēs,	Milit-ēs.	V. Corpūs,	Corpōr-ā.
A. Milit-ē,	Milit-ībūs.	A. Corpōr-ē,	Corpōr-ībūs.

138. The Latin, like every other language, has certain forms of expression peculiar to itself, called *Idioms*:* e. g.,

Aliquid † tempōris,	{ something of time	(<i>Lat. Idiom.</i>)
	{ some time	(<i>Eng. Idiom.</i>)
Multūm † bōnī,	{ much of good	(<i>Lat. Idiom.</i>)
	{ much good	(<i>Eng. Idiom.</i>)
Quantūm † vōluptātis,	{ how much of pleasure	(<i>Lat. Idiom.</i>)
	{ how much pleasure	(<i>Eng. Idiom.</i>)
Nihil stābilitātis,	{ nothing of stability	(<i>Lat. Idiom.</i>)
	{ no stability	(<i>Eng. Idiom.</i>)

REM.—These (†) are neuter adjectives used as nouns; they govern the genitive by the rule already given (65).

* These should be carefully compared with the corresponding English. A table presenting the *Differences of Idiom* between the Latin and English is inserted in this volume for the benefit of the learner. See p. 275.

139. VOCABULARY.

Alīquid,	something.	
Amittĕrĕ,	to lose.	
Avāritiā, ae,	avarice.	
Civitas, atis, f.	state.	
Corpūs, ōris, n.	body	{ (corporal). (corporeal).
Elĕphās, antīs, m.	elephant.	
Fīgūrā, ae,	figure.	
Hābĕrĕ,	to have.	
Imprōbūs, ā, ūm,	bad, wicked.	
Multūm (neut. adj.),	much.	
Multūm bōnī,	much good.	
Multūm tempōris,	much time.	
Nihil (indec.),	nothing.	
Perdĕrĕ,	to waste	(perdition).
Quantūm (neut. adj.),	how much?	
Sācerdōs, ōtis, m. and f.	priest, priestess.	
Stābilitās, atis, f.	firmness, stability	(stability).
Tempūs, ōris, n.	time.	
Vōluptās, atis, f.	pleasure	(voluptuous).

140. Exercises.

(a) 1. Avaritia nihil habet voluptātis.⁴ 2. Multum tempōris perdēbat. 3. Figūra nihil habet stabilitātis. 4. Imprōbi leges civitātis violābunt. 5. Servus elephantis corpus puĕro monstrābat.

6. Imprōbi virtūtem parvi³ aestīmant. 7. Milītes urbem custodient. 8. Sacerdōtes bonam legem non violābunt. 9. Discipūli multum tempōris perdunt. 10. Indocti multum voluptātis amittunt.

(b) 1. The boy will waste much time.⁴ 2. They will lose much pleasure. 3. The state will observe its laws. 4. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 5. The king will punish the soldiers.

6. The priests were praising the queen. 7. The good queen will praise the priests. 8. The soldiers will fear the enemy. 9. The good value wisdom *highly*.² 10. He will laugh at^f the unlearned. 11. He is losing *much time*. 12. The unlearned lose *much pleasure*.

LESSON XXVII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.—Genitives in iŭm.—Gender.

141. It has already been mentioned (128, REM.) that some nouns of the third declension have the genitive plural in *iŭm* instead of *ŭm*. These are,

- 1) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*: as, *mārē*, *māriŭm*, *ānīmāl*, *ānīmāliŭm*.
- 2) Nouns in *is* and *es* of Class III.: as, *hostīs*, *hostiŭm*; *nŭbēs*, *nŭbiŭm*.
- 3) All monosyllables in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant: as, *urbs*, *urbiŭm*; *arx*, *arciŭm*.
- 4) Nouns in *ns* and *rs* (though in these *ŭm* is sometimes used): as, *cliens*, *clientiŭm*; *cohors*, *cohortiŭm*.

REM.—The use of *iŭm* in words not included in the above classes must be learned from observation.

142. The gender of nouns of the third declension, when not determined by their signification (40, 44), may generally be ascertained from their *endings*, by the following

RULES FOR GRAMMATICAL GENDER.

- 1) *Masculines*.—Most nouns in *er*, *or*, *os* *es*, increasing in the genitive, and *o*, except *do*, *go*,

and *io*, are masculine; e. g., *āēr*, air; *hōnōr*, honor; *flōs*, a flower; *pēs* (gen. *pēdis*), a foot; *sermō*, a discourse.

2) *Feminines*.—Most nouns in *do*, *go*, *io*, *as*, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, *s* preceded by a consonant, *x*, and *es* not increasing in the genitive, are feminine; e. g., *ārundō*, a reed; *īmāgō*, an image; *ōrātiō*, an oration; *aestās*, summer; *turrīs*, a tower; *laus*, praise; *hiems*, winter; *lex*, a law; *nūbēs* (gen. *nūbīs*), a cloud.

3) *Neuters*.—Most nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *l*, *n*, *t*, *ar*, *ur*, and *us*, are neuter; e. g., *mārē*, a sea; *poēmā*, a poem; *lāc*, milk; *ānīmāl*, an animal; *flūmēn*, a river; *cāpūt*, a head, &c.

For exceptions, see *Table of Genders* (579).

143. VOCABULARY.

Amīcūs, ī,*	friend	(amicable).
Anīmūs, ī,	mind, soul.	
Carpēřē,	to gather, to pluck.	
Flōs, ōřis,	flower	(floral).
Ignāvūs, ā, ūm,	indolent, cowardly.	
Māgnitūdō, īnīs,	greatness, size	(magnitude).

144. Exercises.

(a) 1. Veram anīmi magnitudīnem laudābunt. 2. Christiāni leges bonas non violābunt. 3. Puēri *multum tempōris*⁴ perdunt. 4. Puer caput aperiet.

5. Servus urbis portas claudit. 6. Servi domīnum suum vindicābunt. 7. Puer patris vocem audit. 8.

* Gender, when not given, must be determined by previous rules.

Puēri patrum voces audient. 9. Lupus haedum dilaniābat. 10. Haedi lupos timent.

(b) 1. The boys are gathering flowers. 2. He will pluck the beautiful flower. 3. The dog will fear the lion. 4. Dogs fear lions. 5. The girl will waste *much time*.⁴ 6. Your father will lose *much time*. 7. The indolent lose *much pleasure*. 8. The priests are praising the king.

9. The queen will not violate the laws. 10. The king's son was violating the laws of the state. 11. My friend will not disregard my sorrow. 12. Your friends will not disregard your sorrow.

LESSON XXVIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Formation of Cases from each other.

145. 1) IN any noun of the third declension, all the cases, except the nominative and vocative singular (and the accusative sing. in neuters), can be readily formed from each other, by a simple change of the endings: thus, the accusative sing. *hōnōrēm* gives (by a change of ending) the dat. *hōnōrī*, or the dat. and abl. plur. *hōnōrībūs*, or any other case which may be desired.

2) The *nominative* and *vocative singular* (and *acc. sing. in neuters*) can generally be formed from any other case, in some one of the following ways:

a) By dropping the ending of the given case: as, *hōnōrēm*,* Nom. *hōnōr*.†

REM. 1.—This applies to many nouns whose root ends in *l*, *n*, or *r*, and to a few with the root in *it*.

REM. 2.—*I* is changed before *t* into *ū*, and before *n* into *ě*; and *ě* is inserted before *r* when preceded by *t* or *b* (126, 1); e. g., Gen. *cāpŭis*; root, *cāpŭt*; Nom. *cāpŭt*. Gen. *flŭmŭnis*; root, *flŭmŭn*; Nom. *flŭmĕn*. Gen. *patrŭs*; root, *patr*; Nom. *pătĕr*.

b) By changing the ending of the given case into *s*, *ēs*, *is*, (or for neuters into) *ě*: as, *urbis*, Nom. *urbs*; *nŭbĕm*, Nom. *nŭbĕs*, &c.

REM. 1.—This applies to most nouns of this declension.

REM. 2.—*T*, *d*, or *r*, at the end of the root, is dropped before *s*, and *ĭ* is changed into *ě*; *cs* or *gs* will of course be written *x*; e. g., *piĕtătĕm*, Nom. *piĕtās* (*t* dropped before *s*); *mĭlĭtĕm*, Nom. *mĭlĕs* (*t* dropped before *s*, and *ĭ* changed into *ě*); *rĕgĕm*, Nom. *rĕx* (regs. = rex).

c) By changing the ending of the given case, together with *ĕr* or *ōr*, as the last syllable of the root, into *is*: as, *gĕnĕrĭs*, Nom. *gĕnŭs*.

REM.—This applies only to a few of those words whose root ends in *ĕr* or *ōr*.

146. The predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun denoting the *manner* or *cause* of its action, or the *means* or *instrument* employed; e. g.,

Irām meām dōnō plācābĭt.

(*Anger my with a gift he will appease.*)

He will appease my anger *with a gift*.

147. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *cause* or *manner* of an

* The *acc. sing.* is used here, though any other case would do equally well.

† The *nom.* and *voc.*, it will be remembered, are the same in form.

action, and the *means* of *instrument* employed, are expressed by the *ablative*.

REM.—In the above example, *dōnō* expresses the means employed, and is accordingly in the ablative.

148. VOCABULARY.

Altūs, ā, ūm,	high, lofty	(<i>altitude</i>).
Cātēnā, ae,	chain.	
Cīngērē,	to surround.	
Complērē,	to fill	(<i>complement</i>).
Cunctūs, ā, ūm,	all (as a whole).	
Dōnūm, ī,	gift	(<i>donation</i>).
Flūmēn, īnis,	river.	
Glādiūs, ī,	sword.	
Illustrārē,	{ to illumine to illuminate	{ (<i>illustrate</i>)
Irā, ae,	anger	{ (<i>ire</i>). { (<i>irascible</i>).
Lux, lucīs,	light	(<i>lucid</i>).
Mūliēr, ēris,	woman.	
Plācārē,	to appease	(<i>placable</i>).

149. Exercises.

(a) 1. Miles regem gladio occidēbat. 2. Regem catēna vinciēbat. 3. Sol urbem magnam sua luce illustrat. 4. Iram dono placant. 5. Cives regis iram donis placābunt. 6. Flumen urbem cingit.

7. Mulier bona epistōlas scribit. 8. Agricōla urbis portas claudet. 9. Poetārum filiae cantant. 10. Pulchrae pastōrum filiae saltābunt. 11. Caii animum donis placābunt.

(b) 1. The soldiers will bind the king with chains. 2. The river will surround the beautiful city. 3. The boy surrounds his head with a garland. 4. He will surround his sister's head with garlands. 5. He will

give a beautiful garland to his sister. 6. They will give beautiful garlands to their brothers.

7. They were building a wall. 8. They will surround the city with a high wall. 9. The sun illumines all (things) with its light. 10. The sun fills all (things) with its light. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The blind do not see the light of the sun.

LESSON XXIX.

Adjectives.—Third Declension.

150. ADJECTIVES of the third declension may be divided into three classes, viz :

- 1) Those which have three different forms in the nominative singular (one for each gender).
- 2) Those which have two (the *masc.* and *fem.* being the same).
- 3) Those which have but one (the same for all genders).

151. Adjectives of the third declension are declined in their several genders like nouns of the same *declension*, *gender*, and *ending*. It must, however, be observed,

- 1) That those which have only one form in the nominative singular have the abl. sing. in *ě* or *ĩ*, and the rest, with the exception of comparatives, in *ĩ* only.
- 2) That all except comparatives have, in the plural, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc. neuter* in *ĩĩ*, and the *genitive* in *ĩĩm*.

CLASS I.—THREE TERMINATIONS.

152. Adjectives of the first class have in the nominative singular the masculine in *ēr*, the feminine in *īs*, and the neuter in *ě*.

PARADIGM.

<i>Acěr, sharp.</i>			
SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	<i>Acěr,</i>	<i>ācr-īs,</i>	<i>ācr-ě.</i>
G.	<i>Acr-īs,</i>	<i>ācr-īs,</i>	<i>ācr-īs.</i>
D.	<i>Acr-ī,</i>	<i>ācr-ī,</i>	<i>ācr-ī.</i>
A.	<i>Acr-ěm,</i>	<i>ācr-ěm,</i>	<i>ācr-ě.</i>
V.	<i>Acěr,</i>	<i>ācr-īs,</i>	<i>ācr-ě.</i>
A.	<i>Acr-ī,</i>	<i>ācr-ī,</i>	<i>ācr-ī.</i>
PLURAL.			
N.	<i>Acr-ēs,</i>	<i>ācr-ēs,</i>	<i>ācr-īā.</i>
G.	<i>Acr-iŭm,</i>	<i>ācr-iŭm,</i>	<i>ācr-iŭm.</i>
D.	<i>Acr-ībŭs,</i>	<i>ācr-ībŭs,</i>	<i>ācr-ībŭs.</i>
A.	<i>Acr-ēs,</i>	<i>ācr-ēs,</i>	<i>ācr-īā.</i>
V.	<i>Acr-ēs,</i>	<i>ācr-ēs,</i>	<i>ācr-īā.</i>
A.	<i>Acr-ībŭs,</i>	<i>ācr-ībŭs,</i>	<i>ācr-ībŭs.</i>

CLASS II.—TWO TERMINATIONS.

153. Adjectives of the second class have both the masculine and feminine in *īs*, and the neuter in *ě*, except comparatives,* which have the masculine and feminine in *iŏr*, and the neuter in *iŭs*.

* The use of comparatives will be illustrated in connection with the comparison of adjectives.

PARADIGMS.

1. *Tristīs, sad.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Trist-īs,	trist-ĕ.	N. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
G. Trist-īs,	trist-īs.	G. Trist-iŭm,	trist-iŭm.
D. Trist-i,	trist-i.	D. Trist-ībŭs,	trist-ībŭs.
A. Trist-ēm,	trist-ĕ.	A. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
V. Trist-īs,	trist-ĕ.	V. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
A. Trist-i,	trist-i.	A. Trist-ībŭs,	trist-ībŭs.

2. *Tristiŏr (comparative), more sad.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Tristiŏr,	tristiŭs.	N. Tristiŏr-ēs,	tristiŏr-ā.
G. Tristiŏr-īs,	tristiŏr-īs.	G. Tristiŏr-ŭm,	tristiŏr-ŭm.
D. Tristiŏr-i,	tristiŏr-i.	D. Tristiŏr-ībŭs,	tristiŏr-ībŭs.
A. Tristiŏr-ēm,	tristiŭs.	A. Tristiŏr-ēs,	tristiŏr-ā.
V. Tristiŏr,	tristiŭs.	V. Tristiŏr-ēs,	tristiŏr-ā.
A. Tristiŏr-ĕ (i),	tristiŏr-ĕ(i).	A. Tristiŏr-ībŭs,	tristiŏr-ībŭs.

CLASS III.—ONE TERMINATION.

154. All other adjectives of this declension have *only one* form in the nominative singular for all genders.

PARADIGMS.

1. *Fēlix, happy.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Fēlix,	fēlix.	N. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
G. Fēlic-īs,	fēlic-īs.	G. Fēlic-iŭm,	fēlic-iŭm.
D. Fēlic-i,	fēlic-i.	D. Fēlic-ībŭs,	fēlic-ībŭs.
A. Fēlic-ēm,	fēlix.	A. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
V. Fēlix,	fēlix.	V. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
A. Fēlic-ĕ (i),	fēlic-ĕ (i).	A. Fēlic-ībŭs,	fēlic-ībŭs.

PARADIGMS,—*continued.*

2. Prudens, <i>prudent.</i>			
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Prūdēns,	prūdēns.	N. Prūdēt-ēs,	prūdēt-iā.
G. Prūdēt-īs,	prūdēt-īs.	G. Prūdēt-iūm,	prūdēt-iūm.
D. Prūdēt-i,	prūdēt-i.	D. Prūdēt-ībūs,	prūdēt-ībūs.
A. Prūdēt-ēm,	prūdēns.	A. Prūdēt-ēs,	prūdēt-iā.
V. Prūdēns,	prūdēns.	V. Prūdēt-ēs,	prūdēt-iā.
A. Prūdēt-ē (ī),	prūdēt-ē(ī).	A. Prūdēt-ībūs,	prūdēt-ībūs.

155. VOCABULARY.

Acēr, acrīs, acrē,	sharp, severe	(<i>acrid</i>).
Fidēlis, ě,	trusty, faithful	(<i>fidelity</i>).
Fortīs, ě,	brave	(<i>fortitude</i>).
Glōriā, ae,	glory.	
Māculārē,	to blemish, to stain	(<i>maculate</i>).
Maxīmī,	at a very high (price), very highly.	
Maxīmī aestīmārē,	to prize very highly.	
Pausanias, ae,	Pausanias, <i>a distinguished Spartan general.</i>	
Prūdēns, entīs,	prudent, cautious.	
Turpīs, ě,	base, disgraceful	(<i>turpitude</i>)
Sāpiens, entīs,	wise.	
Splēdēns, entīs,	shining	(<i>splendid</i>).

156. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Pater meus fidēlem servum vindicābat. 2. Fidēles servi domīnos suos vindicābunt. 3. Sol splēdēns cuncta suā luce illustrābat. 4. Sapientes virtūtem *maxīmi*² aestīmant.

5. Sapiens leges acres non violābit. 6. Christiāni virtūtem laudant. 7. Boni virtūtem *magni* aestīmābant. 8. Pausanias gloriā turpi morte maculābat. 9. Pausanias magnā belli gloriā turpi morte maculābat.

(b) 1. The brave soldier will fight. 2. The brave king will conquer the enemy (*pl.*). 3. The brave will

conquer the cowardly. 4. Wise (men) will not stain their glory by a base death.

5. The good prize the laws of the state *very highly*.^s
6. Kind masters do not punish faithful slaves. 7. A prudent (man) will not violate the laws of his country
8. The prudent do not violate severe laws.

LESSON XXX.

Adjectives, continued.—Nouns.—Fourth Declension.

157. ADJECTIVES are either of the *first* and *second declension*, or of the *third only*: those of the first and second declension are declined in the *masculine* and *neuter* like nouns of the *second* declension, and in the *feminine* like nouns of the *first*; those of the third declension are declined throughout like nouns of the *third*. (See Lesson XXIII.)

158. Endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			<i>A few† have Sing. thus:</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
	2.*	1.	2.	2.	1.	2.			
N.	ūs, ěr, †	ǎ,	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ǎ.	ūs, ěr,	ǎ,	ŭm.
G.	ī,	ae,	ī.	ōrŭm,	ārŭm,	ōrŭm.	īūs,	īūs,	īūs.
D.	ō,	ae,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ī,	ī,	ī.
A.	ŭm,	ǎm,	ŭm.	ōs,	ās,	ǎ.	ŭm,	ǎm,	ŭm.
V.	ě, ěr, †	ǎ,	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ǎ.	ě, ěr,	ǎ,	ŭm.
A.	ō,	ā,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ō,	ā,	ō.

* The declensions of the different genders are here indicated by numerals.

† In adjectives in *ěr*, the *masc. nom. sing.* is generally the root (*ě* is sometimes dropped): *ěr*, therefore, is not properly a *case-ending*; it is given merely to show the termination of the *nom.* and *voc. sing.*, without regard to the root (107).

† See list, 113, REM.

. 159. Endings of adjectives of the Third Declension.

	THREE TERM.			TWO TERM.	COMPARATIVES.		ONE TERM.	
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F. N.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F. N.</i>	
N.	ēr,*	īs,	ě.	īs,	ě.	ōr,†	ūs.	various.
G.	īs,	īs,	īs.	īs,	īs.	ōr†-īs,	ōr-īs.	īs.
D.	ī,	ī,	ī.	ī,	ī.	ōr-ī,	ōr-ī.	ī.
A.	ēm,	ēm,	ě.	ēm,	ě.	ōr-ēm,	ūs.	ēm.‡
V.	ēr,*	īs,	ēr	īs,	ě.	ōr,	ūs.	like nom.
A.	ī,	ī,	ī.	ī,	ī.	ōr-ě (ōr-ī),	ōr-ě (ōr-ī).	ě (ī).
N.	ēs,	ēs,	iā.	ēs,	iā.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ā.	ēs, iā.
G.	iūm,	iūm,	iūm.	iūm,	iūm.	ōr-iūm,	ōr-iūm.	iūm, iūm.
D.	ibūs,	ibūs,	ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.	ōr-ibūs,	ōr-ibūs.	ibūs, ibūs.
A.	ēs,	ēs,	iā.	ēs,	iā.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ā.	ēs, iā.
V.	ēs,	ēs,	iā.	ēs,	iā.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ā.	ēs, iā.
A.	ibūs,	ibūs,	ibūs.	ibūs,	ibūs.	ōr-ibūs,	ōr-ibūs.	ibūs, ibūs.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

160. Nouns of the *Fourth Declension* have the genitive singular in *ūs*, and the nominative in *ūs* and *ū*.

161. In this declension, nouns in *ūs* (with a few exceptions) are *masculine*, and those in *ū* are *neuter*.

162. The root is found by dropping the *nominative ending*: as, *fructūs*, fruit; root, *fruct*: *cornū*, a horn; root, *corn*.

163. Nouns in *ūs* (of the fourth declension) are declined with the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus. Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing	ūs,	ūs,	uī,	ūm, ūs,	ū.
Plur.	ūs,	uūm,	ibūs (ūbūs †),	ūs, ūs,	ibūs (ūbūs †).

* The remark on this ending, in adjectives of the first and second declension, is also applicable here (See 158, REM. 2.)

† The *ōr* here given in connection with the case-endings belongs to the root; in the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* of the *neut. sing.*, it is changed into *ūs*

‡ Neut. like nom.

§ This ending is used only in a few words

164. Neuters in *ū*, though formerly considered indeclinable in the singular, are found to have the genitive in *ūs*, and are declined with the following

NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing. <i>ū</i>	<i>ūs</i> ,	<i>ū</i> ,	<i>ū</i> ,	<i>ū</i> ,	<i>ū</i> .
Plur. <i>uā</i> ,	<i>uūm</i> ,	<i>ībūs</i> (<i>ūbūs*</i>),	<i>uā</i> ,	<i>uā</i> ,	<i>ībūs</i> (<i>ūbūs*</i>).

PARADIGMS.

1. <i>Fructūs, m., fruit.</i> (root, <i>fruct.</i>)		2. <i>Cornū, n., a horn.</i> (root, <i>corn.</i>)	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Fruct-ūs</i> ,	<i>Fruct-ūs</i> .	N. <i>Corn-ū</i> ,	<i>Corn-uā</i> .
G. <i>Fruct-ūs</i> ,	<i>Fruct-uūm</i> .	G. <i>Corn-ūs</i> ,	<i>Corn-uūm</i> .
D. <i>Fruct-uī</i> ,	<i>Fruct-ībūs</i> .	D. <i>Corn-ū</i> ,	<i>Corn-ībūs</i> .
A. <i>Fruct-ūm</i> ,	<i>Fruct-ūs</i> .	A. <i>Corn-ū</i> ,	<i>Corn-uā</i> .
V. <i>Fruct-ūs</i> ,	<i>Fruct-ūs</i> .	V. <i>Corn-ū</i> ,	<i>Corn-uā</i> .
A. <i>Fruct-ū</i> .	<i>Fruct-ībūs</i> .	A. <i>Corn-ū</i> ,	<i>Corn-ībūs</i> .

165. VOCABULARY.

<i>Currūs, ūs</i> ,	chariot.	
<i>Dux, dūcīs, m. and f.</i>	leader, guide	(<i>duke</i>).
<i>Et</i> ,	and.	
<i>Excrūciārē</i> ,	to torture	(<i>excruciate</i>).
<i>Exercītūs, ūs</i> ,	army.	
<i>Innōcens, entīs</i> ,	innocent.	
<i>Luctūs, ūs</i> ,	grief, sadness.	
<i>Mānūs, ūs, f.</i>	hand	(<i>manacle</i>).
<i>Mētūs, ūs</i> ,	fear.	
<i>Nescīrē</i> ,	not to know, to be ignorant of.	
<i>Sīnūs, ūs</i> ,	bosom	(<i>sinuous</i>).
<i>Sullā, ae</i> ,	<i>Sulla, a man's name.</i>	

* This ending is used only in a few words.

166. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Sinus metum nescit. 2. Luctus animum excruciat. 3. Rex hostium (141, 2) currus videt. 4. Hostes regis currum audient. 5. Duces exercitui viam monstrābunt. 6. Puella epistolam sua manu scribit.

7. Caius epistōlas sua manu scribēbat. 8. Servi Sullae domum evertēbant. 9. Servus domīni mortem vindicābit. 10. Pastōris filius mortem non timet. 11. Luctus et metus animum excruciant (612, REM.).

(b) 1. The innocent (man) knows not fear. 2. The innocent know not fear. 3. The bosom of the innocent knows not fear. 4. The boy's mother will write the letter with her own hand. 5. The father is writing the letters with his own hand.

6. The slave will show the beautiful chariot to his master. 7. The father will avenge the death of his son. 8. Fear tortures the cowardly. 9. Fear does not torture the brave. 10. The cowardly fear death. 11. Brave soldiers do not fear the enemy.

LESSON XXXI.

Nouns.—Fifth Declension.

167. NOUNS of the *Fifth Declension* have the genitive singular in *ēi*,* and the nominative in *ēs*.

168. Nouns of this declension are feminine, except *diēs*, a day, masculine and feminine in the singular,

* In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. *e* is long, except in *spēi* (where it is short), *fidēi*, and *rei* (where it is common).

and masculine only in the plural; and *měrīdiēs*, mid-day, masculine.

REM.—The fifth declension comprises only a few words, and of these few, only two,—*diēs*, a day, and *rēs*, a thing, are complete in the plural.

169. The root is formed by dropping the nominative ending: as, *diēs*, a day; root, *dī*.

170. Nouns of this declension are declined with the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Accus.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
Sing.	ēs,	ēī,*	ēī,*	ēm,	ēs,	ē.
Plur.	ēs,	ērŭm,	ēbŭs,	ēs,	ēs,	ēbŭs.

PARADIGMS.

<i>Rēs, f., a thing.</i>			<i>Diēs, m. and f., a day.</i>		
(root, <i>r.</i>)			(root, <i>dī</i> .)		
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	R-ēs,	R-ēs.	N.	Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
G.	R-ēī,	R-ērŭm.	G.	Di-ēī,	Di-ērŭm.
D.	R-ēī,	R-ēbŭs.	D.	Di-ēī,	Di-ēbŭs.
A.	R-ēm,	R-ēs.	A.	Di-ēm,	Di-ēs.
V.	R-ēs,	R-ēs.	V.	Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
A.	R-ē,	R-ēbŭs.	A.	Di-ē,	Di-ēbŭs.

171. VOCABULARY.

<i>Aciēs</i> , ēī,	line of battle.	
<i>Aciēm</i> instruērě,	to draw up an army in order of battle.	
<i>Cōpiae</i> , † arŭm,	forces	(copious).
<i>Diēs</i> , ēī,	day.	

* See note on page 78.

† *Cōpiae* is of the first declension, plural; the singular is not used with this signification.

Educēre,	to lead forth	(<i>educere</i>).
Emēre,	to purchase.	
Equitātūs, ūs,	cavalry.	
Fīdēs, ēī,	faith, one's word	(<i>fidelity</i>).
Instruēre,	to arrange, to array	(<i>instruct</i>).
Omnīs, ě,	all, every.	
Proximūs, ā, ūm,	nearest, next	(<i>proximate</i>)
Rēducēre,	to lead back	(<i>reduce</i>).
Servāre,	to keep, to observe	(<i>serve</i>).
Spēs, ēī,	hope.	

172. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Christiānus fidem suam servat. 2. Boni fidem suam non viōlant. 3. Dies veniet. 4. Proxīmo die (88) Caesar copias suas reducēbat. 5. Proxīmo die Caesar aciem instruēbat.

6. Caesar equitātum omnem educēbat. 7. Puellam regis currum vidēbat. 8. Hostium (141, 2) copias vidēbunt. 9. Tullia puellis viam monstrābit. 10. Tullia epistōlam sua manu scribit.

(b) 1. The king will keep his word. 2. The queen will not break her word. 3. All (men) prize hope *very highly*.² 4. They do not purchase hope with gold. 5. The wise will not sell hope for gold (122).

6. He prizes his cavalry *very highly*. 7. The king thinks *highly* of^r his whole army. 8. The soldiers will observe the laws. 9. The citizens will observe all the laws of the state. 10. The wise value true greatness of mind *very highly*. 11. The avaricious value money *very highly*.

LESSON XXXII.

Nouns.—Five Declensions.—Greek Nouns.—Gender.

173. TERMINATIONS of Substantives.

SINGULAR.									
Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.		
F.	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.		
N. ā.	ūs, ěr, ĩr. ũm.		various.		ūs.	ū.	ēs.		
G. ae.	ī.		īs.		ūs.		ēī.*		
D. ae.	ō.		ī.		uī.	ū.	ēī.*		
A. ām.	ūm.		ēm (īm). like nom.		ūm.	ū.	ēm.		
V. ā.	ě, ěr, ĩr. ũm.		like nom.		ūs.	ū.	ēs.		
A. ā.	ō.		ě (ī).		ū.		ē.		
PLURAL.									
N. ae.	ī.	ā.	ēs,	ā, or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.		
G. arūm.	ōrūm		ūm (iūm).		uūm.		ērūm.		
D. īs.	īs.		ībūs.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūs.		
A. ās.	ōs.	ā.	ēs.	ā, or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.		
V. ae.	ī.	ā.	ēs.	ā, or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.		
A. īs.	īs.		ībūs.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūs.		

REM.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek. The only *nominative endings* not already noticed, are *e, as, and es*, in the first declension, and *os* and *on* in the second.

174. The following are specimens of the declension of Greek nouns.

* See 167, REM.

DECLENSION I.

1. Aenēās (*a man's name*). | 2. Anchīsēs (*a man's name*).

N. Aenē-ās,
 G. Aenē-ae,
 D. Aenē-ae,
 A. Aenē-ām (ān),
 V. Aenē-ā,
 A. Aenē-ā.

N. Anchīs-ēs,
 G. Anchīs-ae,
 D. Anchīs-ae,
 A. Anchīs-ēn,
 V. Anchīs-ē (ā),
 A. Anchīs-ē (ā).

3. Epitome, *an abridgment*.*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Epītōm-ē,
 G. Epītōm-ēs,
 D. Epītōm-ae,
 A. Epītōm-ēn,
 V. Epītōm-ē,
 A. Epītōm-ē,

Epītōm-ae.
 Epītōm-ārūm.
 Epītōm-īs.
 Epītōm-ās.
 Epītōm-ae.
 Epītōm-īs.

DECLENSION II.

1. Ilion, *n.* (*name of a city*). | 2. Delos, *f.* (*name of an island*).

N. Ili-ōn,
 G. Ili-ī,
 D. Ili-ō,
 A. Ili-ōn,
 V. Ili-ōn,
 A. Ili-ō.

N. Dēl-ōs,
 G. Dēl-ī,
 D. Dēl-ō,
 A. Dēl-ōn,
 V. Dēl-ē,
 A. Dēl-ō.

DECLENSION III.

1. Pericles (*a man's name*). | 2. Hērōs, *a hero*.*Singular.**Plural.*

N. Pērīcl-ēs,
 G. Pērīcl-īs,
 D. Pērīcl-ī,
 A. Pērīcl-ēm (eā),
 V. Pērīcl-ēs (ē),
 A. Pērīcl-ē.

N. Hērō-s, Hērō-ēs.
 G. Hērō-īs, Hērō-ūm.
 D. Hērō-ī, Hērō-ībūs.
 A. Hērō-ēm (ā), Hērō-ēs (ās).
 V. Hērō-s, Hērō-ēs.
 A. Hērō-ē, Hērō-ībūs.

175. Table of Genders of Nouns as determined by Nom. Ending.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Dec. I.</i>	ās and ēs.	ǎ and ě.	
<i>Dec. II.</i>	ěr, ĩr, ůs (and os*).		ŭm (and on*).
<i>Dec. III.</i>	er, or, os, es, increasing in gen. and o, <i>except</i> do, go, and io.	do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, s impure, † x and es not increasing in gen.	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us
<i>Dec. IV.</i>	ůs.		ŭ.
<i>Dec. V.</i>		ēs.	

(For exceptions see Table of Genders [579]).

176. VOCABULARY.

Accĭpĕrĕ, †	to receive, to accept.
Achillĕs, † ĩs.	Achilles, <i>a Grecian hero.</i>
Aenĕās, ae,	Aeneas, <i>a Trojan prince.</i>
Anchĭsĕs, ae,	Anchises, <i>the father of Aeneas.</i>
Ascāniŭs, ĩ,	Ascanius, <i>the son of Aeneas.</i>
Carthāgŏ, ĩnĭs,	Carthage, <i>a city in the northern part of Africa.</i>

* The inclosed endings belong to Greek nouns, many of which, being proper names (of men and women), have natural gender.

† Preceded by a consonant.

‡ Accĭpĕrĕ forms its imperfect and future tenses like verbs of the fourth conjugation. (See 270, 271.)

§ Achillĕs, being a Greek noun, is declined like Pericles (174).

Dīdō,* ūs, or ōnīs,	Dido, <i>queen of Tyre and afterwards the foundress of Carthage.</i>	
Epītōmē, ēs,	abridgment	(<i>epitome</i>)
Hērōs, ōis,	hero.	
Histōriā, ae,	history.	
Industriā, ae,	industry.	
Nostēr, trā, trūm,	our.	
Rēgnūm, ī,	kingdom, government.	
Rōmā, ae,	Rome, <i>city of Italy, on the river Tiber.</i>	
Trojanūs, ā, ūm,	Trojan.	

177. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Aenēas, Anchīsae filius, urbem condēbat. 2. Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnum accipit. 3. Dido Carthagīnem condēbat. 4. Epītōmen oratiōnis suae scribet.

5. Caesar milītes omnes educēbat. 6. Industria *multum voluptātis* habet. 7. Labōrem suum finiet. 8. Horti nostri multos flores habent. 9. Servus puēros vocābit.

(b) 1. Aeneas was founding Rome. 2. The son of Anchises was founding Rome. 3. Aeneas, the son of Anchises, was founding the city of Rome (the city Rome). 4. The Trojan hero loves queen Dido. 5. They will kill the Trojan hero.

6. They are reading an abridgment of the history. 7. The soldiers praise Caesar. 8. Aeneas praises his father Anchises. 9. The Trojans fear Achilles. 10. Achilles was slaying the Trojans. 11. The soldier is showing his sword to the boy. 12. They will show their swords to the boys.

* Dido is sometimes declined regularly, as a Latin noun of the third declension, and sometimes has the genitive in *ūs*, and all the other cases like the nom.

LESSON XXXIII.

Verbs.—Essĕ, to be. *Predicate, Essĕ, with a Noun or an Adjective.*

178. Essĕ, to be, is an irregular verb (i. e., it does not belong to either of the four conjugations already noticed), and gives us in the *third persons* of the *present, imperfect, and future tenses*, the following

PARADIGM.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Present.	Est, he, she, or it is,	Sunt, they are,
Imperfect.	Erăt, “ “ “ was,	Erant, “ were,
Future.	Erĭt, “ “ “ will be.	Erunt, “ will be.

179. The predicate of a proposition is sometimes expressed by the verb *essĕ* (to be), with a noun or an adjective; e. g.,

1. Terră est rôtundă.

The earth is round.

REM. 1.—In this example, the predicate is not simply *est*, but *est rôtundă*; for the assertion is not that the earth *is* (i. e. exists), but that the earth *is round*.

REM. 2.—The adjective *rôtundă* agrees with the *subject terră* in *gender, number, and case*, by the rule already given. (114).

2. Plūrĭmæ stellæ sōlēs sunt.

(*Very many stars suns are.*)

Very many stars are suns.

REM.—Here the predicate is *sōlēs sunt*.

180. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate after *essĕ* is put in the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing.

REM.—In example 2, *sōlēs* is in the nominative by this rule.

181. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The adjectives *dīgnūs*, *indīgnūs*, *contentūs*, *praeditūs*, *frētūs*, and *libēr*, take the ablative; e. g.,

Virtūs parvō contentā est.
(*Virtue with little content is.*)
Virtue is content with little.

REM.—*Parvō* in this example is a neut. adj. used as a noun; it is put in the *ablative* after *contentā*, by the rule just given.

182. VOCABULARY.

Arbōr, ōrīs, <i>f.</i>	tree	(<i>arbor</i>).
Beātūs, ā, ūm,	happy	(<i>beatitudo</i>)
Candidūs, ā, ūm,	white	(<i>candid</i>).
Contentūs, ā, ūm,	content, contented.	
Culpā, <i>ae</i> ,	blame, fault	(<i>culpable</i>).
Dīgnūs, ā, ūm,	worthy	(<i>dignity</i>).
Essē,	to be.	
Est,	is, it is.	
Fācērē,*	to do, to make.	
Flōrērē,	to flourish.	
Frētūs, ā, ūm,	relying on.	
Indīgnūs, ā, ūm,	unworthy	(<i>indignity</i>).
Laus, dīs,	praise	(<i>laud</i>).
Libēr, ērā, ērūm,	free	(<i>liberty</i>).
Nēmō (inis, †)	nobody, no one.	
Nix, nīvis,	snow.	
Nunquām,	never.	
Parvūm (<i>neut. adj.</i>),	little, a little.	
Praeditūs, ā, ūm,	endued with.	
Quām,	how.	
Quām multī, <i>ae, ā</i> ,	how many.	
Sempēr,	always.	
Vīrēs, vīriūm, <i>plur. of vīs</i> ,	strength.	
Vītā, <i>ae</i> ,	life	ot (<i>vital</i>).

* This verb, together with some others of the third conjugation, has the imperfect and future like verbs of the fourth conjugation.

† The genitive *neminis* and ablative *nemine* are not in good use.

183. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Nix est candida. 2. Bonus est beātus. 3. Boni sunt beāti. 4. Sapientes parvo contenti sunt. 5. Servus laude dignus est. 6. Patris mei servus laude indīgnus est.

7. Caius patriam auro vendēbat. 8. Caius, homo vita indīgnus, patriam auro vendet. 9. Quam multi indīgni luce sunt! 10. Arbor florēbat. 11. Balbus multa laude florēbat.

(b) 1. No-one is always happy. 2. The avaricious (man) will never be contented. 3. The avaricious are not contented. 4. Caius is not free from blame. 5. Caius is unworthy of praise.

6. Balbus praises my fidelity. 7. Balbus, a man endowed with great virtue, was praising my fidelity. 8. Balbus does *much good*.⁴ 9. Caius is unworthy of life. 10. Caius, a man unworthy of life, does *no good*.⁴ 11. Caius, relying on his strength, does not fear the lion. 12. The slaves are not free from blame. 13. Christians are contented with little.

 LESSON XXXIV.

Verbs.—Infinitive as Subject.—Genitive with Esse in the Predicate.

184. AN *infinitive mood* (with the words belonging to it) (9) may be used as a noun, and thus become the subject of a verb. When thus used it is in the neuter gender (44, 3), and of course takes the adjectives in agreement with it in the same gender; e. g.,

Difficīlĕ est jūdīcārĕ.

(*Difficult (it) is to judge.*)

It is difficult *to judge*, or, *To judge* is difficult.

REM.—Here *jūdīcārĕ* (to judge) is the subject of the proposition, for it is that of which the predicate *difficile est* (is difficult) is affirmed. It is in the nominative case, and subject of the verb *est*, and the adjective *difficīlĕ* agrees with it.

185. When the noun in the predicate after *essĕ* does not denote the same person or thing as the subject, it is put in the *genitive*; e. g.,

Christiānī est nēmīnĕm viōlārĕ.

(*Of a Christian it is nobody to wrong.*)

It is the duty (or part) of a Christian to wrong nobody.

REM. 1.—In this example the subject is *nēmīnĕm viōlārĕ*, and the predicate, *Christiānī est*.

REM. 2.—Combining articles 180 and 185 we have the following

186. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate, after the verb *essĕ*, is put,

- 1) In the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., *Cīcērŭ ěrāt consŭl*, *Cicero was consul*.
- 2) In the *genitive* when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Christiānī est nēmīnĕm viōlārĕ*, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody*.

187. In rendering into English, when a genitive follows any part of the verb *essĕ* (as *est*, *ěrāt*, *ěrīt*, &c.), such a substantive as *duty*, *part*, *mark*, *business*, &c., must be supplied.

<i>English Idiom.</i>	<i>Latin Idiom.</i>
It is the part	} of a wise man. It is of a wise man.
“ duty	
“ business	
“ mark	
“ character	

188. VOCABULARY.

Difficilis, ě,	difficult.	
Errārĕ,	to err.	
Fācilis, ě,	easy	(facility).
Fidĕm violārĕ,	to break one's word.	
Hūmānūs, a, um,	human, natural to man.	
Māgnūm est,	it is a great thing.	
Peccārĕ,	to sin, to do wrong.	
Turpīs, ě,	base, disgraceful	(turpitude).
Violārĕ,	{ to offend against, to wrong, to break a law, one's word, &c. }	(violate).

189. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Humānum*⁶ est peccāre. 2. *Humānum* est errāre. 3. *Turpe* est fidem suam violāre. 4. *Patris*⁷ est filium suum docĕre. 5. *Regis* est regnāre.

6. *Matris* est filias suas docĕre. 7. *Servi* est viam monstrāre. 8. *Turpe* est poĕtae domum evertĕre. 9. *Matres* filias laudant. 10. *Boni* est fidem servāre. 11. *Impii* est fidem violāre.

REM. 1.—In English, when an infinitive mood is the subject of a proposition, the pronoun *it* is used before the verb *is*; hence, in translating such sentences into Latin, this pronoun *it*, which represents, as it were, the coming infinitive or clause, must be omitted.

REM. 2.—After *it is*, such a substantive as *part, duty, business, mark*, must be omitted in translating into Latin.

(b) 1. *It* is a great (thing) not to fear death.⁶ 2. *It* is easy to err. 3. *It* is (the duty)⁷ of a Christian to keep (his) word. 4. It is (the part) of a wise (man) to keep the laws.

5. It is disgraceful to neglect a son. 6. It is natural-to-man to prize money *very highly*. 7. It is the mark of an unlearned man *to think little* of wisdom. 8. It is the slave's *business* to shut the gates of the city. 9. It is difficult to shut the gates of the city. 10. A

good citizen will observe the laws of his country. 11. It is the *part*⁷ of a good citizen to observe the laws of his country.

LESSON XXXV.

Verbs.—Tenses for Completed Action.—First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations.

190. THE tenses which we have thus far used, viz., the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*, represent the action of the verb as continuing (11), i. e., as *not completed*. There are also three tenses for *completed* action, viz.:

- 1) The *Perfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *present* time, i. e., as just completed; e. g., *āmāvīt*, he has loved.
- 2) The *Pluperfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *past* time; as, *āmāvērāt*, he had loved.
- 3) The *Future Perfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *future* time; as, *āmāvērīt*, he will have loved.

191. The tenses for *completed* action are not formed from the same root as those for action *not completed*, but from another⁸ called the *second root*. This is formed in various ways.

192. In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second root* is formed by adding *āv*, *ū*,* and *īv*, respectively, to the root[†] of the verb; e. g.:

* A very few verbs of the second conjugation add *ev*, which may be regarded as the full form for which *u* is a contraction (the *e* being dropped, and *v* changed to *u*).

† This we will now call the 1st root, to distinguish it from the 2d.

		<i>First Root.</i>	<i>Second Root.</i>
Conj. I.	Amārě,	ām,	āmāv.
Conj. II.	Mönērě,	mön,	mönũ.
Conj. IV.	Audīrě,	aud,	audīv.

193. In verbs of all the conjugations, the *third persons singular* of the tenses for *completed* action are formed by adding to the *second root* the following *endings*:

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Future Perfect.</i>
īt,	ěrăt,	ěrīt.

PARADIGMS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Amārě, to love: 1st root, *ām*; 2d root, *āmāv*.

Perfect. Amāv-īt, he, she, or it has loved (or loved).*

Pluperf. Amāv-ěrăt, “ “ “ had loved.

Fut. Perf. Amāv-ěrīt, “ “ “ will have loved.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Mönērě, to advise: 1st root, *mön*; 2d root, *mönũ*.

Perfect. Mönũ-īt, he, she, or it has advised (or advised).*

Pluperf. Mönũ-ěrăt, “ “ “ had advised.

Fut. Perf. Mönũ-ěrīt, “ “ “ shall have advised.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Audīrě, to hear: 1st root, *aud*; 2d root, *audīv*.

Perfect. Audīv-īt, he, she, or it has heard (or heard).*

Pluperf. Audīv-ěrăt, “ “ “ had heard.

Fut. Perf. Audīv-ěrīt, “ “ “ shall have heard.

194. In any regular verb, the third persons *plural*, in the tenses for completed action, are formed by simply

* The perfect in Latin corresponds sometimes to our *perfect indefinite*, and sometimes to our *perfect definite* (perfect with have); hence, *āmāvīt* may be translated either *he has loved*, or *he loved*.

inserting *n* before *t* in the ending of the third person singular (35), except in the perfect, where *it* must be changed into *erunt*; e. g.,

		<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Fut. Perfect.</i>
Conj. I.	{	Sing. Amāv- <i>it</i> ,	āmāv- <i>ērāt</i> ,	āmāv- <i>ērīt</i> .
		Plur. Amāv- <i>erunt</i> ,	āmāv- <i>erant</i> ,	āmāv- <i>erint</i> .
Conj. II.	{	Sing. Mōnu- <i>it</i> ,	mōnu- <i>ērāt</i> ,	mōnu- <i>ērīt</i> .
		Plur. Mōnu- <i>erunt</i> ,	mōnu- <i>erant</i> ,	mōnu- <i>erint</i> .
Conj. IV.	{	Sing. Audīv- <i>it</i> ,	audīv- <i>ērāt</i> ,	audīv- <i>ērīt</i> .
		Plur. Audīv- <i>erunt</i> ,	audīv- <i>erant</i> ,	audīv- <i>erint</i> .

195. VOCABULARY.

Aestimārē, āv,*	to estimate, to value.	
Arārē, āv,	to plough	(<i>arable</i>).
Audire, iv,	to hear	(<i>audible</i>).
Dilāniārē, āv,	to tear in pieces.	
Jūrārē, āv,	to swear.	
Laudārē, āv,	to praise	(<i>laudable</i> .)
Monstrārē, āv,	to show.	
Placārē, āv,	to appease	(<i>placable</i> .)
Sēpēlirē, iv,	to bury.	
Servārē, āv,	to keep, to observe.	
Terrērē, u,	to terrify, to frighten.	

196. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer juravērat. 2. Puēri juravērunt. 3. Agricōla aravērit. 4. Servi aravērint. 5. Vulpes puēros terruit. 6. Vulpes puēros terruērunt. 7. Poētae sapientiam *parvi* aestimāvit.

8. Veram virtūtem magni aestimavērat. 9. Christiānus pecuniam *parvi* aestimāvit. 10. Christiāni est pecuniam *parvi* aestimāre. 11. Magnam poētae sapi-

* The learner will readily form the *second* root from the *first*, by adding the endings here given.

entiam parvi aestimavĕrant. 12. Pater filium sepelĭvit. 13. Puĕri patrem sepelivĕrant.

(b) 1. The boy has heard a voice. 2. The boys had heard their father's voice. 3. The slave had shown the way to the shepherd. 4. They will have shown the house to their master.

5. Caius had praised his son. 6. He has praised his slaves. 7. The lion has torn the horse in pieces. 8. The fox had frightened the boy. 9. They had valued wisdom *at a low price*. 10. It is easy to keep (one's) word. 11. It is difficult to appease anger. 12. He has appeased the boy's anger with a gift.

LESSON XXXVI.

Third Conjugation.—Class I.—Second Root *the same as the First*.

197. Most verbs of the third conjugation may be divided into two classes, viz. :

- 1) Those which have the *second root* the same as the first.
- 2) Those which form it by the addition of *s*.

198. The *first class* comprises most verbs of this conjugation which have the first root in a vowel, together with a few which have it in a consonant ; e. g.,

Suĕřĕ, *to sew*: 1st root, sŭ; 2d root, sŭ.
 Dĕfendĕřĕ, *to defend*: “ dĕfend; “ dĕfend.

199. The manner in which the *third persons* of the tenses for *completed* action are formed from the second root, has already been explained. See 193, 194.

PARADIGM.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Dēfendĕrĕ, to defend: 1st root, *dēfend*; 2d root, *dēfend*.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Future Perfect.</i>
Dēfend-īt,	dēfend-ĕrāt,	dēfend-ĕrīt.
Dēfend-ĕrunt,	dēfend-ĕrant,	dēfend-ĕrint.

200. The *Preposition* is the part of speech which expresses the various relations of objects; * e. g.,

Rex *pĕr* urbĕm ambŭlābāt.

(*The king through the city was walking.*)

The king was walking *through* the city.

REM.—In this example, *pĕr*, through, is a *preposition*.

201. PARTIAL RULE OF SYNTAX.—Some prepositions govern the *accusative*, and some the *ablative*.

REM. 1.—Whenever a preposition occurs in the exercises, its particular case will be given in the vocabularies.

REM. 2.—The *accusative*, *urbĕm*, in the above example, is governed by the preposition *pĕr*.

202. VOCABULARY.

Aedīf īciŭm, ī,	building, edifice.	
Ambŭlārĕ, av,	to walk.	
Annuĕrĕ, annŭ,	to assent, to give assent.	
Concīliŭm, ī,	council, meeting.	
Condītiŏ, ōnīs,	condition, terms.	
Constituĕrĕ, constitŭ,	to arrange, to appoint	(<i>constitute</i>).
Dēfendĕrĕ, dēfend,	to defend.	
Dormīrĕ, īv,	to sleep	(<i>dormant</i>).
Incendĕrĕ, incend,	to set on fire, to burn	(<i>incendiary</i>).
Lĕgiŏ, ōnīs,	legion, body of foot-soldiers.	
Pĕr (<i>prep. with acc.</i>),	through.	
Proeliŭm, ī,	battle.	

* It will be remembered, however, that certain relations are sometimes expressed by the *cases* of nouns (63, 80, 86).

Privātūs, ā, ūm,	private, personal.	
Rēliquūs, ā, ūm,	remaining, the rest	(<i>relic</i>).
Respuērē, respū,	to reject.	
Rōmānī (<i>adj. pl.</i>),	Romans.	
Rōmānūs, ā, ūm,	Roman, belonging to Rome.	
Suērē, sū,	to sew, to stitch.	
Tīmērē, ū,	to fear	(<i>timid</i>).
Vestīs, īs,	garment	(<i>vest</i>).

203. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Privātum aedificium incendit. 2. Relīqua privāta aedificia incendērant. 3. Puellae vestem suērunt. 4. Patres annuērant. 5. Milītes urbem defendērant. 6. Romāni urbem defendērunt.

7. Relīquas legiōnes in acie constituit. 8. Ursi in antro dormivērunt. 9. Agricōla per urbem ambulāvit. 10. Non respuit condiōnem Caesar. 11. Diem concilio constituērunt. 12. Diem concilio constituērit. 13. Servus viam monstravērat. 14. Puer mortem timuit. 15. *Humānum*⁶ est mortem timēre. 16. *Impi*⁷ est fidem violāre.

(b) 1. The king has appointed a day for the battle. 2. They had appointed a day for the council. 3. The soldiers defended the building. 4. They had defended the poet's house. 5. The queen assented. 6. The king had not assented.

7. The good boy will walk in the city. 8. The poet's daughter had walked through the great city. 9. They will *set* the house of the poet *on fire*. 10. It is the *duty*⁷ of a good man to defend the house of a friend. 11. The avaricious (man) will build a small house. 12. They will not defend the house of the avaricious. 13. They will not reject the condition. 14. Caesar had rejected the terms. 15. He will have arranged his sol-

diers in order of battle. 16. They had arranged their soldiers in order of battle.

LESSON XXXVII.

Third Conjugation.—Class II.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.

204. VERBS of the third conjugation which have the first root in a consonant, generally form the second from it by the addition of *s*; e. g.,

Carpěřě, to *pluck*; 1st root, carp; 2d root, carps.

Rěpěřě, to *creep*; “ rěp; “ reps.

REM.—When *b* stands at the end of the first root, it is changed into *p* before *s* in the second; e. g.,

Scriběřě, to *write*; scrib; scrips (not scribs).

Nüběřě, to *marry*; nüb; nups (not nubs).

205. An adjective modifying the subject is sometimes used in Latin instead of an adverb modifying the verb; e. g.,

Portām *invitūs* claudět.

(*Lat. Id.*) The gate *unwilling* he will shut (*adj.*).

(*Eng. Id.*) He will shut the gate *unwillingly* (*adv.*).

206. VOCABULARY.

Carpěřě, carps,	to pluck, to card, to gather.
Děglüběřě, děglups,	to flay.
Lānā, ae,	wool.
Lūděřě, lūs,	to play.
Mālūs, ā, ūm,	bad.
Ovīs, īs,	sheep.
Scriběřě, scrips,	to write.
Uvā, ae,	grape.

207. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Caius epistolās sua manu scripsit. 2. Puella epistolām sua manu scripsērat. 3. Puēri lanam carpsērunt. 4. Malus pastor deglupsit oves.

5. Facīle est * lanam carpēre. 6. Pater meus fidem servavērat. 7. Turpe est fidem suam non servāre. 8. Sapientis est * virtūtem magni aestimāre. 9. Virtūtem magni aestimavērunt.

(b) 1. The boy has written a letter in his own hand. 2. The girl had written letters in her own hand. 3. They wrote letters. 4. The girl has plucked a flower. 5. The shepherd's daughter had gathered flowers with her own hand.

6. The boy will pluck the grape. 7. It is easy to pluck the grape. 8. The girls were gathering flowers. 9. They had gathered flowers. 10. It is easy to gather flowers. 11. The slaves will card the wool. 12. They will have carded the wool. 13. In winter the bear will sleep in the cave. 14. In summer the girls will play in the garden.

 LESSON XXXVIII.

Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.

208. WHEN a *k*-sound (*c*, *g*, *h*, *qu*) stands at the end of the first root, it generally unites, in the second, with the *s* which is added, and forms *x* (i. e. *cs*, *gs*, *hs*, or *qus* becomes *x*); e. g.,

* What is the subject of *est*? (608, 2.)

Cingěřě, <i>to surround</i> ;	cing, cinx (<i>cings</i>).
Těgěřě, <i>to cover</i> ;	těg, tex (<i>tegs</i>).
Trahěřě, <i>to draw</i> ;	trah, trax (<i>trahs</i>).
Cöquěřě, <i>to cook</i> ;	cöqu, cox (<i>coqus</i>).

a) In a very few verbs *gu* and *v* must be treated as *k*-sounds in the formation of the second root; e. g.,

Exstinguěřě, <i>to extinguish</i> ;	exstingu, extinx.
Vivěřě, <i>to live</i> ;	viv, vix.

b) *Fluěřě*, to flow, and *struěřě*, to build, together with their compounds, have the second root in *x*, as if the first ended in a *k*-sound, as probably it did originally.

c) The *k*-sound is sometimes dropped before *s* in the second root; e. g.,

Spargěřě, <i>to scatter</i> ;	sparg, spars.
Mergěřě, <i>to merge</i> ;	merg, mers.
Parcěřě, <i>to spare</i> ;	parc, pars.

209. VOCABULARY.

Cibūs, ī,	food.	
Cingěřě, cinx,	to surround.	
Complěřě, ēv,	to fill	(<i>complement</i>).
Cöquěřě, cox,	to cook, to bake, to ripen.	
Dicěřě, dix,	to say	(<i>diction</i>).
Hāběřě, habu,	to have	(<i>habit</i>).
Illustrāřě, av,	to illuminate, to enlighten.	
Mendāciūm, ī,	lie, falsehood	(<i>mendacious</i>).
Multā (<i>neut. pl.</i>),	many (things).	
Multūs, ā, ūm,	much, <i>pl.</i> many.	
Palliūm, ī,	cloak	(<i>to palliate</i>).
Peccāřě, av,	to sin, to do wrong.	
Prudentiā, ae,	prudence.	
Simulatiō, ōnīs,	assumed appearance, pretence	(<i>dissimulation</i>)
Stultitiā, ae,	folly	(<i>stultify</i>).

Summūs, ā, ūm,	highest, greatest	(<i>summit</i>).
Tĕgĕrĕ, tex,	to cover.	
Viōlarĕ, āv,	to violate, to break	(<i>violation</i>).

210. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Puer dixit. 2. Caius, homo vita indignus, dixĕrat. 3. Puellae dixĕrunt. 4. Flumen urbem cinxit. 5. Flumīna urbes cinxĕrunt. 6. Amīcus amīci corpus suo pallio texit.

7. Prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiāe texĕrat. 8. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texĕrunt. 9. Christiāni non est mendacio culpam tegĕre. 10. Turpe est peccāre. 11. Turpe est mendacio culpam tegĕre. 12. Sol cuncta suā luce illustravĕrat. 13. Caius leges civitātis violavĕrit.

(b) 1. The woman has surrounded her head with a garland. 2. The slave has surrounded his head with a garland. 3. They had surrounded their heads with garlands. 4. The boy had said nothing. 5. The girl cooked the food. 6. They had cooked the food.

7. The king had surrounded the city with a wall. 8. They will surround the city with a wall. 9. They covered the fault with a lie. 10. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie. 11. The slave had covered his master's body with a cloak. 12. The slave had said many (things). 13. The sun fills all things with its light. 14. It is the business of the slave⁷ to cook food for his master. 15. It is never useful to lose time. 16. He will lose much pleasure.⁴ 17. How much pleasure will he lose?

LESSON XXXIX.

Third Conjugation.—Class II., continued.—Second Root formed by adding s to the First.

211. WHENEVER a *t-sound* (*d* or *t*) stands at the end of the first root, it is generally dropped before *s* in the second, and the preceding vowel, if short, is lengthened; e. g.,

Claudĕrĕ, to shut;	claud,	claus	(clauds).
Amittĕrĕ, to lose;	āmitt,	amīs	(amitts).
Dīvidĕrĕ, to divide;	dīvid,	dīvīs	(divids).

212. When a limiting noun denotes some *characteristic* or *quality* of the noun which it limits, it is always accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the *genitive* or *ablative*; e. g.,

Puĕr exīmiaē pulchrītūdīnīs.

Puĕr exīmiā pulchrītūdīnĕ.

A boy of remarkable beauty.

213. Combining the above with the rule already given (65), we have the following

RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; as, *Lātīnūs rex*, *Latinus the king*.
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; as, *Rēgīs filiūs*, the *king's* son: except

(a) When it denotes *character* or *quality*; it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the *genitive* or *ablative*; as, *Puĕr exīmiaē pulchrītūdīnīs*;

or, *Puěr exĩmiā pulchřitūdĩnĕ*, a boy of remarkable beauty.

214. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs of *accusing, convicting, acquitting, warning*, and the like, take the accusative of the person and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e. g.,

Caiũm prōditiōnĩs accũsant.

(*Caius of treachery they accuse.*)

They accuse Caius of treachery.*

REM.—Here *prōditiōnĩs* is in the genitive, by the above rule.

215. (*Eng. Id.*) To condemn to death.

(*Lat. Id.*) To condemn of the head (*čăpĩtis*).†

216. VOCABULARY.

Accũsarĕ, āv,	to accuse.	
Ambĩtũs, ũs,	bribery.	
Amittĕrĕ, āmĩs,	to lose.	
Čăpĩtis (<i>gen.</i>),	of the head, to death	(<i>capital</i>).
Claudĕrĕ, claus,	to shut	(<i>close</i>).
Damnārĕ, āv,	to condemn.	
Făciĕs, ĕĩ,	face, appearance.	
Furtũm, ĩ,	theft	(<i>furtive</i>).
Ingĕniũm, ĩ,	talent, ability	(<i>ingenious</i>).
Lũdĕrĕ, lũs,	to play.	
Nunquām,	never.	
Prōditiō, ōnĩs,	treachery.	
Saltārĕ, āv,	to dance.	
Vĩr, ‡ vĩrĩ,	man, hero.	

* This genitive is not properly governed by the verb, but by a noun understood; thus, if we supply *crĩmĩnĕ* with *prōditiōnĩs* in the example, the sense will not be changed; as, ‘They accuse Caius *with the charge* of treachery.’

† We may suppose that it was originally, “to condemn *to the loss of the head*,” or, “to the punishment of the head.”

‡ *Hōmo*, G. *hōmĩnĩs*, and *vĩr* are both *man*: but *homo* is *man* as opposed to *other animals*; that is, a *human being*. whereas *vĩr* is *man*

217. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. *Portas urbis clausērant.* 2. *Caius multum tempōris amīsit.* 3. *Caius, vir summo ingenio, multum tempōris amīsit.* 4. *Balbus ambitus accusavērant.* 5. *Puēri in prato lusērunt.*

6. *Balbus capītis damnābunt.* 7. *Christiāni est avaritiam damnāre.* 8. *Caium accusāvīt.* 9. *Caium, summo ingenio virum, proditiōnis accusavērāt.* 10. *Facīle est saltāre.* 11. *Difficīle est iram placāre.* 12. *Facīle est puēri anīmum dono placāre.* 13. *Ursus in antro dormīvit.* 14. *Hiēme ursi in antris dormiunt.* 15. *Nunquam utīle est peccāre.*

(b) 1. The slave has shut the gates of the city. 2. They will accuse the slave of treachery. 3. Caius had accused the slaves of theft. 4. He will have lost much time.⁴ 5. Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, has praised the fidelity of the slave. 6. Balbus, a man endowed with the greatest virtue, has accused the boy of theft.

7. They have accused Balbus of bribery. 8. They had accused Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, of bribery. 9. The sun had illuminated all things with its light. 10. The sun will have filled the world with its light. 11. They have written the letters with their own hands. 12. The queen had written a letter with her own hand. 13. He covered his face with his cloak. 14. They had covered their faces with their cloaks.

as opposed to *woman*.—When *men* means *human beings*, *men* generally (including *both sexes*), it should be translated by *homīnes*.—When *man* is used *contemptuously*, it should also be translated by *homo*, because that word says nothing better of a person than that he is a *human* being.—When *man* is used *respectfully*, with any praise, &c., it should be translated by *vīr*.

LESSON XL.

*Formation of the Second Root.—First Irregularity—
Radical vowel lengthened (and often changed).*

218. REGULAR Endings of the Second Root of Verbs.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
āv.	u (or ēv).	s, or like 1st root.	iv.

REM.—The above table presents only the *regular* endings of the second root; there are, however, several irregularities in the formation of that root which we must notice.

219. Some verbs in each * of the four conjugations form the second root by lengthening the vowel of the first; e. g.,

Jǔvārě, <i>to assist</i> ;	jǔv,	jūv.
Vīdērě, <i>to see</i> ;	vīd,	vīd.
Eděrě, <i>to eat</i> ;	ěd,	ēd.
Věnrě, <i>to come</i> ;	věň,	vēň.

1) In the third conjugation,

a) If the first root has *ǎ*, the second will have *ē*.

b) *M* and *n* are often dropped before a final mute; e. g.,

Cǎpěrě, *to take*; cǎp, cēp (*ǎ* changed to *ē*).

Frangěrě, *to break*; frang, frēg { (*n* dropped, and
a changed to *ē*).

Rumpěrě, *to burst*; rump, rūp (*m* dropped).

Vincěrě, *to conquer*; vinc, vīc (*n* dropped).

* In the first and fourth conjugations, *jǔvārě*, *lǔvārě*, *věnrě*, and their compounds, are probably the only instances.

220. VOCABULARY.

Brachiūm, ī,	arm.	
Cāpĕrĕ, cĕp,	to take, to receive.	
Cībūs, ī,	food.	
Emĕrĕ, ĕm,	to buy.	
Exercītūs, ūs,	army.	
Foedūs, ĕrīs,	treaty	(<i>federal</i>).
Frangĕrĕ, frĕg,	to break	(<i>fragile</i>).
Gallūs, ī,	{ a Gaul, an inhabitant of Gaul, now France.	
Lāvārĕ, lāv,	to wash	(<i>lave</i>).
Mĕl, mellīs,	honey.	
Milĕs, ĭtīs,	soldier	(<i>military</i>).
Nĕmō, ĭnīs,*	nobody, no one.	
Quiā,	because.	
Rumpĕrĕ, rūp,	to break, to violate.	
Sempĕr,	always.	
Utilīs, ĕ,	useful	(<i>utility</i>).
Vĕnĭrĕ, vĕn,	to come.	
Vĭdĕrĕ, vĭd,	to see	(<i>visible</i>).
Vincŭlŭm, ī,	chain.	

221. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbus manus lāvit. 2. Puĕri manus lāvĕrant. 3. Agricōla exercītum vĭdit. 4. Milĭtes vĕnĕrunt. 5. Caius brachium suum frĕgĕrat. 6. Quantum voluptātis cĕpĕrunt!

7. Nunquam ūtile est foedus rumpĕre. 8. Nunquam ūtile est fidem violāre, quia semper est turpe. 9. Facĭle est puĕrōrum anĭmos donis placāre. 10. Turpe est foedĕra negligĕre. 11. Galli negligĕbant foedĕra. 12. Nemo semper labōrat. 13. Culpas suas simulatiōne virtūtis textit. 14. Multura voluptātis cepĕrant. 15.

* The gen. *nĕmĭnīs* and abl. *nĕmĭnĕ* are not in good use.

Multum voluptātis amisērant. 16. Quantum cibi amisērunt!

(b) 1. Caius has broken his arm. 2. They had broken their arms. 3. The king had broken the treaty. 4. The Gauls had broken the treaty. 5. Caesar had seen the army. 6. The girls will have seen the queen. 7. Caesar conquered the Gauls. 8. The Gauls did not conquer Caesar.

9. It is disgraceful to break a treaty. 10. It is difficult to conquer the Gauls. 11. It is not easy to conquer the enemy. 12. He had appeased Balbus. 13. They will break their chains. 14. They had broken their chains. 15. It is easy to break (one's) arm. 16. They are losing much money. 17. They had lost much money. 18. They were losing much pleasure. 19. They will condemn Balbus to death (215). 20. He had conquered his enemies.

LESSON XLI.

Formation of the Second Root.—Second Irregularity—Reduplication.

222. A FEW verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations, form the second root by prefixing to the first their initial consonant, with the following vowel or with *e*; e. g.,

Dăřě, <i>to give</i> ;	d,	děd.
Morděřě, <i>to bite</i> ;	mord,	mōmord.
Currěřě, <i>to run</i> ;	curr,	cūcurr.

REM.—The radical vowel is also sometimes changed; as, *căděřě, to fall*; 2d root, *cěcřd* (*ă* changed to *ř*).

223. VOCABULARY

Ab (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	from.
Auctumnŭs, ī,	autumn.
Barbă, ae,	beard.
Cōlōr, ōrīs,	color.
Currĕrĕ, cŭcurr,	to run.
Dārĕ, dĕd,	to give.
Finīs, īs, <i>m. or f.</i>	end.
Hŭmĕrŭs, ī,	shoulder.
Mordĕrĕ, mōmord,	to bite.
Mŭtārĕ, āv,	to change.
Nox, noctīs,	night.
Pendĕrĕ, pĕpend,	to hang (<i>intrans.</i>).
Pĕr (<i>prep. with accus.</i>)	through.
Sāgittă, ae,	arrow.
Tondĕrĕ, tōtond,	to shear, shave.

224. Exercises.

(a) 1. Equus per urbem cucurrit. 2. Sagittae ab humĕro pependĕrunt. 3. Nox proelio (648) finem dedit. 4. Malus pastor oves non totondit. 5. Malus pastor deglupsit oves; non totondit.

6. Boni pastōris⁷ est tondĕre oves, non deglubĕre. 7. Pastōres agricōlas risĕrunt. 8. Lupus boni pastōris ovem momordĕrit. 9. Boni canis⁷ non est oves mordĕre. 10. Servus portas urbis clausĕrit. 11. Puĕri regis sceptrum vidĕbunt. 12. Lusciniae colōrem mutābunt. 13. Auctumno luscinae colōrem suum mutavĕrint.

(b) 1. The dog has bitten the sheep. 2. Your dog had bitten the girl. 3. My horses have been running (have run). 4. Balbus has given his dog to your son. 5. They had given their dogs to the shepherd.

6. The wolf had bitten the sheep. 7. The shepherd will shear his sheep. 8. A shepherd does not shear

his sheep in the winter. 9. The wolves have bitten my dog. 10. Caius will shave (his) beard. 11. The cloak was hanging from (his) shoulder. 12. The dog has bitten the wolf. 13. They wrote the letter. 14. Balbus had shaved (his) beard. 15. The girls have plucked flowers in Caius's garden. 16. The girls will walk in the garden. 17. The queen was walking through the city. 18. They have surrounded the city with walls. 19. They have offended-against the laws of their country.

LESSON XLII.

Formation of the Second Root.—Third Irregularity.—Second root after the analogy of other conjugations.

225. A FEW verbs in each conjugation form the second root according to the *analogy* of one or more of the other conjugations.

1) A few in the first conjugation follow the analogy of the second; e. g.,

Mícārě, *to glitter*: 1st root, *mĭc*; 2d root, *mĭcŭ*.

2) A few in the second follow the analogy of the third; e. g.,

Rĭdērě, *to laugh*; 1st root, *rĭd*; 2d root, *rĭs* (*rids*).

Lŭgērě, *to mourn*; " *lŭg*; " *lux* (*lugs*).

3) A few in the third follow the analogy of the second or fourth; e. g.,

Cŏlērě, *to till*; 1st root, *cŏl*; 2d root, *cŏlŭ*.

Pětērě, *to seek*; " *pět*; " *pětŭ*.

4) A few in the fourth follow the analogy of the second or third; e. g.,

Apĕrĭrĕ, to open; 1st root, *ăpĕr*; 2d root, *ăpĕrŭ*.
Vincĭrĕ, to bind; “ *vinc*; “ *vinc* (cs).

REM.—Verbs of the third conj. which have the 1st root in *sc*, together with a few others, generally change the consonant-ending of the 1st root into *v* in the 2d; as, *crescĕrĕ*, to increase; 1st root, *cresc*; 2d, *crĕv*. Most of these verbs are supposed to have been derived from pure roots.

226. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g.,

Caiŭs *annŭm ūnŭm* vixĭt.
(*Caius year one lived.*)
Caius lived *one year*.

227. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of a town (91) where any thing is or is done, if of the first or second declension, and singular number, is put in the genitive; otherwise, in the ablative; e. g.,

1. Caiŭs *annŭm ūnŭm Cortōnae* vixĭt.
Caius lived one year *at Cortona*.
2. Caiŭs *annŭm ūnŭm Tibŭrĕ* vixĭt.
Caius lived one year *at Tibur*.

REM.—In these examples, *Cortōnae* and *Tibŭrĕ* are names of towns; the first is put in the *genitive*, because it is of the first declension, and sing. number, and the second in the *ablative*, because it is of the third declension.

228. VOCABULARY.

Amittĕrĕ, amĭs,	to lose.
Annŭs, ĭ,	year.
Apĕrĭrĕ, ăpĕrŭ,	to open, to uncover.
Bienniŭm,	two years, space of two years
Castĭgārĕ, ăv,	to chastise.

Invītūs, ā, ūm,	unwilling.
Lūgērē, lux,	to grieve, mourn, weep for.
Mānērē, mans,	to remain.
Matrōna, ae,	matron.
Rōmā, ae,	Rome, <i>a city of Italy, on the Tiber.</i>
Tībūr, ūris,	Tibur, <i>a town in Latium, in Italy.</i>
Tōtūs, ā, ūm (g. īūs),	the whole, the entire.

229. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbus multos annos Romae mansērat. 2. Biennium Carthagīne mansērant. 3. Mater luxērit. 4. Matrōnae luxērunt. 5. Brutum Romānae matrōnae luxērunt. 6. Pastōres agricōlas risērunt. 7. Puēri capīta aperuērunt.

8. Domīnus servi sui epistōlam aperiet. 9. Domīnus servi sui epistōlas aperuērat. 10. Alīquid tempōris⁴ invītus (205) amittet. 11. Christiāni est nemīnem violāre. 12. Nemīnem violāvit. 13. Biennium Romae manēbit. 14. Biennium Carthagīne manēbunt.

(b) 1. They remained at Tibur many years. 2. Caius remained at Carthage for the space-of-two-years. 3. He has opened his father's letter. 4. They had opened the letters at Carthage.

5. My father will remain at Rome the whole winter. 6. He wrote the letters at Rome. 7. They are mourning for^f their son. 8. They have been in mourning two years. 9. The girls wore mourning for^f their mother. 10. My father values industry very highly. 11. Balbus has accused the shepherd's son of theft. 12. They have accused Caius of bribery.

LESSON XLIII.

Subjunctive Mood.

230. THE *Subjunctive Mood* represents the action or state expressed by the verb, not as a *fact*, but simply as a *possibility*, *wish*, or *conception of the mind*; e. g.,

- | | | |
|----------------------|---|---|
| 1. Scribāt, | } | he may write,
may he write,
let him write. |
| 2. Vēnit ūt scribāt, | } | he has come <i>that he may write</i> ,
he has come <i>to write</i> . |

REM.—*Scribāt* in the above examples is in the present subjunctive.

231. The present subjunctive, when not preceded by *ūt*, generally expresses either a *wish* (to be translated by *may he*), or a *command* (to be translated by *let him*, &c.).

232. If the wish or command is to be expressed *negatively*, *nē* (never *nōn*) must be used with the subjunctive; e. g.,

Nē pūtēt, let him not think.

233. The tenses of the subjunctive mood* are the *present*, *imperfect*, *perfect*, and *pluperfect*.

234. The endings of the third persons sing. of the tenses of the subjunctive are as follows:

		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
		(1st root.)	(1st root.)	(2d root.)	(2d root.)
Conj. I.	ēt,	ārēt,	ērīt,	issēt.	
Conj. II.	ēāt,	ērēt,	ērīt,	issēt.	
Conj. III.	āt,	ērēt,	ērīt,	issēt.	
Conj. IV.	iāt,	irēt,	ērīt,	issēt.	

* The subjunctive has *no futures*.

REM.—The third persons plural of the several tenses of the subjunctive are formed by inserting *n* before *t* in the ending of the third singular.

235. The English signs corresponding to the Latin subjunctive are as follows :

Present, *may* or *can*.

Imperfect, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*.

Perfect, *may have*.

Pluperfect, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should have*.

236. Partial Paradigm of the Subjunctive Mood.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Pres. Am-ēt, <i>he may or can love.</i>	Am-ent, <i>they may or can love.</i>
Imp. Am-ārēt, <i>he might, &c. love.</i>	Am-ārent, <i>they might, &c. love.</i>
Perf. Amāv-ērīt, <i>he may have loved.</i>	Amāv-ērint, <i>they may have loved.</i>
Plup. Amāv-issēt, <i>he might, &c. have loved.</i>	Amāv-issent, <i>they might, &c. have loved.</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Pres. Mōn-eāt, <i>he may or can advise.</i>	Mōn-eant, <i>they may advise.</i>
Imp. Mōn-ērēt, <i>he might, &c. advise.</i>	Mōn-ērent, <i>they might, &c. advise.</i>
Perf. Mōnu-ērīt, <i>he may have advised.</i>	Mōnu-ērint, <i>they may have advised.</i>
Plup. Mōnu-issēt, <i>he might, &c. have advised.</i>	Mōnu-issent, <i>they might, &c. have advised.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Pres. Rĕg-āt, <i>he may rule.</i>	Rĕg-ant, <i>they may rule.</i>
Imp. Rĕg-ērēt, <i>he might, &c. rule.</i>	Rĕg-ērent, <i>they might, &c. rule.</i>
Perf. Rex-ērīt, <i>he may have ruled.</i>	Rex-ērint, <i>they may have ruled.</i>
Plup. Rex-issēt, <i>he might, &c. have ruled.</i>	Rex-issent, <i>they might, &c. have ruled.</i>

PARADIGM—*continued.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Pres. Aud-īāt, <i>he may hear.</i>	Aud-iant, <i>they may hear.</i>
Imp. Aud-īrēt, <i>he might, &c. hear.</i>	Aud-īrent, <i>they might, &c. hear.</i>
Perf. Audīv-ērīt, <i>he may have heard.</i>	Audīv-ērint, <i>they may have heard.</i>
Plup. Audīv-issēt, <i>he might, &c. have heard.</i>	Audīv-issent, <i>they might, &c. have heard.</i>

237. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Scribat. 2. Ne scribant. 3. Servus claudat portas. 4. Puēri ne claudant portas. 5. Cantet puella. 6. Ludant Puēri. 7. Pater scribēret. 8. Scripsissent. 9. Filium suum sepelīret. 10. Sepeliat filium.

11. Placet puēri anīmum. 12. Ne multa discat. 13. Fidem suam servāvit. 14. Fidem suam servavissent. 15. Fidem suam invīti servavērunt. 16. Puērum in urbe sepelivērunt. 17. Patres filios suos docuērunt.

(b) 1. Let the slaves shut the gates of the city. 2. Do not let the slave see the letter. 3. Let him write a letter. 4. He might have come. 5. They may have read the book. 6. He would have broken his arm. 7. Do not let the dog bite the boy.

8. Balbus has kept his word. 9. He would have broken his word. 10. Let him appease his father's anger. 11. He remained at Carthage many years. 12. They would have remained at Rome two years. 13. They had remained in the city one year. 14. Let fathers teach their sons.

LESSON XLIV.

Subjunctive Mood.—Purpose.

238. THE present and imperfect subjunctive in Latin are often used to express a *purpose*.

239. The infinitive often denotes purpose in English, but never in Latin; accordingly, in expressions of purpose, the idioms of the two languages are entirely distinct from each other, and should be carefully studied.

240. *Eng. Id.* { I have come *to see* you.
 { I came *to see* you.

Lat. Id. { I have come *that I may see* you.
 { I came *that I might see* you.

241. When a purpose is to be expressed affirmatively, *ut* is used with the subj., when negatively, *nē*; e. g.,

1. Balbŭm rŏgāt *ut* puērŭm dŏceāt.
(*Balbus he asks that the boy he may teach.*)
He asks Balbus *to teach* the boy.

2. Balbŭm rŏgāt *nē* puērŭm dŏceāt.
He asks Balbus *not to teach* the boy.

242. The subjunctive expressing purpose must be in the *present tense*; unless the verb on which it depends is in a *past tense* (*imperfect, perfect indefinite, or pluperfect*), and then it must be in the *imperfect*.

REM.—The perfect definite (193, REM.), or perfect with have (which denotes that the action *has been done* in a period of time *still present*), is considered a *present tense*, and followed by the *present subjunctive*.

243. EXAMPLES.

1. Vēnīt ūt portās claudāt.
(*He is coming that the gates he may shut.*)
He is coming to shut the gates.
2. Vēnīt (*indef.*) ūt portās claudērēt.
(*He came that the gates he might shut.*)
He came to shut the gates.
3. Vēnīt (*def.*) ūt portās claudāt.
(*He has come that the gates he may shut.*)
He has come to shut the gates.

REM. 1.—In the 1st example the subjunctive is in the *present* tense, because the verb *vēnīt*, on which it depends, is present; while in the 2d, it is in the *imperfect*, because its verb, *vēnīt* (came), is in the *perfect indefinite*.

REM. 2.—In the 3d example the subjunctive is in the *present*, because the verb *vēnīt* (has come) is in the *perfect definite*, and, though in form the same as in the 2d example, really expresses different time.

REM. 3.—The Latin perfect, when followed by the present subjunctive, must be translated into English with the sign *have*, as in example 3.

244. VOCABULARY.

Compārārē, āv,	to procure, to raise, to levy.	
Discērē, dīdic,	to learn.	
Edēre, ēd,	to eat	(<i>edible</i>).
Evertēre, ēvert,	to overthrow, to pull down.	
Lēgērē, lēg,	to read	(<i>legible</i>).
Plūrimūs, ā, ūm,	very much <i>or</i> great, <i>pl.</i> , very many.	
Quiescērē, quiēv,	to rest, be quiet	(<i>quiescent</i>).
Rōgārē, av,	to ask, to entreat.	
Vivērē, vix,	to live	(<i>vivid</i>).

245. Exercises.

(Construe *ūt* and the *subjunctive* by the infinitive.)

- (a) 1. Lēgit ut discat. 2. Lēgit* ut discat. Lēgit ut disceret (242). 3. Edit ut vivat. 4. Edit ut vivēret.

* See 243, REM. 3.

5. Servi veniunt ut portas claudant. 6. Veniat servus ut portas urbis claudat. 7. Caium rogat ut veniat.

8. Venit ut copias compāret. 9. Romae plurīmi vivunt ut edant. 10. Cantent puellae. 11. Quiescant servi. 12. Veniat Caius ut epistolam sua manu scribat. 13. Venērat Caius ut Balbi animum donis placāret.

(b) 1. He has come to read (241) your letter. 2. They came to read your book. 3. They will come to accuse the judge of theft. 4. The boy will come to give his sister a garland.

5. Let the slaves shut the gates. 6. Do not let your dog bite the boy. 7. They had come to raise forces. 8. The enemy will think *little*³ of your forces. 9. He had come to surround the girl's head with a beautiful garland. 10. Let boys prize wisdom *very highly*.

LESSON XLV.

Persons of Verbs.—Indicative Mood.—First Conjugation.

246. It will be remembered that verbs have *three persons* (12): these are distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *Personal Endings*.

247. The three persons may be formed in the perfect indicative (which is somewhat irregular) by changing *it*, of the third person singular, into the following

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.	1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.
ī,	istī,	it.	imūs,	istīs,	erunt (or ērē).

248. In all the tenses* of the indicative and subjunctive moods, except the perfect indicative, the three persons may be formed by changing *t* of the third singular into the following

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.	1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.
m, ō,	s,	t.	mūs,	tīs,	nt.

a) The ending *o*, for the first person singular, belongs to the *indicative present, future perfect*, and, in the first and second conjugations, to the *future*. The vowel which stands before *t* in the third person is dropped before *o* in the first person, except in the present of the second and fourth conjugations (and in a few verbs of the third); e. g.,

	<i>3d Person.</i>	<i>1st Person.</i>
Pres. 1st Conj.	Amāt, <i>he loves,</i>	āmō (<i>ā</i> dropped), <i>I love.</i>
“ 2d “	Mōnēt, <i>he advises,</i>	mōneō (<i>ē</i> not dropped), <i>I advise.</i>
“ 3d “	Rēgīt, <i>he rules,</i>	rēgō (<i>ī</i> dropped), <i>I rule.</i>
“ 4th “	Audīt, <i>he hears,</i>	audiō (<i>ī</i> not dropped), <i>I hear.</i>

b) The ending *m*, for the first person singular, belongs to the *indicative imperfect, pluperfect*, and, in the third and fourth conjugations, to the *future*, and to the *subjunctive* throughout all its tenses. In the future of the third and fourth conjugations, the vowel *ē*, which stands before *t* in the third person, is changed into *ā* before *m* in the first person; e. g.,

	<i>3d Person.</i>	<i>1st Person.</i>
Imperf.	Amābāt, <i>he was loving,</i>	āmābām, <i>I was loving.</i>
Pluperf.	Amāvērāt, <i>he had loved,</i>	āmāvērām, <i>I had loved.</i>
Fut. 3d Conj.	Rēgēt, <i>he will rule,</i>	rēgām, <i>I will rule.</i>
“ 4th “	Audiēt, <i>he will hear,</i>	audiām, <i>I will hear.</i>

* We of course speak only of the *active* voice, as the *passive* has not yet been noticed.

c) In the *present* and *future* tenses of the *indicative*, if *i* stands before *t* in the third singular, it is changed into *iu* in the third plural, in the fourth conjugation, and into *u* in the other conjugations; e. g.,

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Fut. 1st Conj.	Amābīt, <i>he will love,</i>	āmabunt, <i>they will love.</i>
“ 2d “	Mōnēbīt, <i>he will advise,</i>	mōnēbunt, <i>they will advise.</i>
Pres. 3d “	Rēgīt, <i>he rules,</i>	rēgunt, <i>they rule.</i>
“ 4th “	Audīt, <i>he hears,</i>	audiunt, <i>they hear.</i>

249. The vowel before the personal endings *mūs* and *tīs*, is *long* in the imperfect and pluperfect of the indicative, and in all the tenses of the subjunctive, except the perfect, in which it is common* (long or short).

250. Paradigm of the Indicative Mood—First Conjugation.

Amārě, *to love*: 1st root, *ām*; 2d, *āmāv*.

PRESENT (1st root).

Singular

1. Am-ō, *I love.*
2. Am-ās, *thou lovest.*
3. Am-āt, *he loves.*

Plural.

1. Am-āmūs, *we love.*
2. Am-ātīs, *ye or you love.*
3. Am-ant, *they love.*

IMPERFECT (1st root).

- Am-ābām, *I was loving.*
 Am-ābās,
thou wast loving.
 Am-ābāt, *he was loving.*

- Am-ābāmūs, *we were loving.*
 Am-ābātīs,
ye or you were loving.
 Am-ābānt, *they were loving.*

FUTURE (1st root).

- Am-ābō, *I shall love.*
 Am-ābīs, *thou wilt love.*
 Am-ābīt, *he will love.*

- Am-ābīmūs, *we shall love.*
 Am-ābītīs, *ye or you will love.*
 Am-ābunt, *they will love.*

* The vowel is also generally considered common before these endings in the *future perfect*: the old grammarians, however, make it *long*.

PARADIGM—continued.

PERFECT (2d root).

Amāv-ī, <i>I loved or have loved.</i>	Amāv-īmūs, <i>we loved or have loved.</i>
Amāv-istī, <i>thou lovedst or hast loved.</i>	Amāv-istīs, <i>ye or you loved or have loved.</i>
Amāv-īt, <i>he loved or has loved.</i>	Amāv-ērunt (ērē), <i>they loved or have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT (2d root).

Amāv-ērām, <i>I had loved.</i>	Amāv-ērāmūs, <i>we had loved.</i>
Amāv-ērās, <i>thou hadst loved.</i>	Amāv-ērātīs, <i>ye or you had loved.</i>
Amāv-ērāt, <i>he had loved.</i>	Amāv-ērant, <i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT (2d root).

Amāv-ērō, <i>I shall have loved.</i>	Amāv-ērīmūs, <i>we shall have loved.</i>
Amāv-erīs, <i>thou wilt have loved.</i>	Amāv-erītīs, <i>ye or you will have loved.</i>
Amāv-erīt, <i>he will have loved.</i>	Amāv-erint, <i>they will have loved.</i>

251. VOCABULARY.

Ad (<i>prep. with acc.</i>),	to.	
Dūcērē, dux,	to lead	(<i>duke</i>).
Hesternūs, ā, ūm,	of yesterday.	
Incolūmīs, ē,	safe, uninjured.	
Lēgātūs, ī,	ambassador	(<i>legate</i>).
Mittērē, mīs,	to send.	(<i>mission</i>).
Praemittērē,	to send before.	
Prīmūs, ā, ūm,	first	(<i>prime</i>).

252. Exercises.

(a) 1. Violābas legem. 2. Violavisti leges. 3. Balbum vocāvi. 4. Hesterno die Balbum vocavīmus. 5. Urbem servāvi. 6. Cives incolūmes servavīmus. 7. Caium, summo ingenio (213) virum, ambītus accusaverātīs. 8. Balbum capītis damnabītis.

9. Legātos ad Caesārem mittunt. 10. Prima luce omnem equitātum praemīsīt. 11. Christiānus nemīnem violābit. 12. Nemīnem violavisti. 13. Multos annos regnābis. 14. Balbus parvo (181) contentus est. 15. Servus multa laude dignus est.

(b) 1. You have kept your word. 2. I will not break my word. 3. You (*pl.*) have violated the laws of the state. 4. You (*pl.*) prize money very highly. 5. We shall condemn avarice. 6. I have never accused the queen. 7. We shall accuse the priest of treachery.

8. They appeased the anger of Caesar. 9. We will appease your anger. 10. Caesar thought very highly of his army. 11. We will send ambassadors to the king. 12. It is the duty of a Christian⁷ to keep his word. 13. It is the part of a wise man to be content with little.

LESSON XLVI.

Indicative Mood.—Four Conjugations.—Personal Pronouns.

253. PARADIGM of the Indicative Mood.

PRESENT (1st root), *am, is, &c., loving.*

	<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
S. 1.	Am-ō,	Mōn-eō,	Rēg-ō,	Aud-iō,
2.	Am-ās,	Mōn-ēs,	Rēg-īs,	Aud-īs,
3.	Am-āt;	Mōn-ēt;	Rēg-īt;	Aud-īt;
P. 1.	Am-amūs,	Mōn-emūs,	Rēg-imūs,	Aud-imūs,
2.	Am-ātis,	Mōn-ētis,	Rēg-ītis,	Aud-ītis,
3.	Am-ant.	Mōn-ent.	Rēg-unt.	Aud-iunt.

PARADIGM—*continued.*IMPERFECT (1st root), *was, did.*

	<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
S. 1.	Am-ābām,	Mōn-ēbām,	Rēg-ēbām,	Aud-iēbām,
2.	Am-ābās,	Mōn-ēbas,	Rēg-ēbas,	Aud-iēbas,
3.	Am-ābāt ;	Mōn-ēbāt ;	Rēg-ēbāt ;	Aud-iēbāt ;
P. 1.	Am-ābamūs,	Mōn-ēbamūs,	Rēg-ēbamūs,	Aud-iēbamūs,
2.	Am-ābātis,	Mōn-ēbātis,	Rēg-ēbātis,	Aud-iēbātis,
3.	Am-ābant.	Mōn-ēbant.	Rēg-ēbant.	Aud-iēbant.

FUTURE (1st root), *shall or will.*

S. 1.	Am-ābō,	Mōn-ēbō,	Rēg-ām,	Aud-iām,
2.	Am-ābīs,	Mōn-ēbīs,	Rēg-ēs,	Aud-iēs,
3.	Am-ābīt ;	Mōn-ēbīt ;	Rēg-ēt ;	Aud-iēt ;
P. 1.	Am-ābimūs,	Mōn-ēbimūs,	Rēg-ēmūs,	Aud-iēmūs,
2.	Am-ābitis,	Mōn-ēbitis,	Rēg-ētis,	Aud-iētis,
3.	Am-ābunt.	Mōn-ēbunt.	Rēg-ent.	Aud-ient.

PERFECT (2d root), *have.*

S. 1.	Amāv-ī,	Mōnu-ī,	Rex-ī,	Audīv-ī,
2.	Amāv-istī,	Mōnu-istī,	Rex-istī,	Audīv-istī,
3.	Amāv-īt ;	Mōnu-īt ;	Rex-īt ;	Audīv-īt ;
P. 1.	Amāv-īmūs,	Mōnu-īmūs,	Rex-īmūs,	Audīv-īmūs,
2.	Amāv-istis,	Mōnu-istis,	Rex-istis,	Audīv-istis,
3.	Amāv-ērunt or ērē.	Mōnu-ērunt or ērē.	Rex-ērunt or ērē.	Audīv-ērunt or ērē.

PLUPERFECT (2d root), *had.*

S. 1.	Amāv-ērām,	Mōnu-ērām,	Rex-ērām,	Audīv-ērām,
2.	Amāv-ērās,	Mōnu-ērās,	Rex-ērās,	Audīv-ērās,
3.	Amāv-ērāt ;	Mōnu-ērāt ;	Rex-ērāt ;	Audīv-ērāt ;
P. 1.	Amāv-ērāmus,	Mōnu-ērāmus,	Rex-ērāmūs,	Audīv-ērāmūs,
2.	Amāv-ērātis,	Mōnu-ērātis,	Rex-ērātis,	Audīv-ērātis,
3.	Amāv-ērant.	Mōnu-ērant.	Rex-ērant.	Audīv-ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT (2d root), *shall or will have.*

S. 1.	Amāv-ērō,	Mōnu-ērō,	Rex-ērō,	Audīv-ērō,
2.	Amāv-ērīs,	Mōnu-ērīs,	Rex-ērīs,	Audīv-ērīs,
3.	Amāv-ērīt ;	Mōnu-ērīt ;	Rex-ērīt ;	Audīv-ērīt ;
P. 1.	Amāv-ērīmūs,	Mōnu-ērīmūs,	Rex-ērīmūs,	Audīv-ērīmūs,
2.	Amāv-ērītis,	Mōnu-ērītis,	Rex-ērītis,	Audīv-ērītis,
3.	Amāv-ērint.	Mōnu-ērint.	Rex-ērint.	Audīv-ērint.

PRONOUNS.

254. *Pronouns* are words which supply the place of nouns; as, *ěgō*, I; *tū*, thou, &c.

255. Pronouns are divided into two classes; viz.,

1) *Substantive Pronouns*; as, *ěgō*, *tū*, &c.

2) *Adjective Pronouns*; as, *hīc*, this; *illě*, that.

256. Substantive Pronouns are three in number, viz.: *ěgō*, I (*which is of course of the first person*); *tū*, thou (*second person*); and *suī*, of himself (*third person*). These from their signification are often called *Personal Pronouns*.

257. Substantive Pronouns are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.		
1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
N. <i>Egō</i> , I.	<i>Tū</i> , thou.	} <i>Suī</i> , of himself, herself, itself. } <i>Sibī</i> , to himself, &c. } <i>Sě</i> , himself.
G. <i>Meī</i> , of me.	<i>Tuī</i> , of thee.	
D. <i>Mihī</i> , to or for me.	<i>Tibī</i> , to or for thee.	
A. <i>Mě</i> , me.	<i>Tě</i> , thee.	
V. <i>Tū</i> , O thou.		
A. <i>Mě</i> , with, &c. me.	<i>Tě</i> , with thee.	<i>Sě</i> , with himself.
PLURAL.		
N. <i>Nōs</i> , we.	<i>Vōs</i> , ye or you.	} <i>Suī</i> , of themselves. } <i>Sibī</i> , to themselves. } <i>Sě</i> , themselves.
G. <i>Nostrūm</i> , } of us.	<i>Vestrūm</i> , } of you.	
	or <i>Vestrī</i> , }	
D. <i>Nōbīs</i> , to us.	<i>Vōbīs</i> , to you.	
A. <i>Nōs</i> , us.	<i>Vōs</i> , you.	
V. <i>Vōs</i> , O ye or you.		
A. <i>Nōbīs</i> , with us.	<i>Vōbīs</i> , with you.	<i>Sě</i> , with themselves.

258. As the ending of the verb shows the person of its subject, the nominative of pronouns is seldom expressed as the subject, except for the sake of *emphasis* or *contrast*.

259. VOCABULARY.

Agĕrĕ, ĕg,	to drive, to lead, to do.	
Dĕ (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	from, concerning.	
Dĕdĕrĕ, dĕdid,	to surrender.	
Dĕmonstrārĕ, āv,	to show, to demonstrate	(<i>demonstration</i>).
Egŏ,	I.	
Errārĕ, āv,	to err	(<i>error</i>).
Expŏnĕrĕ, expŏsŭ,	to set forth, to explain	(<i>expose</i>).
Fĕcĕrĕ, (iŏ), fĕc,	to make, to do, to act.	
Grĕtiĕ, ae,	gratitude, favor, <i>pl.</i> thanks.	
Grĕtiĕs āgĕrĕ,	to give thanks.	
Itĕr, itĭnĕrĭs, <i>n.</i>	journey, route	(<i>itinerant</i>).
Jŭdicārĕ, āv,	to judge	(<i>judicature</i>).
Occultārĕ, āv,	to conceal	(<i>occultation</i>).
Poscĕrĕ, pŏposc,	to demand.	
Rĕs, rĕi,	thing, affair, subject.	
Sĕd,	but.	
Sensŭs, ũs,	feeling, perception	(<i>sense</i>).
Tŭ,	thou, you.	

260. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Rem omnem exposui. 2. Errāvi. 3. Ego de meo sensu judico. 4. Ego misi viros: pueros tu misisti. 5. Hesterno die Balbum ad me vocāvi. 6. Vos judicavistis. 7. Nos judicabĭmus. 8. Mihi gratias egistis.

9. Caius itinĕra nostra servābat. 10. Fidem suam invĭti servavĕrunt. 11. Agricŏlae est laborāre. 12. Caius, ut demonstravĭmus, itinĕra nostra servābat. 13. Caesar servos poposcit. 14. Nos servos non poposcĭmus.

(*b*) 1. We have read your letters. 2. *You* were playing, but *I* was writing. 3. He has given me a beautiful book. 4. He will give you (*to you*) thanks. 5. We shall thank you. 6. I had called the boy to me

7. Yesterday you called the girls to you. 8. We have never opened your letters.

9. I have kept my word. 10. You have never broken your word. 11. They have accused you of theft. 12. The judge has condemned us to death (215). 13. We will not accuse you of treachery. 14. We shall not remain in the city.

LESSON XLVII.

Subjunctive Mood.—Four Conjugations.

261. PARADIGM of the Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT (1st root), *may* or *can*.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-ěm,	Mön-eām,	Rěg-ām,	Aud-iām,
Am-ēs,	Mön-eās,	Rěg-ās,	Aud-ias,
Am-ět;	Mön-eāt;	Rěg-āt;	Aud-iat;
Am-ēmūs,	Mön-eāmūs,	Rěg-āmūs,	Aud-iamūs,
Am-ētīs,	Mön-eātīs,	Rěg-ātīs,	Aud-iatīs,
Am-ent.	Mön-eant.	Rěg-ant.	Aud-iant.

IMPERFECT (1st root), *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*.

Am-ārěm,	Mön-ērěm,	Rěg-ērěm,	Aud-irěm,
Am-ārēs,	Mön-ērēs,	Rěg-ērēs,	Aud-irēs,
Am-ārět;	Mön-ērět;	Rěg-ērět;	Aud-irět;
Am-ārēmūs,	Mön-ērēmūs,	Rěg-ērēmūs,	Aud-irēmūs,
Am-ārētīs,	Mön-ērētīs,	Rěg-ērētīs,	Aud-irētīs,
Am-arent,	Mön-arent.	Rěg-arent.	Aud-irent.

PERFECT (2d root), *may have*.

Amāv-ěřim,	Mönu-ěřim,	Rex-ěřim,	Audiv-ěřim,
Amāv-ěřis,	Mönu-ěřis,	Rex-ěřis,	Audiv-ěřis,
Amāv-ěřit;	Mönu-ěřit;	Rex-ěřit;	Audiv-ěřit;
Amāv-ěřimūs,	Mönu-ěřimūs,	Rex-ěřimūs,	Audiv-ěřimūs,
Amāv-ěřitīs,	Mönu-ěřitīs,	Rex-ěřitīs,	Audiv-ěřitīs,
Amāv-ěřint.	Mönu-ěřint,	Rex-ěřint.	Audiv-ěřint.

PARADIGM—*continued.*

PLUPERFECT (2d root), *might, could, would, or should have.*

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Amāv-issēm,	Mōnu-issēm,	Rex-issēm,	Audīv-issēm,
Amāv-issēs,	Mōnu-issēs,	Rex-issēs,	Audīv-issēs,
Amāv-issēt ;	Mōnu-issēt ;	Rex-issēt ;	Audīv-issēt ;
Amāv-issēmūs,	Mōnu-issēmūs,	Rex-issēmūs,	Audīv-issēmūs,
Amāv-issētīs,	Mōnu-issētīs,	Rex-issētīs,	Audīv-issētīs,
Amāv-issent.	Mōnu-issent.	Rex-issent.	Audīv-issent.

REM.—It will be observed that throughout the subjunctive the 1st person sing. ends in *m*.

262. The subjunctive with *ūt* is used to express a *result*; e. g.,

Tantūm est frīgūs ūt nix nōn liquescāt.

The cold is so great that the snow does not melt.

263. The subjunctive with *ūt*, denoting result, generally depends upon a proposition which contains some word signifying *so, such, so great, &c.*; thus, in the above example, it depends upon *tantūm* (*so great, or such*).

264. Hence, in turning English into Latin, *that* after *so, such, so great, &c.*, must be translated by *ūt*, and the verb which follows must be put in the subjunctive. (See example above.)

265. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the *present, perfect definite, or future*, it must be put in the *present* tense, unless it represents its action as *completed* at the time denoted by the principal verb; and then it must be in the *perfect*; e. g.,

1. Tantā est puērī industriā ūt multā discāt.

The boy's industry is so great that he learns much.

2. Nesciō quid dixērīt.

I do not know what he has said.

REM.—In the first example, the subjunctive *discāt* (l^earns) is in the *present* tense, because the time of its action is the same as that of *est* (*pres.*) on which it depends, and in the second example *dixērīt* (he has said) is in the *perfect*, because it represents its action as *completed* at the time denoted by *nesciō* (i. e. *pres.*).

266. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, it must be put in the *imperfect* tense, unless it represents its action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb, and then it must be in the *pluperfect*, e. g.,

1. Tantă ērăt puērī industriă ūt multă discērēt.

The boy's industry *was* so great that he *learned* much.

2. Nescīvī quid dixissēt.

I *did* not know what he *had* said.

REM.—The imperf. *discērēt* represents its action as *not completed*, while the pluperfect *dixissēt* represents its action as *completed*.

266. A few adjectives in Latin are often used merely to specify some particular part of the nouns to which they belong; e. g.,

In summō	}	on the highest mountain (<i>Lat. Id.</i>).
montē,		on the top of the mountain (<i>Eng. Id.</i>).
In mēdiīs	}	in the middle waters (<i>Lat. Id.</i>).
ăquīs,		in the middle (or midst) of the waters (<i>Eng. Id.</i>).

268. VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, Alpiūm,	Alps.	
Conservăre, av,	to preserve	(<i>conservative</i>).
Frangĕre, frĕg,	to break.	

Frīgūs, ōris,	cold	(<i>frigid</i>).
Ibī,	there.	
Liquescērē, licū,	to melt	(<i>liquid</i>).
Mēdiūs, ā, ūm,	middle, midst of, middle of (267).	
Nārē, āv,	to swim.	
Nondūm,	not yet.	
Piscīs, īs, <i>m.</i> ,	fish.	
Summūs, ā, ūm,	highest, top (267)	(<i>summit</i>)
Tantūs, ā, ūm,	so great.	

269. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Venit ut me audiat. 2. Veni ut vos audiam. 3. Venērunt ut nos audiant. 4. Venērunt ut te audirent. 5. Ne violētis fidem. 6. In summo monte tantum est frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat.

7. In summis Alpibus tantum erat frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquesceret. 8. Venit ut patriam auro vendat. 9. Venisti ut patriam auro vendēres. 10. Avis in summa arbore cantābat. 11. Multum voluptātis cepēram.

(b) 1. The cold is so great that the snow does not melt (265). 2. The cold has been so great that the snow has not yet melted (265). 3. The cold was so great on the top of the mountain that the snow did not melt there (266). 4. The cold was so great on the top of the Alps that the snow did not melt there (266). 5. I have come to learn. 6. You have come to play.

7. Let him keep his word. 8. Do not break your word. 9. Do not sell your country for gold. 10. On the top¹⁰ of the mountain the snow never melts. 11. On the top of the Alps the snow never melts. 12. The fish is swimming in the middle¹⁰ of the water.

LESSON XLVIII.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Verbs in io of the Third Conjugation.—Demonstrative Pronouns.

270. A FEW verbs of the third conjugation are inflected (i. e. form their tenses, numbers, and persons) in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and in the present subjunctive, like verbs of the fourth conjugation. The following is an example.

REM. In the present, first and second persons plural, the *i* in the penult is short; as, *căpimŭs, căpitiŝ*.

271. Paradigm of Verbs in *iŝ* of the Third Conjugation.

Căpĕrĕ, to take; 1st root, căp; 2d, cĕp.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Căp-iŝ, I take.</i>	<i>Cap-imŭs, we take.</i>
<i>Căp-iŝ, thou takest.</i>	<i>Cap-itŝ, ye or you take.</i>
<i>Căp-it, he takes.</i>	<i>Cap-iunt, they take.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>Căp-iĕbăm, I was taking.</i>	<i>Căp-iĕbămŭs, we were taking.</i>
<i>Căp-iĕbăŝ, thou wast taking.</i>	<i>Căp-iĕbătis, ye or you were taking.</i>
<i>Căp-iĕbăt, he was taking.</i>	<i>Căp-iĕbant, they were taking.</i>

FUTURE.

<i>Căp-iăm, I shall take.</i>	<i>Căp-iĕmŭs, we shall take.</i>
<i>Căp-iĕŝ, thou wilt take.</i>	<i>Căp-iĕtis, ye or you will take.</i>
<i>Căp-iĕt, he will take.</i>	<i>Căp-iĕnt, they will take.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Căp-iăm, I may take.</i>	<i>Căp-iămŭs, we may take.</i>
<i>Căp-iăs, thou mayest take.</i>	<i>Căp-iătis, ye or you may take.</i>
<i>Căp-iăt, he may take.</i>	<i>Căp-iant, they may take.</i>

REM.—The remaining parts of the indicative and subjunctive moods, in verbs in *iō*, are entirely regular.

272. It has been stated (255) that pronouns are divided into two classes, viz., *Substantive Pronouns* and *Adjective Pronouns*.

273. Adjective pronouns are so called, because they are sometimes used as *pronouns to supply the place of nouns*, and sometimes as *adjectives to qualify nouns*. These are divided into several classes.

274. *Demonstrative Pronouns*, so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer, are *hīc, illē, istē, is*, and *their compounds*, and are declined as follows:

1. Hīc, <i>this</i> .					
Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Hīc,	haec,	hōc.	Hī,	hae,	haec.
G. Hujūs,	hujūs,	hujūs.	Hōrūm,	hārūm,	hōrūm.
D. Huīc,	huīc,	huīc.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.
A. Hunc,	hanc,	hōc.	Hōs,	hās,	haec.
V.					
A. Hōc,	hāc,	hōc.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.
2. Illē, <i>he or that</i> .					
Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Illē,	illā,	illūd.	Illī,	illae,	illā.
G. Illīūs,	illīūs,	illīūs.	Illōrūm,	illārūm,	illōrūm.
D. Illī,	illī,	illī.	Illīs,	illīs,	illīs.
A. Illūm,	illām,	illūd.	Illōs,	illās,	illā.
V.					
A. Illō,	illā,	illō.	Illīs,	illīs,	illīs.
3. Istē, <i>that</i> .					
Istē, <i>that</i> , is declined like <i>illē</i> . It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.					

PARADIGMS—continued.

4. Is, *he or that.*(Less specific than *illě.*)

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Is,	eā,	īd.	Īi,	eae,	eā.
G. Ejūs,	ejūs,	ejūs.	Eōrūm,	eārūm,	eōrūm.
D. Eī,	eī,	eī.	Īis or eīs,	īis or eīs,	īis or eīs.
A. Eūm,	eām,	īd.	Eōs,	eās,	eā.
V.					
A. Eō,	eā,	eō.	Īis or eīs,	īis or eīs,	īis or eīs.

5. Idēm, *the same.*(Formed by annexing *dēm* to *īs.*)

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Idēm,	eādēm,	īdēm.	Īidēm,	eaedēm,	eādēm.
G. Ejusdēm,	ejusdēm,	ejusdēm.	Eōrundēm,	eārundēm,	eōrundēm.
D. Eidēm,	eīdēm,	eīdēm.	Eisdēm, or	eisdēm, or	eisdēm, or
A. Eundēm,	eandēm,	īdēm.	Īisdēm,	īisdēm,	īisdēm.
V.			Eōsdēm,	eāsdēm,	eādēm.
A. Eōdēm,	eādēm,	eōdēm.	Eisdēm, or	eisdēm, or	eisdēm, or
			Īisdēm,	īisdēm,	īisdēm.

275. VOCABULARY.

Ab (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	from.
Castrā, ōrūm (<i>plur.</i>),	camp.
Cělěrītěr,	quickly.
Clēmantiā, ae,	mildness, clemency.
Confūgěrě (iō), confūg,	to flee for refuge.
Cūm (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	with.
Dīmittěrě, dīmīs,	dismiss.
Ex (<i>prep. with abl.</i>),	from.
Impētūs, ūs,	attack (<i>impetus</i>).
Impērātā, ōrūm,	commands.
Lōcūs, ī,	place, position (<i>local</i>).
Mōvěrě, mōv,	to move, to put in motion.

Postĕrā, ūm (<i>mas. not used</i>),	next, following.
Postŭlārĕ, āv,	to demand.
Prōmittĕrĕ, prōmīs,	to promise.
Prōmōvĕrĕ, prōmōv,	to move forward, to advance.
Vĕrō,	indeed, truly.

276. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Postĕro die castra ex eo loco movent. 2. Idem facit Caesar. 3. Idem faciĕbant. 4. Ego vero istud non postŭlo. 5. Veni ut legĕrem. 6. Haec promisistis. 7. Eōdem die castra promōvit.

8. Hī primi (205) cum gladiis impĕtum fecĕrunt. 9. Illi imperāta celerĭter fecĕrunt. 10. Ibi me non occidisti. 11. Eum ab se dimittit. 12. Venisti ut eum vidĕres. 13. Hunc capĭtis damnābunt. 14. Illos prodiĭōnis invĭti accusaverātis.

(b) 1. I will give you this book. 2. We prize these beautiful books very highly. 3. They will think little of those beautiful books. 4. You have condemned this man to death. 5. I will entreat him not to do (that he may not do) this.

6. I have unwillingly condemned him to death. 7. We will not accuse you of treachery. 8. You have accused him of bribery. 9. We entreated him not to accuse his son. 10. We did not make the attack. 11. They asked us to make an attack.

LESSON XLIX.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Intensive Pronoun.

277. THE *Intensive Pronoun*, *ipsĕ*, himself, is so called because it is used to render an object *emphatic*;

it is also called an *adjunctive* pronoun, because it is usually joined to a noun, or to some other pronoun; as, *Rōmūlūs ipsē*, Romulus himself; *tū ipsē*, you yourself.

278. *Ipsē*, when joined to a noun or pronoun, may sometimes be translated by *very*; as, *hōc ipsūm*, this *very* thing.

279. *Ipsē* is declined as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Ipsē,	ipsā,	ipsūm.	Ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsā.
G. Ipsīūs,	ipsīūs,	ipsīūs.	Ipsōrūm,	ipsārūm,	ipsōrūm.
D. Ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsī.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.
A. Ipsūm,	ipsām,	ipsūm.	Ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsā.
V.					
A. Ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsō.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.

REM.—The substantive pronouns are rendered *intensive* by annexing the syllable *mēt*; as, *ēgōmēt*, I myself. In the substantive pronoun of the third person, *sēsē* is used *intensively* in the accusative and ablative of both numbers.

280. VOCABULARY.

Accēdērē, access,	to approach	(<i>access</i>).
At,	but, yet.	
Fortūnā, ae,	fortune.	
Fūgā, ae,	flight.	
Gēnūs, gēnērīs,	kind, nature.	
Justūs, ā, ūm,	just, fair.	
Nūmērūs, i,	number	(<i>numerous</i>).
Occultārē, āv,	to conceal	(<i>occult</i>).
Respondērē, respond,	to answer	(<i>respond</i>)
Usquē,	as far as; <i>usque ad</i> , even to.	

281. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ipse fuga mortem vitavērat. 2. Ipse ad castra hostium accessit. 3. Ipsi usque ad castra hostium

accessērant. 4. Caius sese occultābat. 5. Servi nostri sese occultābunt. 6. Ipse dixit. 7. Hoc ipsum justum est. 8. At te eādem tua fortūna servāvit. 9. Caesar haec promīsit. 10. Ad haec legāti respondērunt.

(b) 1. He himself accused the son of the king. 2. We shall accuse the king himself. 3. You yourself gave me this book. 4. They will read this very (*ipsē*) book. 5. We ourselves will go to see the queen. 6. They have gone to see the queen herself.

7. You promised this. 8. We will ourselves do the same. 9. You have said nothing of (*de*) the nature of the war. 10. We shall say nothing of the war itself. 11. They had come to condemn me to death.

LESSON L.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

282. THE *Relative Pronoun*, *quī*, who, is so called, because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Quī,	quae,	quōd.	Quī,	quae,	quae.
G. Cujūs,	cujūs,	cujūs.	Quōrūm,	quārūm,	quōrūm.
D. Cuī,	cuī,	cuī.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.
A. Quēm,	quām,	quōd.	Quōs,	quās,	quae.
V.					
A. Quō,	quā,	quō.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.

283. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The relative agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; as, Puēr quī scribīt, *the boy who writes*.

REM.—*Quī* is in the masculine singular, to agree with its antecedent *puēr*; but it is in the *nominative* because it is the subject of *scribīt*, and not because its antecedent is in the nominative.

284. The *Interrogative* Pronouns, *quīs* and *quī*, are so called because they are used in asking questions. *Quī* (which? what?) is used *adjectively*, and is declined like the relative. *Quīs* (who? which? what?) is generally used *substantively*, and is declined like the relative, except the forms *quīs*, *quīd*, as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Quīs,	quae,	quīd.	Quī,	quae,	quae.
G. Cujūs,	cujūs,	cujūs.	Quōrūm,	quārūm,	quōrūm.
D. Cuī,	cuī,	cuī.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.
A. Quēm,	quām,	quīd.	Quōs,	quās,	quae.
V.					
A. Quō,	quā,	quō.	Quībūs,	quībūs,	quībūs.

285. VOCABULARY.

Ampliūs (<i>comp. adv. from ample</i>),	more, further.
Cōgītārē, av,	to think, to think about.
Cōgnoscērē, cōgnōv,	to ascertain.
Cōrām,	openly, in person.
Exspectārē, av,	to await, expect.
Nuntiūs, ī,	messenger.
Parvūs, ā, ūm,	little, small.
Perspīcērē, perspex,	to perceive, to see.
Plānē,	plainly.
Vōcārē, av,	to call.

286. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Quis nos vocābit? 2. Quid dixisti? 3. Quid cogitas? 4. Quid times? 5. Quis tibi hunc librum dedit? 6. Eādem quae ex nuntiis cognovērat, coram perspīcit. 7. In qua urbe vivimus? 8. Illi, quod nemo fecerat, fecerunt. 9. Quid est quod amplius expectes? 10. Quam urbem habemus? 11. Quis Caium proditiōnis (214) accūsāt? 12. Quem ambītus accusavisti? 13. Carthagīne invītus manēbo. 14. Bienium Romae invīti manēbant. 15. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texistis.

(b) 1. Whom do you love? 2. I see the slave whom you punished. 3. Who has sold his country for gold? 4. Who gave the boy this beautiful book? 5. Who will show me the way? 6. I will show you the house which my father built.

7. Which book were you reading? 8. I was reading the book which you gave me. 9. We all read to learn (that we may learn). 10. You have remained at Rome many years. 11. How much time you have lost!

 LESSON LI.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Interrogative Particles.

287. *Nē* and *nūm* are interrogative particles; and when a question has no interrogative pronoun (284) or interrogative adverb, one of these particles must be used.

288. If *ně* is used, it must *follow* and be joined to some other word; and, if there is a *not* in the sentence, it must be joined to the *nōn* (not), making *nonně*; e. g.,

1. Scribitně Caiūs? Is Caius writing?
2. Nonně scribīt? Is not he writing?
3. Nūm scribīt Caiūs? Is Caius writing? [No.]

REM.—A question *with* *ně* and *without* *nōn* asks for information (Ex. 1), with *nōn* expects the answer *yes* (Ex. 2), and with *nūm* expects the answer *no* (Ex. 3); thus, Nūm scribīt Caiūs, means, *Caius is not writing, is he?*

289. VOCABULARY.*

Aspergĕrĕ, aspers, <i>sprinkle</i> .		accus., <i>to, into, against</i> ; with
Arā, ae, <i>altar</i> .		abl., <i>in</i> .
Auctumnūs, ī, <i>autumn</i> .		Nidūs, ī, <i>nest</i> .
Construĕrĕ, construx, <i>to build, construct</i> .		Pĕriculōsūs, ā, ūm, <i>dangerous</i> .
Immergĕrĕ, immers, <i>to plunge into</i> .		Sanguis, īnis, <i>m., blood</i> .
In (<i>prep. with accus. or abl.</i>), with		Sĕmĕn, īnis, <i>seed</i> .
		Spargĕrĕ, spars, <i>to scatter, to sow</i> .
		Victimā, ae, <i>victim</i> .

290. Exercises.

(In construing, omit the *ně* or *nūm*, but make the sentence a question.)

(a) 1. Scripsitne Caius?† 2. Num scripserātis? 3. Num rex portas urbis sua manu claudet? 4. Quid rides?

* It has been thought unnecessary longer to insert *key-words* in the Vocabularies, but it is hoped the pupil will still continue to accustom himself to associate with his Latin at least some of the more common English words which have been derived from it.

† In construing a question, the auxiliary verb (*does, do, did, has, have*) must be put before the subject; as, Scripsitne puer, *Has the boy written?* or, *Did the boy write?*

5. Caius se in flumen immersit. 6. Periculōsum est hiēme se in flumen immergēre. 7. Puer se in flumen immergat. 8. *Agricolārum est*⁷ semīna auctumno spargēre. 9. Nonnē in *summīs Alpibus* tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat? 10. Sacerdos victimārum sanguīne aram aspersit. 11. Nonnē boni est pastōris⁷ tondēre oves, non deglubēre?

(b) 1. Does he live to eat? [No.] 2. Does not he eat to live? 3. The husbandman has scattered seeds. 4. Have not the husbandmen scattered seeds? 5. He has plunged the body into *the middle of the waters*. 6. Let fish swim in the *midst of the waters*. 7. They *have come* to condemn (239) you *to death*.⁸ 8. Can he swim in the *middle of the waters*?¹⁰ [No.] 9. The boy's industry is so-great, that he can learn all things. 10. Has not a wolf bitten the sheep? 11. Are you shearing the sheep?

LESSON LII.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Pronouns, Indefinite and Possessive.

291. *Indefinite Pronouns* are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., *quīdām*, a certain one; *aliquis*, some one; *quisquē*, every one; *siquis*, if any, &c.

292. The *indefinite pronouns* are compounds either of *quis* or *quī*, and are declined in nearly the same manner as the simple pronouns.

293. *Quīdām*, compounded of *quī* and *dām*, is declined like *quī*, except in the neuter singular, where it

takes *quīd* (instead of *quōd*) when used *substantively* and in the accusative singular and genitive plural, where *m* before *d* is changed into *n*; as, *quendām* (not *quemdām*), *quōrundām* (not *quōrumdām*).

294. *Ālīquīs*, compounded of *āliūs* and *quīs*, is declined like *quīs*, except in the neuter singular, nominative and accusative, where it has *ālīquōd* adjective, and *ālīquīd* substantive; and in the feminine singular and neuter plural, where it has *ālīquā*. It is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.		
M.	F.	N.
N. Ālīquīs,	ālīquā,	ālīquōd or ālīquīd.
G. Ālicujūs,	ālicujūs,	ālicujūs.
D. Ālicuī,	ālicuī,	ālicuī.
A. Āliquēm,	āliquām,	āliquōd or ālīquīd.
V.		
A. Āliquō,	āliquā,	āliquō.
PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.
N. Āliquī,	āliquae,	āliquā.
G. Āliquōrūm,	āliquārūm,	āliquōrūm.
D. Āliquībūs,	āliquībūs,	āliquībūs.
A. Āliquōs,	āliquās,	āliquā.
V.		
A. Āliquībūs,	āliquībūs,	āliquībūs.

295. The *Possessive Pronouns* (so called because they denote possession), *meūs, meā, meūm*; *tuūs, tuā, tuūm*; *suūs, suā, suūm*; *noštēr, noštřā, noštřūm*; *vestēr, vestřā, vestřūm*, are declined, as we have already seen (114, REM. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declension.

296. VOCABULARY.

A (*prep. with abl.*), *from.*Argentūm, ī, *silver.*Conciliūm, ī, *council.*Continēre, ū, *to restrain, confine.*Culpā, ae, *fault.*Indicēre, indix, *to declare (as war).*Infligēre, inflix, *inflict.*Sī, *if.*Ullūs, ā, ūm (113, REM.), *any.*Vulnūs, ěris, *wound.*

297. Exercises.

(a) 1. Alīquid tempōris invītus amittes. 2. Non est tua ulla culpa, si te alīqui timuērunt. 3. Alīquis est in horto tuo. 4. Caesar suos a proelio continēbat. 5. Legātos ad Caesārem misit. 6. Legāti ad concilium venērunt. 7. Christianōrum est fidem suam servāre. 8. Turpe est patriae tuae leges violāre. 9. Rex urbi bellum indicet. 10. Anguis agricōlae vulnus infligēbat. 11. Tanta est industria tua, ut multa discas. 12. Tanta fuit industria tua ut multa discērēs.

(b) 1. Some one has accused you of bribery. 2. They have accused certain persons of theft. 3. He will condemn some one to death. 4. We have lost some time. 5. The shepherd has sold his dog for gold. 6. It is the duty of a father to instruct his sons. 7. Who has accused you of theft? 8. No one has accused me of theft. 9. Some one has accused you of treachery. 10. Who has accused me of treachery? 11. The king himself has accused you of treachery.

LESSON LIII.

Verb.—Essē.

298. THE verb *essē*, to be, is called a substantive verb, except when used as an auxiliary in the passive

voice (not yet examined) of other verbs. Its conjugation is quite irregular.

299. Paradigm of the verb *Essĕ*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*am*).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>..Plural.</i>
<i>Sūm, I am.</i>	<i>Sūmūs, we are.</i>
<i>Es, thou art.</i>	<i>Estīs, you are.</i>
<i>Est, he is.</i>	<i>Sunt, they are.</i>

IMPERFECT (*was*).

<i>Erām, I was.</i>	<i>Erāmūs, we were.</i>
<i>Erās, thou wast.</i>	<i>Erātīs, you were.</i>
<i>Erāt, he was.</i>	<i>Erant, they were.</i>

FUTURE (*shall or will be*).

<i>Erō, I shall be.</i>	<i>Erīmūs, we shall be.</i>
<i>Erīs, thou wilt be.</i>	<i>Eritīs, you will be.</i>
<i>Erīt, he will be.</i>	<i>Erunt, they will be.</i>

PERFECT (*have been or was*).

<i>Fuī, I have been.</i>	<i>Fuīmūs, we have been.</i>
<i>Fuistī, thou hast been.</i>	<i>Fuistīs, you have been.</i>
<i>Fuīt, he has been.</i>	<i>Fuērunt, } they have been.</i>
	<i>Fuērē, }</i>

PLUPERFECT (*had been*).

<i>Fuērām, I had been.</i>	<i>Fuērāmūs, we had been.</i>
<i>Fuērās, thou hadst been.</i>	<i>Fuērātīs, you had been.</i>
<i>Fuērāt, he had been.</i>	<i>Fuērant, they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been*).

<i>Fuērō, I shall have been.</i>	<i>Fuērīmūs, we shall have been.</i>
<i>Fuērīs, thou wilt have been.</i>	<i>Fuērītīs, you will have been.</i>
<i>Fuērīt, he will have been.</i>	<i>Fuērint, they will have been.</i>

PARADIGM—*continued.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*may or can be*).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Sím, <i>I may be.</i>	Símūs, <i>we may be.</i>
Sís, <i>thou mayest be.</i>	Sítís, <i>you may be.</i>
Sít, <i>he may be.</i>	Sint, <i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should be*).

Essēm, <i>I might be.</i>	Essēmūs, <i>we might be.</i>
Essēs, <i>thou mightest be.</i>	Essētís, <i>you might be.</i>
Essēt, <i>he might be.</i>	Essent, <i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT (*may have been*).

Fuērím, <i>I may have been.</i>	Fuērímūs, <i>we may have been.</i>
Fuērís, <i>thou mayest have been.</i>	Fuērítís, <i>you may have been.</i>
Fuērít, <i>he may have been.</i>	Fuērint, <i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should have been*).

Fuissēm, <i>I might have been.</i>	Fuissēmūs, <i>we might have been.</i>
Fuissēs, <i>thou mightest have been.</i>	Fuissētís, <i>you might have been.</i>
Fuissēt, <i>he might have been.</i>	Fuissent, <i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.*

Es, <i>or estō, be thou.</i>	Estē <i>or estotē, be ye.</i>
Estō, <i>let him be.</i>	Suntō, <i>let them be.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT,	Essē, <i>to be.</i>
PERFECT,	Fuissē, <i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE,	Fūtūrūs (ā, ūm) <i>essē, to be about to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE,	Fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, <i>about to be.</i>
---------	-------------------------------------

* The remaining forms are given here in order to complete the Paradigm of the verb *essē*, although the nature and use of the *imperative* and *infinitive* moods, and of the *participles*, have not yet been examined; a word of explanation will be sufficient for this place.

300. The *Imperative Mood* denotes a command, and of course is never used in the first person.

301. The *Infinitive Mood*, as we have already seen (9), represents simply the meaning of the verb, without person or number. It has three tenses, *present*, *perfect*, and *future*.

302. The *Participle* is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective; thus, the participle *fütürüs*, *ă*, *üm*, is declined like the adjective *bönüs*, *ă*, *üm* (112).

303. VOCABULARY.

Absolvĕrĕ, absolv, *to acquit*.

Admiratiō, ōnīs, *admiration*.

Brĕvis, ě, *short*.

Dignūs, ă, ūm, *worthy*.

Ferrūm, ī, *iron*.

Hăbitărĕ, av, *to dwell, to inhabit*.

Hönör, örīs, *honor*.

Incertūs, ă, ūm, *uncertain*.

Indignūs, ă, ūm, *unworthy*.

Mens, tīs, *mind, reasoning faculty*.

Opūs, ěrīs, *work*.

Tranquillūs, ă, ūm, *calm, tranquil*.

Utilīs, ě, *useful*.

304. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mens sapientis semper erit tranquilla. 2. Est tuum* iter facĕre. 3. Puer in horto fuĕrat. 4. His honoribus (181) digni sitis. 5. Caius vita indignus est. 6. Ferrum et aurum sunt utilia. 7. Haec opĕra sunt admiratiōne digna. 8. Vita est brevis et incerta. 9. Improbōrum⁷ est malos laudāre. 10. Venīmus ut patriae tuae leges violarĕmus. 11. Veniant servi ut portas urbis claudant. 12. Multos annos Romae habitaverātis.

(b) 1. The good will be happy. 2. May you be happy. 3. We all might have been happy. 4. It is

* Est tuūm, it is yours; i. e., your duty.

my duty to keep the laws of my country. 5. May he ever be worthy of this honor. 6. He would have been unworthy of his father.

7. He had been king many years. 8. We will never praise the bad. 9. They will condemn us to death. 10. We will never accuse the good. 11. He had broken his arm at Athens. 12. Virtue is the highest wisdom. 13. We will acquit you of bribery (214.)

LESSON LIV.

Verb Essē, continued.—Comparison of Adjectives.

305. ADJECTIVES in Latin, as in English, may express different degrees of the quality which they denote; e. g.,

Altūs,	altiōr,	altissimūs.
High,	higher,	highest.

REM.—In this example, *altūs* (high) is said to be in the *positive degree*; *altiōr*, in the *comparative*; and *altissimūs*, in the *superlative*.

306. In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

<i>Comparative.</i>			<i>Superlative.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issimūs,	issimā,	issimūm.
<i>Examples.</i>		<i>Root.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>	
Altūs (<i>high</i>),	alt.	alt.	altiōr (iōr, iūs),	altissimūs (ā, ūm).	
Mītis (<i>mild</i>),	mīt.	mīt.	mītiōr (iōr, iūs),	mītissimūs (ā, ūm).	

REM. 1.—Adjectives in *ēr* add *rīmūs* (ā, ūm) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulchēr,	pulchriōr,	pulcherrīmūs.
----------	------------	---------------

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in *ūs* form the superlative by adding *īmūs* to the root of the positive; e. g.,

Fácilis (<i>easy</i>),	fácilior,	fácilimūs.
Diffícilis (<i>difficult</i>),	diffíciliör,	diffícillimūs.
Símilis (<i>like</i>),	símiliör,	símillimūs.
Dissímilis (<i>unlike</i>),	dissímiliör,	dissímillimūs.

REM. 3.—The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison, viz.:

Bönūs (<i>good</i>),	méliör,	optimūs.
Mälūs (<i>bad</i>),	pejör,	pešimūs.
Magnūs (<i>great</i>),	majör,	maximūs.
Parvūs (<i>little</i>),	mīnör,	mīnimūs.
Multūs (<i>much</i>),	plūs (pl. plūrēs, plūrā),	plūrīmūs.

307. The conjunction *quām* is generally used with the comparative degree, unless one of the persons or things compared is the subject of the proposition, in which case *quām* is usually omitted, though sometimes used; e. g.,

1. Nihil est clēmentīā dīvīniūs.
Nothing is more godlike than clemency.
2. Eurōpā mīnör est quām Asiā.
Europe is smaller than Asia.

308. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The comparative degree without *quām* is followed by the ablative.

REM. 1.—Clēmentīā in the first example is in the ablative by this rule.

REM. 2.—If *quām* is expressed, the following noun will be in the same case as that which precedes: thus, *Asiā*, which follows *quām* in the second example, is in the same case as *Eurōpā*, which precedes.

309. The conjunction *quām* before a superlative renders it intensive; e. g.,

Quām plūrīmī, { *Eng. Id.* As many as possible.
 { *Lat. Id.* As the most.

Quām maxīmūs, { *Eng. Id.* { As great as possible.
 { *Lat. Id.* { The greatest possible.
 { *Lat. Id.* As the greatest.

REM.—The superlative may often be best translated by *very* instead of *most*; as, *mons altissimūs*, a very high mountain.

310. VOCABULARY.

Amplūs, ā, ūm, <i>extensive, great.</i>	Ignorātiō, ōnis, <i>ignorance.</i>
Argentūm, ī, <i>silver.</i>	Mālūm, ī, <i>an evil.</i>
Cēlēbēr, brīs, brē, <i>celebrated.</i>	Prētiōsūs, ā, ūm, <i>valuable.</i>
Cicērō, ōnis, <i>Cicero.</i>	Quām, <i>than.</i>
Dīvinūs, ā, ūm, <i>divine.</i>	Quām maxīmūs, ā, ūm, <i>as great</i>
Fūtūrūs, ā, ūm, <i>future.</i>	<i>as possible.</i>
Grāvīs, ē, <i>heavy.</i>	Rātiō, ōnis, <i>reason.</i>
Impendēre, <i>to overhang, to</i>	Scientiā, ae, <i>knowledge.</i>
<i>threaten.</i>	Turrīs, īs, <i>tower.</i>

311. Exercises.

(a) 1. Aurum gravius est argento. 2. Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior est quam scientia. 3. Difficillimum est iram placare. 4. In summis montibus¹⁰ acerrimum est frigus.

5. Veniunt ut copias comparent. 6. Venit ut quam maximas⁹ copias compararet. 7. Turris est altior muro. 8. Quid est in homine ratione divinius? 9. Mons altissimus impendebat. 10. Cicero erat orator celeberrimus. 11. Romani ampliores copias expectabant.

(b) 1. Gold is very heavy. 2. Gold is more valuable than silver. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than gold and silver. 4. You are building a very high wall. 5. You have your wall higher than your tower. 6. We shall raise very large forces. 7. You have raised larger forces than the king himself.

8. We have come to raise as large forces as possible.⁹ 9. Let them raise as large forces as possible. 10. It is⁶ very easy to keep one's word. 11. It is easier to keep one's word than to appease anger. 12. Who was more celebrated than Cicero? 13. He was a very celebrated orator.

LESSON LV.

Compounds of Essě.—Comparison of Adverbs.—Numeral Adjectives.

312. THE compounds of *essě* (except *possě*, to be able, which is irregular, and will be noticed hereafter) are conjugated like the simple *essě*. *prōdessě*, however (compounded of *prō*, for, and *essě*, to be), inserts *d* after *prō* in those parts which in the simple verb begin with *e*; as,

Pres. Prōsŭm, prōdĕs, prōdest, prōsŭmŭs, prōdestĭs, prōsunt, &c.

313. The compounds of *essě* (except *possě*) are followed by the dative, as they take *only* an indirect object (82 and 643, 2); e. g.,

Mihĭ prōfuĭt.

It profited me (*did good to me*).

REM.—Here it is plain that *mihĭ* (to me) is not a *direct*, but only an *indirect* object.

314. Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison: the comparative of the adverb being the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective, and the superlative being formed from that of the adjective by changing the ending *ŭs* into *ĕ*; as,

Adj. Altŭs, altiŏr (*iŭs neut.*), altissĭmŭs.

Adv. Altĕ, altiŭs, altissĭmĕ.

NUMERALS.

315. Numerals comprise,

(a) Numeral adjectives, consisting of three distinct classes; viz.,

- 1) *Cardinals*, which denote simply the *number* of objects; as, *ūnūs*, one; *duō*, two, &c.
- 2) *Ordinals*, which denote the *position* of any object in a *series*; as, *prīmūs*, first; *secundūs*, second.
- 3) *Distributives*, which denote the *number* of objects which are taken *at a time*; as, *singūlī*, one by one; *bīnī*, two by two.

(b) Numeral adverbs; as, *sēmēl*, once; *bīs*, twice. (See Numerals, 583.)

316. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., *Milēs fortitēr pūgnāt*, *the soldier fights bravely*. *Haud difficīlis*, *not difficult*.

317. (a) The first three cardinals, *ūnūs*, *duō*, and *trēs*, are declined as follows:

1. Paradigm of *ūnūs*, *one*.

N. Unūs,	ūnā,	ūnūm.	Unī,	ūnae,	ūnā.
G. Unīūs,	ūnīūs,	ūnīūs.	Unōrūm,	ūnārūm,	ūnōrūm.
D. Unī,	ūnī,	ūnī.	Unīs,	ūnīs,	ūnīs.
A. Unūm,	ūnām,	ūnūm.	Unōs,	ūnās,	ūnā.
V. Unē,	ūnā,	ūnūm.			
A. Unō,	ūnā,	ūnō.	Unīs,	ūnīs,	ūnīs.

REM.—The plural of *ūnūs*, as a numeral, is used only with nouns which have no singular.

2. Paradigms of *duō*, *two*, and *trēs*, *three*.

N. Duō,	duae,	duō.	Trēs (m. & f.),	triā.
G. Duōrūm,	duārūm,	duōrūm.	Triūm,	triūm.
D. Duōbūs,	duābūs,	duōbūs.	Tribūs,	tribūs.
A. Duōs and duō,	duās,	duō.	Trēs,	triā.
V. Duō,	duae,	duō.	Trēs,	triā.
A. Duōbūs,	duābūs,	duōbūs.	Tribūs,	tribūs.

REM.—Trēs is declined like the plural of tristis (153).

(b) Cardinal numbers, from four to one hundred, are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bōnūs* (112); e. g., *dūcentī*, ae, ā, *two hundred*.

318. Ordinals are declined like *bōnūs*. Distributives are declined like the plural of *bōnūs*.

319. Whenever the same noun belongs to both members of a comparison in Latin, it is generally expressed in the first and omitted in the second; in English, however, it is expressed in the first, and represented in the second by the pronoun *that* or *those*; e. g.,

Mārīs sūpĕrfīciēs majōr est quām terrae.

The sea's surface is greater than (*that**) of the land.

REM.—Hence, in translating English into Latin, *that, those*, after *than*, should be omitted.

320. VOCABULARY.

Concertārĕ, av, <i>to contend, quarrel.</i>	Omnīnō, <i>altogether, in all.</i>
Continuūs, ā, ūm, <i>successive.</i>	Prōdessĕ, prōfu, <i>to do good, to profit.</i>
Dĕcĕm, <i>ten.</i>	Prōducĕrĕ, prōdux, <i>to lead forward or out.</i>
Dĕcīmūs, ā, ūm, <i>tenth.</i>	Quartūs, ā, ūm, <i>fourth.</i>
Duō, duae, duō, <i>two.</i>	Quinquĕ, <i>five.</i>
Intĕressĕ, interfu, <i>to be engaged in.</i>	Sūpĕrfīciēs, ēī, <i>surface.</i>
Mārĕ, īs, <i>sea.</i>	Terrā, ae, <i>earth.</i>
Obessĕ, obfu, <i>to be prejudicial to.</i>	

321. Exercises.

(a) 1. Milītes fortīter pugnānt. 2. Romāni fortius quam hostes pugnavĕrunt. 3. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit. 4. Erant omnīno itinĕra duo. 5. Caesar *quam max.*

* Here *that* stands for *the surface*.

imas copias comparaverat. 6. Caius, vir summo ingenio praeditus, Romae habitat. 7. Servus meus proelio interfuit. 8. Fides plurimis profuit. 9. Christianorum est⁷ avaritiam damnare. 10. Caius multis proeliis interfuerat. 11. Terrae superficies minor est quam maris. 12. Caesar decimam legionem misit.

(b) 1. They will fight bravely. 2. You fought more bravely than the Romans. 3. The king himself was engaged in the battle. 4. He fought very bravely. 5. Ten legions were engaged in the first battle. 6. The soldiers of the tenth legion fought more bravely than those^h of the fourth. 7. Anger has often *been prejudicial* to states. 8. It is the part of a Christian to do good to as many as possible. 9. Caesar raised the greatest forces possible. 10. Many states relying on their strength will raise forces.

LESSON LVI.

Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for continued Action.

322. A TRANSITIVE verb (72) may represent its subject,

- 1) As acting upon some object; as, Pătěr filiũm dōcēt, *the father teaches his son*; it is then said to be in the *Active Voice*.
- 2) As acted upon by some other person or thing; as, Filiũs ā pătřě dōcētũr, *the son is taught by his father*; it is then said to be in the *Passive Voice*.

REM.—The forms which have been used in the previous exercises all belong to the active voice : we shall now consider the formation and use of the passive.

323. The third persons (singular and plural) of the tenses for continued action (190), both in the indicative and subjunctive moods, are formed in the passive voice, by adding the ending *ūr* to the corresponding forms of the active.

a) But observe that the vowel before the *t* in the singular is long, except from *ū* in the third conjugation, and from *ābū* and *ēbī*.

324. The following table presents the formation of the third persons of the passive in the moods and tenses just mentioned.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (1st root), *is, are loved, &c.*

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-āt,	Mön-ēt,	Rëg-īt,	Aud-it,
Am-ātūr.	Mön-ētūr.	Rëg-itūr.	Aud-itūr.
Am-ant,	Mön-ent,	Rëg-unt,	Aud-iunt,
Am-antūr.	Mön-entūr.	Rëg-untūr.	Aud-iuntūr.

IMPERFECT (1st root), *was, were loved, &c.*

Am-ābāt,	Mön-ēbāt,	Rëg-ēbāt,	Aud-iēbāt,
Am-ābātūr.	Mön-ēbātūr.	Rëg-ēbātūr.	Aud-iēbātūr.
Am-ābant,	Mön-ēbant,	Rëg-ēbant,	Aud-iēbant,
Am-ābantūr.	Mön-ēbantūr.	Rëg-ēbantūr.	Aud-iēbantūr.

FUTURE (1st root), *shall or will be loved.*

Am-ābīt,	Mön-ēbīt,	Rëg-ēt,	Aud-iēt,
Am-ābītūr.	Mön-ēbītūr.	Rëg-ētūr.	Aud-iētūr.
Am-ābunt,	Mön-ēbunt,	Rëg-ent,	Aud-ient,
Am-ābuntūr.	Mön-ēbuntūr.	Rëg-entūr.	Aud-ientūr.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (1st root), *may or can be loved.*

Am-ēt,	Mön-eāt,	Rëg-āt,	Aud-iāt,
Am-ētūr.	Mön-eātūr.	Rëg-ātūr.	Aud-iātūr.
Am-ent,	Mön-eant,	Rëg-ant,	Aud-iant,
Am-entūr.	Mön-eantūr.	Rëg-antūr.	Aud-iantūr.

PARADIGM—*continued.*

IMPERFECT (1st root), *might, could, &c., be loved.*

Am-ārēt,	Mōn-ērēt,	Rēg-ērēt,	Aud-īrēt,
Am-ārētūr.	Mōn-ērētūr.	Rēg-ērētūr.	Aud-īrētūr.
Am-ārent,	Mōn-ērent,	Rēg-ērent,	Aud-īrent,
Am-ārentūr.	Mōn-ērentūr.	Rēg-ērentūr.	Aud-īrentūr.

325. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Passive verbs are followed by the same cases as the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive (322);
e. g.,

Act. Illī Balbūm furtī accūsant.
They accuse Balbus of theft.

Pass. Balbūs āb illīs furtī accūsātūr.
Balbus is accused of theft by them.

REM.—Observe that the agent is put in the ablative with *āb* (*ab illis*)
a, however, is often used before a consonant.

326. VOCABULARY.

Cōlērē, ū, <i>to cultivate, to practise.</i>	Rhēnūs, ī, <i>Rhine, a river.</i>
Dēmonstrārē, āv, <i>to show.</i>	Rēliquūs, ā, ūm, <i>the rest, the other</i>
Interficērē (īd), <i>interfec, to kill, to</i>	Sex, <i>six.</i>
<i>slay.</i>	Sūprā, <i>above.</i>
Mittērē, mīs, <i>to send.</i>	Tangērē, tētīg, <i>to touch, reach.</i>
Prō (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), <i>for, before.</i>	Unūs, ā, ūm, <i>one, single, single one.</i>

327. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Caius filios docet. 2. Filii a Caio docentur.
3. Legātos ad Caesārem mittent. 4. Legāti ad Caesārem mittentur. 5. Mittantur legāti. 6. Relīquas sex legiōnes pro castris in acie constituet. 7. Caium capītis damnābunt. 8. Caius capītis damnābitur. 9. Haec civitas Rhenum tangit. 10. Haec civitas Rhenum, ut supra demonstravīmus, tangit. 11. Virtus ab omnibus colātur.

- (b) 1. Balbus will kill Caius. 2. He will be killed by Balbus. 3. Caius accuses me of theft. 4. He is accused of theft by Caius. 5. Let him be accused of bribery. 6. Let them be condemned to death. 7. They are killed in the first battle. 8. Let not the king be condemned to death. 9. The law will be broken. 10. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 11. Let not the laws of the city be broken by us.

LESSON LVII.

Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Completed Action.

328. THE tenses for completed action in the passive voice are called *Compound Forms*, and consist of the perfect participle with certain parts of the verb *essē* (299). We must accordingly notice here the formation of this participle.

329. The perfect participle is formed from what is called the *third root*, by the addition of the ending *ūs* (ǎ, ům), and is declined like *bōnūs*.

330. The third root is formed from the first,

- 1) In the first, second, and fourth conjugations by the addition of the respective endings, *āt*, *īt*, and *ūt*; e. g.,

Amārĕ,	ǎm,	ǎmāt.
Mōnĕrĕ,	mŏn,	mŏnīt.
Audīrĕ,	aud,	audīt.

- 2) In the third conjugation, by the addition of *t*, or sometimes *s* (especially to the *t*-sounds).

- a) Any *p*-sound before *t* is *p* (i. e., *pt* or *bt* becomes *pt*).
 b) Any *k*-sound before *t* is *c* (i. e., *ct*, *gt*, or *qut* becomes *ct*).
 c) *D*, and sometimes *g*, is dropped before *s* (see 203, c, and 211).

Scribĕrĕ, scrib, script (*b* changed to *p*).

Rĕgĕrĕ, rĕg, rect (*g* changed to *c*).

Claudĕrĕ, claud, claus (*d* dropped).

331. The third persons singular of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of the passive indicative are formed respectively from the third singular of the present, imperfect, and future* of the indicative of the verb *essĕ* and the perfect participle; and the plural is formed in the same way, by using the plural of the participle and verb.

332. The third persons of the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive, are formed by a similar combination of the perfect passive participle with the third persons of the present and imperfect† subjunctive of *essĕ*.

PARADIGM.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Amārĕ.	Mōnĕrĕ.	Rĕgĕrĕ.	Audīrĕ.
1st root, <i>ām</i> ,	1st root, <i>mōn</i> ,	1st root, <i>rĕg</i> ,	1st root, <i>aud</i> ,
3d " <i>āmāt</i> .	3d " <i>mōnīt</i> .	3d " <i>rect</i> .	3d " <i>audīt</i> .

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT (*has been or was loved, &c.*).

S. Amātūs† est, Mōnītūs est, Rectūs est, Auditūs est,
P. Amātī† sunt. Mōnītī sunt. Rectī sunt. Auditī sunt.

* Instead of the present, imperfect, and future, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect are sometimes used.

† Instead of the present and imperfect, the perfect and pluperfect are sometimes used.

‡ These participles, which, it must be remembered, are declined like *bōnūs* (302), are always of the same gender and number as the subject of the verb, thus:

PARADIGM—*continued.*PLUPERFECT (*had been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs ērāt,	Mōnītūs ērāt,	Rectūs ērāt,	Auditūs ērāt,
P.	Amātī ērant.	Mōnītī ērant.	Rectī ērant.	Auditī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs ērīt,	Mōnītūs ērīt,	Rectūs ērīt,	Auditūs ērīt,
P.	Amātī ērunt.	Mōnītī ērunt.	Rectī ērunt.	Auditī ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PERFECT (*may have been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs sīt,	Mōnītūs sīt,	Rectūs sīt,	Auditūs sīt,
P.	Amātī sint.	Mōnītī sint.	Rectī sint.	Auditī sint.

PLUPERFECT (*might have been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amātūs essēt,	Mōnītūs essēt,	Rectūs essēt,	Auditūs essēt,
P.	Amātī essent.	Mōnītī essent.	Rectī essent.	Auditī essent.

333. VOCABULARY.

Aestimārē, āv, āt, <i>to value, to prize.</i>	Interfīcērē (iō), fēc, fect, <i>to kill.</i>
Collōquiūm, ī, <i>conference, meeting.</i>	Intērīm, <i>in the mean time, mean-while.</i>
Conspīcērē (iō), conspex, con- spect, <i>to see, discover.</i>	Lēnīs, ē, <i>mild, merciful.</i>
Dēcernērē, dēcrēv, dēcrēt, <i>to de- cree.</i>	Lītērae, ārūm (<i>pl.</i>), <i>letter, epistle.</i>
Dīcērē, dix, dict, <i>to say, speak, name.</i>	Mittērē, mīs, miss, <i>to send.</i>
Fācērē (iō), fēc, fact, <i>to do, make, perform.</i>	Pārārē, āv, āt, <i>to prepare.</i>
Frangērē, frēg, fract, <i>to break, to violate.</i>	Quintūs, ā, ūm, <i>fifth.</i>
	Sēcundūs, ā, ūm, <i>second.</i>
	Sententiā, ae, <i>sentiment.</i>
	Supplicātiō, ōnīs, <i>thanksgiving.</i>
	Vīgintī, <i>twenty.</i>

Amātūs est, *he has been loved.*

Amātā est, *she has been loved.*

Amātūm est, *it has been loved.*

Amātī sunt, *they (men) have been loved.*

Amātae sunt, *they (women) have been loved.*

Amātā sunt, *they (things) have been loved.*

334. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Supplicatio decreta est. 2. Mors omnibus parata est. 3. Dies colloquio dictus erat ex eo die quintus. 4. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt. 5. Faciam id quod est lenius et utilius. 6. Mittuntur ad Caesarem a Balbo litterae. 7. Interim milites legionum duarum ab hostibus conspiciebantur. 8. Milites legionum duarum conspecti sunt.

(b) 1. A thanksgiving had been decreed to Caesar. 2. Twenty soldiers of the tenth legion had been killed in the second battle. 3. Money has ever been valued very highly. 4. Has not money always been valued very highly? 5. Were not the laws broken at Athens? 6. The laws had been broken at Rome. 7. We will appoint the tenth day for a conference. 8. Messengers had been sent to the king. 9. A soldier was sent to the king.

LESSON LVIII.

Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice.

335. THE persons of the tenses for continued action in the indicative and subjunctive moods may be formed from the corresponding parts of the active, as follows:

a) The first persons, by dropping the final consonant (when there is one), and adding *r*; e. g.,

Amō (act.), *āmōr* (pass. *r* added).

Amābām (act.); *āmābār* (pass. *m* dropped, *r* added).

b) The second persons, by changing *s* (sing.) into *rīs* (or *rē*), and *tīs* (plur.) into *mīnī*; e. g.,

Amās (*act.*), ămārīs (or rē) (*pass. s changed to rīs or rē*).
 Amătīs (*act.*), ămămīnī (*pass. tīs* “ “ mīnī).

c) The third persons, by adding ūr (323); e. g.,

Amăt (*act.*), ămătūr (*pass. ūr added*).
 Amant (*act.*), ămantūr (*pass. ūr added*).

336. The personal endings of the tenses for continued action, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, active and passive, are as follows:

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Act.	ō, m,	s,	t,	mūs,	tīs,	nt,
Pass.	r.	rīs, rē.	tūr.	mūr.	mīnī.	ntūr.

337. The first and second persons of the passive may accordingly be formed directly from the third (as already obtained), by changing its ending into those of the first and second, and observing the same principles for vowel changes as apply to the active (248); e. g.,

	<i>3d Pers.</i>	<i>1st Pers.</i>	<i>2d Pers.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	Amătūr,	ămōr (<i>vowel changed</i>)	ămārīs (rē).
<i>Plur.</i>	Amantūr,	ămămūr,	ămămīnī.

338. The first and second persons of the tenses for completed action may be obtained directly from the third person, by simply changing the third person of the proper tense of *esse* into the first and second; e. g.,

<i>Sing.</i>	Amătūs est,	ămătūs sūm,	ămătūs ēs.
<i>Plur.</i>	Amătī sunt,	amătī sūmūs,	ămătī estīs.

339. Paradigm of the Indicative Passive.

PRESENT (1st root), *am loved, &c.*

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-ōr,	Mōn-eōr,	Rēg-ōr,	Aud-iōr,
Am-āris (rē),	Mōn-ēris (rē),	Rēg-ēris (rē),	Aud-iris (rē),
Am-ātūr ;	Mōn-ētūr ;	Rēg-itūr ;	Aud-itūr ;
Am-āmūr,	Mōn-ēmūr,	Rēg-īmūr,	Aud-īmūr,
Am-āmīnī,	Mōn-ēmīnī,	Rēg-īmīnī,	Aud-īmīnī,
Am-antūr.	Mōn-entūr.	Rēg-untūr.	Aud-iuntūr.

IMPERFECT (1st root), *was loved, &c.*

Am-ābār,	Mōn-ēbār,	Rēg-ēbār,	Aud-iēbār,
Am-ābaris (rē),	Mōn-ēbaris (rē),	Rēg-ēbaris (rē),	Aud-iēbaris (rē),
Am-ābatūr ;	Mōn-ēbatūr ;	Rēg-ēbatūr ;	Aud-iēbatūr ;
Am-ābamūr,	Mōn-ēbamūr,	Rēg-ēbamūr,	Aud-iēbamūr,
Am-ābamīnī,	Mōn-ēbamīnī,	Rēg-ēbamīnī,	Aud-iēbamīnī,
Am-ābantūr.	Mōn-ēbantūr.	Rēg-ēbantūr.	Aud-iēbantūr.

FUTURE (1st root), *shall or will be loved.*

Am-ābōr,	Mōn-ēbōr,	Rēg-ār,	Aud-iār,
Am-ābēris (rē),	Mōn-ēbēris (rē),	Rēg-ēris (rē),	Aud-iēris (rē),
Am-ābitūr ;	Mōn-ēbitūr ;	Rēg-ētūr ;	Aud-iētūr ;
Am-ābimūr,	Mōn-ēbimūr,	Rēg-ēmūr,	Aud-iēmūr,
Am-ābimīnī,	Mōn-ēbimīnī,	Rēg-ēmīnī,	Aud-iēmīnī,
Am-ābuntūr.	Mōn-ēbuntūr.	Rēg-entūr.	Aud-iēntūr.

PERFECT (3d root, *perf. part. and sūm**), *was or have been loved.*

Amāt-ūs sūm,*	Mōnit-ūs sūm,	Rect-ūs sūm,	Audit-ūs sūm,
Amāt-ūs es,	Mōnit-ūs es,	Rect-ūs es,	Audit-ūs es,
Amāt-ūs est ;	Mōnit-ūs est ;	Rect-ūs est ;	Audit-ūs est ;
Amāt-i sūmūs,	Mōnit-i sūmūs,	Rect-i sūmūs,	Audit-i sūmūs,
Amāt-i estis,	Mōnit-i estis,	Rect-i estis,	Audit-i estis,
Amāt-i sunt.	Mōnit-i sunt.	Rect-i sunt.	Audit-i sunt.

PLUPERFECT (3d root, *perf. part. and ērām†*), *had been loved.*

Amāt-ūs ērām,†	Mōnit-ūs ērām,	Rect-ūs ērām,	Audit-ūs ērām,
Amāt-ūs ēras,	Mōnit-ūs ēras,	Rect-ūs ēras,	Audit-ūs ēras,
Amāt-ūs ērāt ;	Mōnit-ūs ērāt ;	Rect-ūs ērāt ;	Audit-ūs ērāt ;
Amāt-i ērāmūs,	Mōnit-i ērāmūs,	Rect-i ērāmūs,	Audit-i ērāmūs,
Amāt-i ērātis,	Mōnit-i ērātis,	Rect-i ērātis,	Audit-i ērātis,
Amāt-i ērant.	Mōnit-i ērant.	Rect-i ērant.	Audit-i ērant.

* Fuī is sometimes used instead of sūm (331, N.).

† Fuērām is sometimes used instead of ērām (331, N.).

PARADIGM—*continued.*

FUTURE PERFECT (3d root, *perf. part. and* ěřǫ*), *shall or will have been loved, &c.*

Amāt-ūs ěřǫ,*	Mōnit-ūs ěřǫ,	Rect-ūs ěřǫ,	Audit-ūs ěřǫ,
Amāt-ūs ěřis,	Mōnit-ūs ěřis,	Rect-ūs ěřis,	Audit-ūs ěřis,
Amāt-ūs ěřit;	Mōnit-ūs ěřit;	Rect-ūs ěřit;	Audit-ūs ěřit;
Amāt-ī ěřimūs,	Mōnit-ī ěřimūs,	Rect-ī ěřimūs,	Audit-ī ěřimūs,
Amāt-ī ěřītis,	Mōnit-ī ěřītis,	Rect-ī ěřītis,	Audit-ī ěřītis,
Amāt-ī ěřunt.	Mōnit-ī ěřunt.	Rect-ī ěřunt.	Audit-ī ěřunt.

340. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārě, āv, āt, <i>to accuse.</i>	Fīnīřě, iv, it, <i>to finish.</i>
Admōnērě, u, it, <i>to admonish, warn.</i>	Graecī, ōrūm, <i>the Greeks.</i>
Běně, <i>well.</i>	Hastā, ae, <i>spear.</i>
Carthāgīniensīs, is, <i>a Carthaginian.</i>	Laudārě, āv, āt, <i>to praise.</i>
Clīpeūs, ī, <i>shield.</i>	Mensīs, is, m., <i>month.</i>
Damnārě, āv, āt, <i>to condemn.</i>	Mūtārě, āv, āt, <i>to change.</i>
Discērě, dīdic, <i>to learn.</i>	Nōvemběr, brīs (abl. ī), <i>November.</i>
Dōnārě, āv, āt, <i>to give, present.</i>	Pūgnārě, āv, āt, <i>to fight.</i>
Excītārě, āv, āt, <i>to excite, arouse.</i>	Pūnīřě, iv, it, <i>to punish.</i>
	Sūpěrārě, āv, āt, <i>to surpass, conquer, to go over.</i>

341. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Tempōra mutantur et nos mutāmur in illis. 2. Finītur labor agricōlae mense Novembri. 3. Vos laudanīni, puēri qui bene didicistis. 4. Donābor clipeo et hasta, si bene pro patria pugnāvěro. 5. Admonebēris, ne iram excītes.¹ 6. Graeci a Romānis superāti sunt. 7. Eōdem anno Carthaginienses et Graeci a Romānis superāti sunt. 8. Proditīōnis accusāti estis. 9. Ambītus accusāti sumus.

(b) 1. You will be punished. 2. Has he not been punished? 3. We have been admonished not to ac-

* Fuěřǫ is sometimes used instead of ěřǫ (331, N.).

cuse the king. 4. Has the queen been condemned to death? (No.) 5. Who will be condemned to death? 6. Who have been accused of treason? 7. We shall be presented with two beautiful books. 8. Have you not been presented with a very fine dog? 9. Had not the Greeks been conquered by the Romans? 10. By whom were the Romans conquered? 11. We shall be conquered by the enemy.

LESSON LIX.

Subjunctive Mood of the Passive Voice.

342. PARADIGM of the Subjunctive Passive.

PRESENT (1st root), *may or can be loved, &c.*

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Am-ĕr,	Mŏn-eār,	Rĕg-ār,	Aud-iār,
Am-ĕrĭs (rĕ),	Mŏn-eārĭs (rĕ),	Rĕg-ārĭs (rĕ),	Aud-iārĭs (rĕ),
Am-ĕtŭr ;	Mŏn-eātŭr ;	Rĕg-ātŭr ;	Aud-iatŭr ;
Am-ĕmŭr,	Mŏn-eāmŭr,	Rĕg-amŭr,	Aud-iāmŭr,
Am-ĕmĭnĭ,	Mŏn-eāmĭnĭ,	Rĕg-amĭnĭ,	Aud-iāmĭnĭ,
Am-entŭr.	Mŏn-eantŭr.	Rĕg-antŭr.	Aud-iantŭr.

IMPERFECT (1st root), *might, could, &c., be loved, &c.*

Am-ārĕr,	Mŏn-ĕrĕr,	Rĕg-ĕrĕr,	Aud-ĭrĕr,
Am-ārĕrĭs (rĕ),	Mŏn-ĕrĕrĭs (rĕ),	Rĕg-ĕrĕrĭs (rĕ),	Aud-ĭrĕrĭs (rĕ),
Am-ārĕtŭr ;	Mŏn-ĕrĕtŭr ;	Rĕg-ĕrĕtŭr ;	Aud-ĭrĕtŭr ;
Am-ārĕmŭr,	Mŏn-ĕrĕmŭr,	Rĕg-ĕrĕmŭr,	Aud-ĭrĕmŭr,
Am-ārĕmĭnĭ,	Mŏn-ĕrĕmĭnĭ,	Rĕg-ĕrĕmĭnĭ,	Aud-ĭrĕmĭnĭ,
Am-arentŭr.	Mŏn-ĕrentŭr.	Rĕg-ĕrentŭr.	Aud-ĭrentŭr.

PERFECT (3d root—*perf. part. and sĭm or fuĕrĭm*), *may have been loved, &c.*

Amāt-ŭs sĭm,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs sĭm,	Rect-ŭs sĭm,	Audĭt-ŭs sĭm,
Amāt-ŭs sĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs sĭs,	Rect-ŭs sĭs,	Audĭt-ŭs sĭs,
Amāt-ŭs sĭt,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs sĭt ;	Rect-ŭs sĭt ;	Audĭt-ŭs sĭt ;
Amāt-ĭ sĭmŭs,	Mŏnĭt-ĭ sĭmŭs,	Rect-ĭ sĭmŭs,	Audĭt-ĭ sĭmŭe,
Amāt-ĭ sĭtĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ĭ sĭtĭs,	Rect-ĭ sĭtĭs,	Audĭt-ĭ sĭtĭs,
Amāt-ĭ sint.	Mŏnĭt-ĭ sint.	Rect-ĭ sint.	Audĭt-ĭ sint.

PARADIGM—*continued.*

PLUPERFECT (3d root— <i>perf. part. and</i> <i>essēm or fuissēm</i>), <i>might have been loved, &c.</i>			
Amāt-ūs essēm,	Mōnīt-ūs essēm,	Rect-ūs essēm,	Audīt-ūs essēm,
Amāt-ūs essēs,	Mōnīt-ūs essēs,	Rect-ūs essēs,	Audīt-ūs essēs,
Amāt-ūs essēt;	Mōnīt-ūs essēt;	Rect-ūs essēt;	Audīt-ūs essēt;
Amāt-ī essēmūs	Mōnīt-ī essēmūs	Rect-ī essēmūs	Audīt-ī essēmūs
Amāt-ī essētīs,	Mōnīt-ī essētīs,	Rect-ī essētīs,	Audīt-ī essētīs,
Amāt-ī essent.	Mōnīt-ī essent.	Rect-ī essent.	Audīt-ī essent.

343. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs signifying to *separate from*, or *deprive of*, are followed by the *ablative* in addition to the *accusative* of the direct object; e. g.;

Mē *lūcē* prīvant.

They deprive me of *light*.

344. VOCABULARY.

Adulatiō, ōnīs, *flattery.*

Contra (*prep. with acc.*), *against.*

Dēcīpērē (iō), dēcēp, dēcept, *to deceive.*

Fraudārē, av, at, *to defraud.*

Fūgērē (iō), fūg, fūgīt, *to flee.*

Grānūm, ī, *grain, grain of corn.*

Imprūdēns, tīs, *inconsiderate, imprudent.*

Nēquīdēm,* *not even.*

Paupēr, ěrīs, *a poor man.*

Perfūgiūm, ī, *refuge.*

Praebērē, ū, ět, *to furnish, offer.*

Praepārārē, av, at, *to prepare.*

Princeps, principīs, *chief, leader.*

Prīvarē, av, at, *to deprive.*

Sancīrē, sanx, sanct, *to enact, confirm.*

Sēnectūs, ūtīs, *f. old age.*

Servārē, av, at, *to observe, keep.*

Spēcīōsūs, ā, ūm, *plausible, specious.*

Tām, so.

Verbūm, ī, *word.*

Vīvērē, vix, vict, *to live.*

345. Exercises.

(a) 1. Non sum tam imprūdēns ut verbis speciōsis decipiar.ⁱ 2. Bonae leges a principībus sanciantur. 3.

* The emphatic word is generally written between the two parts of this word; thus, *nē grānō quīdēm*, not even a grain.

Praeparētur anīmus contra omnia. 4. Praebeātur se-
nectūti perfugium. 5. Ne me luce privētis. 6. Ne
grano quidem uno paupĕres fraudētis. 7. Paupĕres ne
grano quidem uno fraudentur. 8. Invitus⁵ te furti
accusaverat. 9. Caius, vir summo ingenio, Romae vivit.

(b) 1. Be not deceived. 2. Let him not be deceived.
3. I was so imprudent as to be deceived (that I was
deceived) by specious words. 4. You will not be so
imprudent as to be deceived by flattery. 5. Let all
good laws be observed by the citizens. 6. The boys
fled that they might not be punished. 7. Do not de-
fraud the poor. 8. Let not the poor be defrauded.
9. May they never be defrauded by you. 10. You
shall never be defrauded of even a single grain by us.

LESSON LX.

Imperative Mood — Active and Passive.

346. THE *Imperative* mood expresses a *command*, an
exhortation, or *entreaty*. It is used only in the present
tense, and in the second and third persons.

347. If a negative accompanies the imperative, it
must be expressed in Latin by *nē* (instead of *nōn*); e. g.,

Nē peccātĕ, *do not sin.*

REM.—It will be remembered that a command or exhortation may
also be expressed by the present subjunctive (231).

348. The imperative is formed from the first root by
the addition of the following endings:

ACTIVE.

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
S. 2.	<i>ā or ātō,</i>	<i>ē or ētō,</i>	<i>ě or itō,</i>	<i>ī or itō.</i>
3.	<i>ātō,</i>	<i>ētō,</i>	<i>itō,</i>	<i>itō.</i>
P. 2.	<i>ātē, ātōtē,</i>	<i>ētē, ētōtē,</i>	<i>itē, itōtē,</i>	<i>itē, itōtē.</i>
3.	<i>antō,</i>	<i>entō,</i>	<i>untō,</i>	<i>iuntō.</i>

PASSIVE.

S. 2.	<i>ārē or atōr,</i>	<i>ērē or etōr,</i>	<i>ērē or itōr,</i>	<i>irē or itōr.</i>
3.	<i>atōr,</i>	<i>etōr,</i>	<i>itōr,</i>	<i>itōr.</i>
P. 2.	<i>āmīnī,</i>	<i>ēmīnī,</i>	<i>imīnī,</i>	<i>imīnī.</i>
3.	<i>antōr,</i>	<i>entōr,</i>	<i>untōr,</i>	<i>iuntōr.</i>

349. Paradigm of the Imperative Mood.

CONJUGATION I.

	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
S. 2.	<i>Am-ā or ām-ātō,</i> <i>love thou, do thou love.</i>	<i>Am-ārē or ām-atōr,</i> <i>be thou loved.</i>
3.	<i>Am-ātō, let him love.</i>	<i>Am-atōr, let him be loved.</i>
P. 2.	<i>Am-ātē or ām-ātōtē,</i> <i>love ye, do ye love.</i>	<i>Am-āmīnī,</i> <i>be ye loved.</i>
3.	<i>Am-antō, let them love.</i>	<i>Am-antōr, let them be loved.</i>

CONJUGATION II.

S. 2.	<i>Mōn-ē or mōn-ētō,</i> <i>advise thou.</i>	<i>Mōn-ērē or mōn-etōr,</i> <i>be thou advised.</i>
3.	<i>Mōn-ētō, let him advise.</i>	<i>Mōn-etōr, let him be advised.</i>
P. 2.	<i>Mōn-ētē or mōn-etōtē, advise ye</i>	<i>Mōn-ēmīnī, be ye advised.</i>
3.	<i>Mōn-entō, let them advise.</i>	<i>Mōn-entōr, let them be advised.</i>

CONJUGATION III.

S. 2.	<i>Rĕg-ě or rĕg-itō,</i> <i>rule thou.</i>	<i>Rĕg-ērē or rĕg-itōr,</i> <i>be thou ruled.</i>
3.	<i>Rĕg-itō, let him rule.</i>	<i>Rĕg-itōr, let him be ruled.</i>
P. 2.	<i>Rĕg-itē or rĕg-itōtē, rule ye.</i>	<i>Rĕg-imīnī, be ye ruled.</i>
3.	<i>Rĕg-untō, let them rule.</i>	<i>Rĕg-untōr, let them be ruled.</i>

CONJUGATION IV.

S. 2.	<i>Aud-ī or aud-itō,</i> <i>hear thou.</i>	<i>Aud-irē or aud-itōr,</i> <i>be thou heard.</i>
3.	<i>Aud-itō, let him hear.</i>	<i>Aud-itōr, let him be heard.</i>
P. 2.	<i>Aud-itē or aud-itōtē, hear ye.</i>	<i>Aud-imīnī, be ye heard.</i>
3.	<i>Aud-iuntō, let them hear.</i>	<i>Aud-iuntōr, let them be heard.</i>

REM.—The second forms of the imperative (*to, tote, nto, &c.*) are used in laws, rules, and other formal expressions of duty or permission.

350. VOCABULARY.

Ac, *and.*

Aměricānūs, ā, ūm, *American.*

Audirē. iv, it, *to hear, listen to.*

Castigārē, av, āt, *to chastise.*

Cōgītārē, av, āt, *to think about.*

Compescērē, compescu, *to restrain, repress.*

Conjux, ūgīs, m. or f., *husband, wife, spouse.*

Conservārē, āv, āt, *to preserve.*

Consiliūm, ī, *advice, instruction.*

Corrumpērē, corrūp, corrupt, *to mislead, corrupt.*

Dēfendērē, dēfend, dēfens, *to defend.*

Dēglūbērē, dēglups, dēglupt, *to flay, to skin.*

Exōrārē, āv, āt, *to supplicate.*

Libērī, ōrūm (*pl.*), *children.*

Nōmēn, īnīs, *name.*

Pernīciēs, ēī, *destruction.*

Pōpūlus, ī, *people.*

Quē (*joined to the word it connects*), *and.*

Ruērē, ru, ruīt (*or rūt*), *to rush.*

Sālūs, ūtīs, f., *safety.*

Scribērē, scrips, script, *to write.*

Sēpēlīrē, īv, sēpult, *to bury, inter.*

Tondērē, tōtond, tons, *to shear, shave.*

Vestēr, trā, trūm, *your.*

Vidērē, vīd, vīs, *to see.*

351. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caium ne accūsa. 2. Balbum ne accusāte. 3. Tonde oves: ne deglūbe. 4. Tondēte oves: ne deglubīte. 5. Audi, puer, consilia sapientium. 6. Audīte, pueri, consilia sapientium, et vidēte, ne in perniciem ruātis. 7. Exorāre, mi (115) pater, compesce iram. 8. Nemo in urbe sepelītor. 9. Lex erat his verbis scripta: "Nemo in urbe sepelītor." 10. Audi, mi fili (103, N.), ab imprōbis ne corrumpītor. 11. De vobis ac de libēris vestris cogitāte. 12. Conservāte vos, conjūges, libēros, fortunasque vestras. 13. Populi Romani nomen salutemque defendite.

(b) 1. Do not accuse me of theft. 2. Let him shear the sheep. 3. Let no one break the laws. 4. Let the laws be observed. 5. Do not chastise the slave. 6.

Let not the slaves be chastised. 7. Let him be buried in the city. 8. Defend (ye) the name and the safety of the American people. 9. Defend (ye) the American eagle. 10. Let the American eagle be defended by all. 11. Boys, listen to (hear) the instruction of your fathers. 12. Do not break your word.

LESSON LXI.

Infinitive Mood.

352. THE *Infinitive* mood (as already stated, 9) represents the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number.

353. The infinitive mood has in each voice three tenses; viz., the *present*, *perfect*, and *future*.

REM.—We must here give the formation of the *supine* and *future act. participle* (both of which we shall soon notice), as they are used in forming the future infinitive.

354. The *future active participle* and the *active supine* are formed from the third root; the former by the addition of *ūrūs* (ǎ, ům); as, *āmāt* (3d root), *āmātūrūs* (ǎ, ům); and the latter by the addition of *ům*; as, *āmāt*, *āmātům*.

355. The infinitives are formed as follows:

1) The present, from the first root by the addition of the endings:

	<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>Conj. IV.</i>
<i>Act.</i>	ārě,	ērě,	ěrě,	īrě.
<i>Pass.</i>	ārī,	ērī,	ī,	īrī.

2) The perfect active, from the second root by

the addition of the ending *issĕ*; and the *perfect passive* from the perfect participle and *essĕ*.

- 3) The future active, from the *future active participle* and *essĕ*; and the *future passive* from the *supine* and *īrī*.

356. Paradigm of the Infinitive Mood.

		CONJ. I.	
		<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
Pres.	Am-ārĕ, <i>to love.</i>		Am-ārī, <i>to be loved.</i>
Perf.	Amāv-issĕ, <i>to have loved.</i>		Amāt-ūs essĕ, <i>to have been loved.</i>
Fut.	Amāt-ūrūs essĕ, <i>to be about to love.</i>		Amāt-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be loved.</i>
		CONJ. II.	
Pres.	Mōn-ērĕ, <i>to advise.</i>		Mōn-ērī, <i>to be advised.</i>
Perf.	Mōnu-issĕ, <i>to have advised.</i>		Mōnīt-ūs essĕ, <i>to have been advised.</i>
Fut.	Mōnīt-ūrūs essĕ, <i>to be about to advise.</i>		Mōnīt-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be advised.</i>
		CONJ. III.	
Pres.	Rĕg-ērĕ, <i>to rule.</i>		Rĕg-ī, <i>to be ruled.</i>
Perf.	Rex-issĕ, <i>to have ruled.</i>		Rect-ūs essĕ, <i>to have been ruled.</i>
Fut.	Rect-ūrūs essĕ, <i>to be about to rule.</i>		Rect-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be ruled.</i>
		CONJ. IV.	
Pres.	Aud-īrĕ, <i>to hear.</i>		Aud-īrī, <i>to be heard.</i>
Perf.	Audīv-issĕ, <i>to have heard.</i>		Audit-ūs essĕ, <i>to have been heard.</i>
Fut.	Audit-ūrūs essĕ, <i>to be about to hear.</i>		Audit-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be heard.</i>

357. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The subject of an infinitive must be put in the accusative; e. g.,

Vīdēt tē essĕ beātūm.

He sees that you are happy.

REM. 1.—The accusative *tē* is the subject of *essē*.

REM. 2.—The use of the infinitive, as the subject of a finite verb, has been already considered (184).

358. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The infinitive, either alone or with other words connected with it, may depend upon another verb; e. g.,

1. Cūpīt sǎpěřě.

He desires *to be wise*.

2. Spěřāt sē victūrŭm essē.

He hopes *that he shall live*.

REM. 1.—In most cases the infinitive is really the direct object of the verb on which it depends; thus *sǎpěřě* (to be wise) is really the object desired. He desires (what?) *to be wise*.

REM. 2.—In the compound infinitives (i. e., those which are made up of two words) the participles must *agree* in gender, number, and case with the subject of those infinitives; but of course the *supine* remains *unaltered*. Thus, in the second example, *victūrŭm* is in the accusative masculine singular, to agree with *sē*, the subject of the infinitive.

359. Two or more English sentences, joined by the conjunction *that*, are often made one Latin sentence, by leaving out the conjunction, and turning the following nominative into the accusative and the verb into the infinitive.

360. VOCABULARY.

Certŭs, ā, um, *certain*.

Clemens, tis, *mild, merciful*.

Convertěřě, convert, convers, *to turn, convert*.

Cŭpěřě (iō), cŭpiv (or i), cŭpīt, *to desire*.

Dividěřě, divis, dīvis, *to divide*.

Dōcěřě, u, doct, *to teach*.

Oculŭs, i, *eye*.

Pars, partīs, *part*.

Peccāřě, āv, āt, *to sin*.

Praedā, ae, *booty*.

Sǎpěřě, iv, i, or u, *to be wise*.

Spěřāřě, āv, āt, *to hope*.

Tīměřě, ŭ, *to fear*.

Trēs, triā, *three*.

Venděřě, vendīd, vendīt, *to sell*.

361. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbi est omnia in tres partes dividere. 2. Nunquam utile est peccare. 3. Omnes homines beati esse cupiunt. 4. Cupio me esse clementem. 5. Docemus pueros ut sapere discant. 6. Video in me omnium vestrum oculos esse conversos. 7. Sperant se victuros esse. 8. Certum est Balbum patriam auro vendidisse.

(b) 1. He is said to have divided the booty into ten parts. 2. They are said to have lived at Rome five years. 3. We desire to be happy. 4. You all desire to be happy. 5. He is said to have been very happy. 6. He says, that all eyes were turned upon him. 7. He sees that you are happy. 8. It is certain, that a Christian does not fear death. 9. It is certain, that the boy has heard a voice. 10. It is certain, that Balbus will value my labors *very highly*.² 11. It is certain, that the avaricious value money *very highly* 12. It is certain, that Balbus will be condemned *to death*.

 LESSON LXII.
Participles.—Ablative Absolute.

362. THE participle is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective.

363. A verb may have four participles, viz.: the *present* and *future* in the *active* voice, and the *perfect* and *future* in the *passive*.

364. The participles are formed as follows:

- 1) The present active in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings:

1.	2.	3.	4.
ans,	ens,	ens,	iens,

to the first root; as,

Amans (loving), *mōnens*, *rēgens*, *audiens*.

2) The future active, from the third root, by the addition of the ending *ūrūs* (*ǎ*, *ǔm*) (302); as, *Amātūrūs* (about to love), *mōnītūrūs*, *rectūrūs*, *audītūrūs*.

3) The perfect passive, from the third root, by the addition of the ending *ūs* (*ǎ*, *ǔm*) (302); as, *Amātūs* (loved), *mōnītūs*, *rectūs*, *audītūs*.

4) The future passive in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings :

1.	2.	3.	4.
andūs,	endūs,	endūs,	iendūs,

to the first root; as,

Amandūs (deserving to be loved), *mōnendūs*, *rēgendūs*, *audiendūs*.

365. The participle in *ns* answers to the English participle in *ing*. The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ed*, *en*, *t*, &c.

The participle in *dus* must be translated by the *present infinitive passive*, as used with a substantive. (A termination *to be desired*; a crime *to be abhorred*.)

The participle in *rus* must be translated by ‘*about to* (write);’ or, ‘*going to* (write).’

366. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence are put in the ablative (called *absolute*); e. g.,

Caesār, victīs hostībūs,	{	<p><i>Eng. Id.</i>, Caesar having conquered his enemies.</p> <p><i>Lat. Id.</i> Caesar his enemies being conquered.</p>
-----------------------------	---	---

367. The want of a participle for the perfect active is supplied by the *ablative absolute*, or by *quum* (*when*) with the *perfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. The *perfect* subjunctive must be used, if the other verb is in the *present* tense; e. g.,

Caesar having conquered } Caesar, quūm vīcissēt hostēs.
his enemies, } Caesar, victīs hostībūs.

368. VOCABULARY.

Aequitas, ātis, <i>equity, justice.</i>	Dēvincērē, devic, devict, <i>to conquer.</i>
Angustiae, arūm (<i>pl.</i>), <i>a narrow pass, defile.</i>	Exclāmārē, āv, āt, <i>to cry out, exclaim.</i>
Cānērē, cēcīn, cant, <i>to sing.</i>	Immergērē, immers, immers, <i>to plunge into, immerse.</i>
Compellērē, compūl, compuls, <i>to drive, compel.</i>	Lūdērē, lūs, lūs, <i>to play, to sport.</i>
Constituērē, constitu, constitūt, <i>to arrange, constitute.</i>	Mānērē, mans, mans, <i>to remain.</i>
Deprēhendērē, deprēhend, deprēhens, <i>to seize, catch.</i>	Quūm, <i>when.</i>
	Viōlārē, āv, āt, <i>to violate, to break.</i>

369. Exercises.

(a) 1. In via ludentem puērūm vidi. 2. In via ludentes deprēhendīmus. 3. Caesar fugientes hostes in angustias compūlit. 4. Fracto puēri brachio, Romae manēbit. 5. Violātis patriae legībūs, vita indignus est. 6. Puer, quum manus in aquam immersisset, exclamāvit. 7. Caesar, quum devicisset hostes, summa aequitāte res constituit.

(b) 1. Did you hear the nightingales singing in the grove? 2. I saw the fishes swimming on the surface (top) of the water.¹⁰ 3. Did you see the girls playing in the garden? 4. Have you not seen the boys playing in the street? 5. Caius, having broken his arm, remained at Rome. 6. The slave, having killed his

master, was condemned. 7. They say that the slave has been condemned to death. 8. You are said to have been accused of treason. 9. Having violated the laws of the state, we shall all be punished.

LESSON LXIII.

Gerunds and Supines.

370. THE *Gerund* is that part of the verb which corresponds to the participial substantive in *ing* in English.

371. The gerund is really a verbal substantive of the neuter gender, used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular.

REM.—The infinitive supplies the place of the nominative of the gerund, as that is sometimes used as the subject of a verb (184).

372. The genitive of the gerund ends, in the four conjugations, respectively in

1.	2.	3.	4.
andī,	endī,	endī,	iendī.

Amandī (of loving), *mōnendī*, *rēgendī*, *audiendī*.

373. The gerund is declined in the parts in use precisely like a neuter noun of the second declension; e. g.,

<i>Gen.</i>	Amandī,	<i>of loving.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Amandō,	<i>to or for loving.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Amandūm,	<i>loving.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Amandō,	<i>by loving.</i>

REM.—The gerund, being a part of the verb, of course governs the same case.

374. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The gerund is governed like a noun in the same case; e. g.,

Intēr lūdendūm.

(*During playing.*)

While they are playing.

375. The Latin verb has two *supines*; one in *ūm* and one in *ū*.

376. The supines are formed by adding the above endings to the third root; e. g.,

Amātūm (to love), mōnītūm, rectūm, audītūm.

Amātū (to be loved), mōnītū, rectū, audītū.

REM.—The supine in *ūm* is generally Englished by the present infinitive active, and that in *ū* by the present infinitive passive, though it may be translated by the active, if that gives better English. Both supines are really active; thus, *factūm* means *for doing*, and *factū* in doing.

377. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *ūm* follows verbs of motion, to express the purpose or object of that motion; e. g.,

Mittīt lēgātōs pācēm pētītūm.

He sends ambassadors *to sue for* peace.

378. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *ū* is used after adjectives signifying *good* or *bad*, *easy* or *difficult*, *agreeable* or *disagreeable*, &c.; e. g.,

Diffīcīlĕ est dictū.

It is difficult *to say*.

379. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many adjectives signifying *desire*, *knowledge*, *skill*, *participation*, *recollection*, *fulness*,

and the *like*, together with their contraries, govern the genitive; e. g.,

Cūpīdūs laudīs, *desirous of praise.*

380. VOCABULARY.

Aquārī, āt, *to bring water.*

Aquātūm (*sup.*), *to bring water.*

Auxīlium, ī, *aid, help.*

Cūpīdūs, ā, ūm, *desirous, desirous of.*

Jūcundūs, ā, ūm, *pleasant, delightful.*

Mīrābilīs, ē, *wonderful.*

Pābūlarī, āt, *to forage.*

Pābūlatūm (*sup.*), *to forage.*

Pētērē, iv (i), it, *to seek, ask, sue for.*

Rōgārē, av, āt, *to ask.*

Sumptūs, ūs, *expense.*

Sūpervacuūs, ā, ūm, *unnecessary*

Vēnarī, āt, *to hunt.*

Vēnatūm (*sup.*), *to hunt.*

Vitārē, av, āt, *to avoid, shun.*

381. Exercises.

(a) 1. Cupīdi sunt docendi. 2. Num puēri ludendo discunt? 3. Puer cupīdus est discendi. 4. Misērunt legātos pacem petītum. 5. Legātos ad Caesārem mittunt rogātum auxilium. 6. Jucundum est audītu. 7. Diffīcīle est factu. 8. Mittantur legāti pacem petītum. 9. Quantum tempōris ludendo amisērunt! 10. Multum temporis ludendo amittēmus.

(b) 1. He learns by teaching. 2. Have we not learned by teaching? 3. Is there not much pleasure in learning? 4. How much pleasure (there) is in learning! 5. There is much pleasure in teaching. 6. Do not boys learn while playing? 7. The boy has been sent *a hunting*. 8. Caesar has sent the fourth legion *to forage*. 9. Ambassadors have been sent *to ask* peace. 10. It is difficult *to say*. 11. It is wonderful *to tell*. 12. Has not Caesar sent the fourth legion *to bring water*?

LESSON LXIV.

Participle in dus.

382. INSTEAD of a gerund governing its case, we may use a *participle in dus* agreeing with a noun; e. g.,

(*Eng.*) The intention of writing a letter.

(*Lat.*) Consiliūm scribendi epistolām.

(or) Consiliūm scribendae epistolae.*

383. Thus, then, *epistolā scribendā* may be declined throughout.

Sing.

N. Epistolā scribendā, a letter to be written.

G. epistolae scribendae, of writing a letter.

D. epistolae scribendae, to or for writing a letter.

Acc. (ad) epistolam scribendam, to write a letter (or for writing a letter).

Abl. epistolā scribendā, by writing a letter.

Plur.

N. epistolae scribendae, letters to be written.

G. epistolārum scribendarum, of writing letters.

D. epistolis scribendis, to or for writing letters.

Acc. (ad) epistolas scribendas, to write letters (or for writing letters).

Abl. epistolis scribendis, by writing letters.

384. VOCABULARY.

Adjumentum, i, *aid, help.*

Arripere (iō), arripu, arrept, to
snatch, seize.

Athēnae, arum, *Athens, city of
Greece.*

Augere, aux, auct, to *increase.*

* The real meaning of 'consilium scribendae epistolae' is 'the design of (= about) a letter to be written.'

Āpīdiōz, ōrīs (*comp.*), *fonder*.
 Elēgantiā, ae, *elegance*.
 Emērē, ēm, *empt, to buy, purchase*.
 Exercērē, exercu, exercīt, *to practise, exercise*.
 Gērērē, gess, gest, *to carry on, to wage*.
 Hābērē, ū, īt, *to have, enjoy*.

Lēgērē, lēg, *lect, to read*.
 Obtīnērē, obtīnu, *obtinent, to obtain, acquire*.
 Occāsīō, ōnīs, *opportunity*.
 Pērītūs, ā, ūm, *skilful, skilled in*.
 Rēgērē, rex, *rect, to govern, rule*.
 Stūdiōsūs, ā, ūm, *very fond*.

385. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Balbus omnem occasiōnem exercendae virtūtis arripiēbat. 2. Multi cupidiōres sunt emendōrum librōrum quam legendōrum. 3. Caesar belli gerendi perītus fuit. 4. Omnis occasio exercendae virtūtis arripiātur. 5. Certum est, omnem occasiōnem exercendae virtūtis a Christiāno arripi. 6. Omnis dicendi elegancia augētur legendis oratorībūs et poētis. 7. Homo magna habet adjuncta ad obtinendam sapientiam.

(b) 1. The boy is very fond of writing letters. 2. He was very fond of hearing the orator. 3. Seize every opportunity of practising virtue. 4. The Romans were fond of waging war. 5. Ambassadors are sent to beg for peace. 6. Ambassadors will be sent to sue for peace. 7. The law will be broken. 8. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 9. It is certain, that the laws are broken by the wicked at Rome and at Athens. 10. Let your word be kept. 11. Let the state be ruled by the wise.

LESSON LXV.

First Conjugation.

386. VOCABULARY.*

Adeō, *so, in such a manner.*Cantāre, *āv, at, to sing.*Certāmēn, *inīs, contest.*Crābrō, *ōnīs, wasp.*Intēr, *between, during.*Intēr ambūlandūm, *while walking*Irrītāre, *āv, at, to trouble, irritate.*Ornāre, *āv, at, to adorn.*Rōbustūs, *ā, ūm, robust, strong.*Spōliāre, *āv, at, to rob of, despoil.*387. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Sapientis est supervacuos sumptus vitāre. 2. Crabrōnem ne irrītes (232). 3. Crabrōnem ne irritāte (347). 4. Irritasne crabrōnes? 5. Nonne eam legem ipse violābas? 6. Inter ambulandum cantābant. 7. Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut nemo eum in certāmīne superavērit. 8. Prata et agri pulcherrīmis floribus ornantur. 9. Oculisne me, judīces, privabītis? 10. Violātis patriae legībus (366), mea me laude spoliātis. 11. Num mea laude spoliābor?

(b) 1. It is the duty of a Christian⁷ to avoid unnecessary expense. 2. Did they not themselves violate those laws? 3. Let not the laws be violated by Christians. 4. We hope we shall never be accused. 5. Have you ever been accused? 6. Let your laws be kept. 7. Is it not certain that the laws are broken by the wicked? 8. Did they not condemn him to death? 9. Balbus is so strong that he has never been surpassed in a contest. 10. Have I not been deprived of my eyes?

* Preparatory to this exercise, the pupil is expected to review thoroughly the Paradigm of the First Conjugation. See 588.

LESSON LXVI.

Second Conjugation.

388. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many verbs which signify *to ask, demand, or teach*, together with *cēlārē* (to conceal), take two objects, one of a person and another of a thing; e. g.,

Caesār frūmentūm Aeduōs flāgītābāt.

Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.

389. VOCABULARY.*

Divitiācūs, ī, *Divitiacus, man's name.*

Impērārē, āv, āt, *to command, give commands.*

Jūbērē, juss, juss, *to direct, order.*

Mordērē, mōmord, mors, *to bite.*

Pārērē, ū, it, *to obey.*

Prōpensūs, ā, ūm, *inclined to.*

Sānārē, āv, āt, *to cure, reform.*

Tācērē, ū, it, *to be silent, to pass over in silence.*

390. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Hostes non timēmus. 2. Nonne respondēbis?
3. Docendo docēmur. 4. Ego multa tacui: multa sannāvi. 5. Ad docendum propensi sunt. 6. Pareat animus: non impēret 7. Caesar Divitiācum ad se vocāri jubet. 8. Te haec docēbo. 9. Puēros haec docēbant. 10. Puēri haec docti sunt. 11. Canis puērum momordit. 12. Nonne oves totondistis?

(b) 1. Do you not fear the enemy? 2. Do not fear the enemy. 3. Who taught the boy this? 4. Did you teach those boys this? 5. Who sheared this sheep? 6. Let no one shear my sheep. 7. Did the dog bite you? 8. I have been bitten by your dog. 9. We

* The pupil will, of course, review Paradigm. See 539.

have ourselves been taught by teaching. 10. Did you not laugh at your father?

LESSON LXVII.

Third Conjugation.

391. RULE OF SYNTAX.—After verbs of motion :

- 1) The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is put in the accusative without a preposition ; e. g.,

Rōmām vēnīrē, *to come to Rome.*

- 2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is put in the ablative without a preposition ; e. g.,

Rōmā vēnīrē, *to come from Rome.*

REM.—Before other names of places the preposition is generally expressed.

(Review Paradigm 590.)

392. VOCABULARY.

Agĕrĕ, ĕg, act, *to do, act.*

Committĕrĕ, mĭs, miss, *to engage.*

Cūrārĕ, av, āt, *to attend to, cause, &c.*

Dārĕ, dĕd, dāt, *to give.*

Equĕs, ĭtĭs, *horseman.*

Grātĭā, ae, *favor ; pl., thanks.*

Grātĭās āgĕrĕ, *to give thanks, to thank.*

Injūrĭā, ae, *injury, wrong done.*

Pons, tĭs, m., *bridge.*

Responsūm, ĭ, *answer, reply.*

Tĕgĕrĕ, tex, tect, *to cover, conceal.*

Unquām, *ever.*

393. Exercises.

(a) 1. Caium Athēnas mittat. 2. Servum Athēnas miserat. 3. Mihi gratias egistis. 4. Sicut vixi, ut

nemo unquam me ullius injuriae accusaverit. 5. Pontem in flumine faciendum curavit. 6. Equites proelium committunt. 7. Hoc responso dato, equites proelium committunt. 8. Certum est, Caesarem belli gerendi peritum fuisse. 9. Legatos ad eum miserunt. 10. Omnis dicendi elegantia augetur legendis oratoribus (382).

(b) 1. He has sent an ambassador to Rome. 2. Ambassadors will be sent to sue for (377) peace. 3. Ambassadors have been sent to sue for peace. 4. He has never been sent to Athens. 5. He is said to have been very desirous of (379) learning. 6. They say that you are desirous of engaging battle. 7. They are said to be skilful in waging war. 8. Having made this reply they engage battle. 9. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.

LESSON LXVIII.

Fourth Conjugation.

(Review Paradigm 591.)

394. VOCABULARY.

Anteā, <i>before.</i>	Praeceptum, i, <i>precept, instruction.</i>
Captivus, a, um, <i>captive.</i>	Praesens, tis, <i>present.</i>
Claudere, claus, claus, <i>to shut.</i>	Succurrere, curr, curs, <i>to aid,</i> <i>succor.</i>
Fundus, i, <i>estate, farm.</i>	Tarentum, i, <i>Tarentum, a town</i> <i>in Italy.</i>
Hannibal, alis, <i>Hannibal.</i>	Vetustus, a, um, <i>old, ancient.</i>
Intra (<i>prep. with accus.</i>), <i>within.</i>	
Italia, ae, <i>Italy.</i>	

395. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec ex captivis audiverat. 2. Venit sacerdos ut aram sanguine aspergat. 3. Miles Tarentum

vēnit. 4. Hunc audiēbant antea, nunc praesentē vident. 5. Fundo in tres partes divīso, Romam vēnit. 6. Veni ut mihi succurras. 7. Hannibal, Alpibus superātis, in Italiam venit. 8. Lex erat Romanōrum vetustissīma, ne quis intra urbem sepelirētur.

(b) 1. Have not the boys been sent to bring water? 2. They have come to shut the gates of the city. 3. Will you come to shut the gates? 4. Let them come to shut the gates. 5. Let all come to hear the instructions of the wise. 6. Let the instructions of the wise be always heard. 7. By hearing the instructions of the wise we shall learn wisdom. 8. He has buried his father. 9. Has he buried him within the city? 10. Do not bury him within the city.

LESSON LXIX.

Verbs with the Dative.—Indirect Object.

396. THE use of the *indirect object* has been already illustrated; but as some verbs in Latin are followed by the dative (the case of the indirect object) where we use no preposition, and should therefore be led by the English to put the accusative, it may be well to notice a few instances of this. The verbs of this class are principally such as signify:

*To command or obey, please or displease, favor or injure, serve or resist, together with to indulge, spare, pardon, envy, believe, persuade.**

* See 643

REM. 1.—Vácārě (*to have leisure*) and nūběřě (*to marry, used of females*), also take the dative.

REM. 2.—It will be readily perceived, in most cases, that the dative after the above verbs is really the *indirect* and not the *direct* object; thus, *impěrarě* (*to command*) means to give a command *to*; *plăcěrě* (*to please*) to give pleasure *to*; and so of most, if not all, of the others.

397. VOCABULARY.

Ars, artĭs, *art.*

Beatě, *happily.*

Crěděrě, crědĭd, crědĭt, *to believe, put confidence in.*

Cŭpĭdĭtas,ătĭs, *desire, passion.*

Făvěrě, făv, făut, *to favor.*

Ignoscerě, nŏv, nŏt, *to pardon.*

Indulgěrě, induls, indult, *to indulge.*

Inviděrě, vĭd, vĭs, *to envy.*

Nŏcěrě, nŏcu, nŏcĭt, *to hurt.*

Parcerě, pĕperc, parcĭt, *to spare.*

Persuăděrě, persuās, persuās, *to persuade.*

Rĕsĭstěrě, stĭt, stĭt, *to resist.*

Servĭrě, iv (i), ĭt, *to serve, be a slave to.*

Stŭděrě, u, *to study, strive for.*

Văcārě, av,ăt, *to have leisure for.*

398. Exercises.

(a) 1. Irae multos annos serviēras. 2. Regendis anĭmi cupiditatĭbus studeāmus. 3. Caesar legendo libro vacābit. 4. Christiāni est patriae suae legĭbus parēre. 5. Ignosce mihi. 6. Nemo tibi credet. 7. Imprŏbus patriae legĭbus non parēbit. 8. Num legĭbus parēbunt imprŏbi, violāta fide? 9. Discant Christiāni anĭmis suis imperāre. 10. Sapientia ars est bene beateque vivendi.

(b) 1. I would have favored Caius. 2. You would have resisted anger. 3. You (*pl.*) would have hurt nobody. 4. We would have indulged the desire. 5. I was hurting myself. 6. You were hurting me. 7. You had hurt Caius. 8. You had been-the-slave-of passion. 9. Do not be-the slave-of passion. 10. You were sparing the enemies. 11. *It is the duty of a Christian to envy nobody.* 12. Do not envy the good. 13.

It is pleasant to succor the miserable. 14. Nobody will believe the wicked. 15. Death spares nobody. 16. They had spared the gate of the city. 17. He spares himself in the winter. 18. He does not spare even himself. 19. You will never have persuaded me. 20. Let the Christian learn to command himself.

LESSON LXX.

Deponent Verbs.

399. A DEPONENT verb is one which has a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*.

400. *Deponent* verbs have all the four participles; e. g.,

- 1) Loquens, *speaking* ; 2) locūtus, *having spoken* ;
- 3) locutūrus, *about to speak* ; 4) loquendus, *to be spoken*.

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs do not have.

401. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The deponent verbs, *ūtōr*, *fruōr*, *fungōr*, *potiōr*, *vescōr*, *dignōr*, and their compounds, usually take the *ablative* ; e. g.,

Vōluptātē fruītūr, *he enjoys pleasure*.

REM.—The ablative after the above is not strictly the object, but the *ablative of means* ; thus, *to enjoy pleasure*, is *to be delighted with pleasure*.

402. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs of *reminding*, *remembering*, *forgetting*, and *pitying*, usually take the *genitive* of the object remembered, forgotten, &c. ; e. g.,

Rēmīniscōr bēnēficiī tuī, *I remember your kindness*.

REM.—Most of these verbs, except those signifying *to pity*, sometimes take the accusative instead of the genitive.

403. VOCABULARY.

Aliquandō, *some time or other.*

Bēnēficiūm, ī, *benefit.*

Flagitiūm, ī, *crime.*

Fungī, funct, *to discharge.*

Lōquī, lōcūt, *to speak.*

Mālē, *badly.*

Misērērī, misērīt, or misert, *to pity.*

Obliviscī, oblit, *to forget.*

Odiūm, ī, *hatred.*

Officiūm, ī, *duty.*

Post (*prep. with accus.*), *after.*

Pōtīrī, pōtit, *to get possession.*

Rēcordārī, āt, *to remember, to recall to mind.*

Sempiternūs, ā, ūm, *eternal.*

Utī, ūs, *to use.*

404. Exercises.

(a) 1. Christianōrum est miserēri paup̄erum. 2. Homo imprōbus aliquando cum dolōre flagitiōrum suorū recordabitur. 3. Multi beneficiis male utuntur. 4. Vincāmus odium, pacēque potiāmur. 5. Christiāni est injuriārum oblivisci. 6. Beātus est, qui omnībus vitae officiis fungitur. 7. Elegantiam loquendi legendis oratoribus et poētis auxērant.

(b) 1. Let the Christian discharge all the duties of life. 2. Let us use our horses. 3. The good after death will enjoy eternal life. 4. Will not the good after death enjoy eternal life? 5. Is the life that we now enjoy eternal? 6. Let boys learn to discharge all the duties of life. 7. Have you not spared the conquered?* 8. Spare (*pl.*) the conquered. 9. Let us spare the conquered. 10. We will resist anger. 11. Will you not resist anger? 12. Let Caius, who sold

* Participles as well as adjectives (117) are sometimes used substantively.

his country for gold, be condemned to death. 13. Let the wicked, who sold their country for gold, be accused of treason.

LESSON LXXI.

Irregular Verbs.

405. THE irregular verbs are those which deviate from the ordinary rules, not only in the formation of their roots, but also in the inflection of some of their tenses.

406. The irregular verb *possē* (to be able), compounded of *pōt* (*pōtis*, able) and *essē* (to be), is conjugated like the simple *essē*, except,

- 1) *T* before *s* becomes *s*; as, *possūm* (*potsūm*).
- 2) The *f* in the second root is dropped; as, *pōtu* (*potfu*).
- 3) In the *present infinitive* and *imperfect subjunctive* there is a contraction; as, *possē* (for *pōtessē*), *possēm* (for *pōtessēm*).

407. Paradigm.

Possē, to be able; 2d root, *pōtu*.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. *Possūm*, *pōtēs*, *pōtest*, *possūmūs*, *pōtestīs*, *possunt*.

Imp. *pōtērām*; *Fut.* *pōtērō*; *Perf.* *pōtu-ī*; *Pluperf.* *pōtu-ērām*;
Fut. Perf. *pōtu-ērō*.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. *possīm*; *Imp.* *possēm*; *Perf.* *pōtu-ērīm*; *Pluperf.* *pōtu-issēm*.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. *possē*; *Perf.* *pōtu-issē*.

PARTICIPLE.

Pōtens (used as an adjective, powerful).

408. The various forms of *possě* are often best translated by the auxiliaries, *can, could, &c.*; e. g.,

Egö făcěřě possŭm, *I can do* (am able to do).

REM.—When a past tense of *possě* is thus translated by *could*, any present infinitive depending upon it must be translated by the English perfect; e. g.,

Egö făcěřě pŏtuī, *I could have done.*

409. The irregular verb *vellě*, *to will, or be willing*, and its compounds, *nollě*, *to be unwilling* (from *nŏn* and *vellě*), and *mallě*, *to wish rather, to prefer* (from *măg* [*măgŭs*, more] and *vellě*), are conjugated as in the following:

410. Paradigms.

Vellě. 2d root, <i>vŏlu.</i>	Nollě. 2d root, <i>nŏlu.</i>	Mallě. 2d root, <i>mălu.</i>
INDICATIVE.		
PRESENT.		
Vŏlŏ, Vīs, Vult; Vŏlŭmŭs, Vultīs, Vŏlunt.	Nŏlŏ, Nonvīs, Nonvult; Nŏlŭmŭs, Nonvultīs, Nŏlunt.	Malŏ, Māvīs, Māvult; Mālŭmŭs, Māvultīs, Mālunt.
IMPERFECT.		
Vŏl-ĕbām, bās, &c.	Nŏl-ĕbām, bās, &c.	Māl-ĕbām, bās, &c.
FUTURE.		
Vŏl-ām.	Nŏl-ām.	Māl-ām.
PERFECT.		
Vŏlu-ī.	Nŏlu-ī.	Mălu-ī.
PLUPERFECT.		
Vŏlu-ĕřām.	Nŏlu-ĕřām.	Mălu-ĕřām.
FUTURE PERFECT.		
Vŏlu-ĕřŏ.	Nŏlu-ĕřŏ.	Mălu-ĕřŏ.

PARADIGMS—*continued.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRESENT.		
Věl-ím, ís, &c.	Nól-ím, ís, &c. }	Mál-ím, ís, &c.
IMPERFECT.		
Vell-ěm, ěs, &c.	Noll-ěm.	Mall-ěm.
PERFECT.		
Völu-ěřím.	Nölu-ěřím.	Málu-ěřím.
PLUPERFECT.		
Völu-issěm.	Nölu-issěm.	Málu-issěm.
IMPERATIVE.		
	Nól-í or ítĕ, Nól-ítě, ítótě.	
INFINITIVE.		
<i>Pres.</i> Vellě.	Nollě.	Mallě.
<i>Perf.</i> Völu-issě.	Nölu-issě.	Málu-issě.
PARTICIPLES.		
Völens.	Nölens.	

411. VOCABULARY.

Animāl, ālis, *animal.*

Corrigērě, correx, correct, *to correct, reform.*

Cör, cordís, *n., heart.*

Mallě, málu, *to prefer wish rather.*

Nollě, nölu, *to be unwilling.*

Nullüs, ā, ům (113, R.), *no, not any.*

Occidērě, occid, occís, *to kill.*

Possě, pötu, *to be able.*

Praetěrītüs, ā, ům, *past; praeteritā (neut. pl.), the past.*

Pröbüs, ā, ům, *honest, upright.*

Scipió, önís, *Scipio, a distinguished Roman.*

Sině, *without.*

Vellě, völu, *to wish.*

412. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Haec facěre possůmus. 2. Haec facěre potu isti. 3. Multum discěre vult. 4. Nolui hoc facěre

5. Praeterīta mutāre non possūmus. 6. Nullum anīmal quod sanguīnem habet, sine corde esse potest. 7. Discat ut possit docēre. 8. Num puēri regendae civitātis (382) perīti esse possunt? 9. Si vis beātus esse, anīmo impēra. 10. Probi semper vitam corrigēre volunt. 11. Scipio dicēbat, malle se unum civem servāre, quam mille hostes occidēre.

(b) 1. Do you wish to change the past? 2. We do not wish to change the past. 3. You (*pl.*) cannot change the past. 4. We cannot shun death. 5. Let us learn, that we may be able to teach others. 6. They wish to be happy. 7. We all wish to be happy. 8. Could you not have seen the king? 9. We might have learned much. 10. We were unwilling to accuse you. 11. Were you not unwilling to accuse the king?

LESSON LXXII.

Irregular Verbs, continued.

413. THE irregular verb, *ferrĕ*, *to bear*, drops *e* between two *r*'s, as *ferrĕ* for *ferĕrĕ*, and *i* in the endings of the second and third sing. act., and of the third sing. pass. It borrows its second and third roots from other verbs.

414. Paradigm.

Ferrĕ, *to bear*; 2d root, *tŭl*; 3d, *lāt*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Active.

Fĕr-ō, fer-s, fer-t, fĕr-īmūs,
fer-tīs, fĕr-unt.

Passive.

Fĕr-ōr, fer-rīs, fer-tŭr, fĕr-īmŭr,
fĕr-īmīnī, fĕr-untŭr.

PARADIGM—*continued.*

IMPERFECT.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>
Fēr-ēbām, bās, &c.		Fēr-ēbār, bārīs, &c.

FUTURE.

Fēr-ām, ēs, &c.		Fēr-ār, ērīs, &c.
-----------------	--	-------------------

PERFECT

Tūl-ī, istī, &c.		Lāt-ūs sūm, ēs, &c.
------------------	--	---------------------

PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-ērām, ās, &c.		Lāt-ūs ērām, &c.
-------------------	--	------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Tūl-ērō, &c.		Lāt-ūs ērō, &c.
--------------	--	-----------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Fēr-ām, ās, &c.		Fēr-ār, ārīs, &c.
-----------------	--	-------------------

IMPERFECT

Fer-rēm, rēs, &c.		Fer-rēr, rērīs, &c.
-------------------	--	---------------------

PERFECT.

Tūl-ērīm, &c.		Lāt-ūs sīm, &c.
---------------	--	-----------------

PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-issēm.		Lāt-ūs essēm, &c.
------------	--	-------------------

IMPERATIVE.

Fēr, <i>or</i> fertō, Fer-tō; Fer-tē, <i>or</i> fer-tōtē. Fēr-untō.		Fer-rē, <i>or</i> fer-tōr, Fer-tōr; Fēr-īmīnī, Fēr-untōr.
--	--	--

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> Fer-rē, <i>Perf.</i> Tūl-isse, <i>Fut.</i> Lāt-ūrūs essē.		Fer-rī, Lāt-ūs essē, Lāt-ūm irī.
--	--	--

PARADIGM—continued.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Active.</i>			<i>Passive.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i>	Fěr-ens,		<i>Perf.</i>	Lăt-ūs (ǎ, ům).
<i>Fut.</i>	Lăt-ūrūs (ǎ, ům).		<i>Fut.</i>	Fěr-endūs (ǎ, ům).

GERUND.

Fěr-endī, dō, dŭm, dō. |

SUPINE.

Lăt-ŭm. | Lăt-ŭ.

REM.—The compounds of *ferrĕ* are conjugated like the simple verb.

415. The irregular verb, *fiĕrĭ*, to become, be made, is used as the passive of *făcĕrĕ*, and, in the tenses for completed action, has the regular forms of the passive of that verb.

416. Paradigm.

Fiĕrĭ, to become, be made.

PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Fiŏ, fĭs, fĭt, &c.		Fĭ-ām, fĭ-as, fĭ-ăt, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Fĭ-ĕbām, ĕbās, &c. | Fĭ-ĕrĕm, ĕrĕs, &c.

FUTURE.

Fĭ-ām, ĕs, &c. |

PERFECT.

Fact-ūs sŭm, &c. | Fact-ūs sĭm, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Fact-ūs ĕrām, &c. | Fact-ūs ĕssĕm, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Fact-ūs ĕrŏ, &c. |

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fĭ, or fĭ-tŏ, Fĭ-tŏ.		<i>Plur.</i> Fĭtĕ, or fĭ-tŏtĕ, Fĭ-untŏ.
--------------------------------------	--	--

PARADIGM—*continued.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fiĕrĭ; *Perf.* Fact-ŭs essĕ; *Fut.* Fact-ŭm irĭ.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Fact-ŭs (ă, ŭm); *Fut.* Făciendŭs (ă, ŭm).

417. VOCABULARY.

Afferrĕ, attŭl, allăt, *to bring, to bring to.*

Auctŏr, ōrĭs, *author.*

Călămităș,ătis, *misfortune, calamity.*

Crĕbĕr, bră, brŭm, *frequent, numerous.*

Ferrĕ, tŭl, lăt, *to carry, bear, endure.*

Fiĕrĭ, fact, *to become, be made.*

Inferrĕ, intŭl, illăt, *to bring against, to wage.*

Itĕrŭm, *again.*

Rĕferrĕ, rĕtŭl, rĕlăt, *to bring back, to relate.*

Rŭmŏr, ōrĭs, *report, rumor.*

Tertĭŭs, ă, ŭm, *third.*

Utĭlităș,ătis, *profit, advantage.*

418. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Quid fers manu, mi fili? 2. Is labor utĭlis est qui auctŏri laudem fert, aliis utilitătĕm. 3. Tertio die auxilium tulĕrunt. 4. Crebri ad eum rumŏres afferebantur. 5. Dixit Gallos sibi bellum intulisse. 6. His responsis ad Caesărem relătis, itĕrum ad eum Caesar legătos mittit. 7. Brutus consul factus est.

(b) 1. He has been made king. 2. Do you wish to become king? (*No.*) 3. Many reports will be brought to you. 4. What reports have been brought to you? 5. Your father has become poor. 6. Shall you not bring us aid? 7. Do you not wish to carry aid to your brother? 8. Caesar waged many wars. 9. Caesar is said to have waged many wars. 10. He has endured many misfortunes. 11. Do you wish to wage war against your father? (*No.*) 12. We were unwilling to wage war against our country.

LESSON LXXIII.

Irregular Verbs, continued.

419. THE irregular verb, *īrĕ*, *to go*, is regular in the parts from the first root.

PARADIGM.

Irĕ, *to go*; 2d root, *īv*; 3d, *īt*.

PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Eō, īs, īt; imūs, itīs, eunt.		Eām, eās, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Ibām, ibās, &c.		Iřēm, irēs, &c.
-----------------	--	-----------------

FUTURE.

Ibō, ibīs, &c.		
----------------	--	--

PERFECT.

Iv-ī, iv-istī, &c.		Iv-ērīm, ēris, &c.
--------------------	--	--------------------

PLUPERFECT.

Iv-ērām, ērās, &c.		Iv-issēm, issēs, &c.
--------------------	--	----------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Iv-ērō, ēris, &c.		
-------------------	--	--

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> I, or itō,		<i>Plur.</i> Itě, or itōtě,
Itō.		Euntō.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Irĕ; *Perf.* Iv-issĕ; *Fut.* Itūrūs, essĕ.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Iens (*gen.* euntīs); *Fut.* Itūrūs, ā, ūm.

GERUND.

Eundī, dō, dūm, dō.		Itūm, itū.
---------------------	--	------------

SUPINE.

REM.—The compounds of *irē* are conjugated like the simple verb, but generally contract the perfect *ivī* into *īī*, and most of them want the supine.

420. *Edērē*, *to eat*, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of *essē*. These are as follows:

<i>Regular.</i>			<i>Irregular.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	Edō, &c.		Es, est, estis.
<i>Imperat.</i>	Edē, &c.		Es, estō, estē, estōtē.
<i>Subj. Imp.</i>	Edērēm, &c.		Essēm, essēs, &c.
<i>Infin.</i>	Edērē.		Essē.

421. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The words *dōmūs* and *rūs*, together with the genitives *hūmī*, *bellī*, and *mīlītiæ*, are construed like names of towns (see 227); e. g.,

Dōmūm rēdiit, he returned home.

422. VOCABULARY.

<i>Abirē, i, it, to go away, depart.</i>	<i>Irē, iv, it, to go.</i>
<i>Dōmī (gen. of dōmūs), at home.</i>	<i>Mīlītiæ (gen. of mīlītia), on service, in the field.</i>
<i>Edērē (essē), ēd, ēs, to eat.</i>	<i>Nēc—nēc, neither—nor.</i>
<i>Et—ēt, both—and.</i>	<i>Rēdirē, i, it, to return.</i>
<i>Evōlarē, ēv, āt, to fly away, to flee.</i>	<i>Rūs, rūris, field, country.</i>

423. Exercises.

(a) 1. Fracto puēri brachio, abit. 2. Fundo in tres partes divīso, redit Athenas. 3. Puēri venātum¹⁸ ivērunt. 4. Est (*edit*) ut vivat. 5. Nonne estis ut vivātis? 6. Abeat Romam. 7. Scriptis epistōlis, abiērunt. 8. Balbus, *quum* manus in aquam *immersisset*, abiit. 9. Caius rus ex urbe evolavērit. 10. Caius nondum rure rediit. 11. Et Caesar et Balbus Romam rediērunt. 12. Vēnit sacerdos, ut aram floribus cingēret.

(b) 1. Caesar has not yet returned to Rome. 2. The

boys have gone a hunting.¹¹ 3. Do you wish to go a hunting? 4. They say he has gone a hunting. 5. He says that he wishes to go a hunting. 6. Do you not eat to live? 7. He says that he eats to live. 8. Balbus, having crowned the boy's head with a garland, went away. 9. Caesar, having conquered his enemies, will return to Rome. 10. They all wish to return to Rome. 11. Do you wish to return home? 12. Balbus is at his own house. 13. He was with me both at home and on service. 14. You have lived many years in the country.

LESSON LXXIV.

Periphrastic Conjugations.

424. THERE are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in *rūs* and *dūs*, combined with the various tenses of the verb *essē*. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as *future*, or as one that is about to be done; e. g., *Scriptūrūs sūm*, *I am about to write*.

425. The second periphrastic conjugation expresses *duty* or *necessity*; e. g., *Virtūs cōlendā est*, *virtue must be cultivated*.

426. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The agent, or *person by whom*, is put in the *dative* with the *part. in dūs*; with other words it is generally governed in the *ablative* by *ā* or *āb*.

427. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many adjectives are followed by the *dative* of the object to which the quality

is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., Pax mihi grātissimā ērāt, *peace was very acceptable to me.*

428. VOCABULARY.

Bibĕrĕ, bĭb, bĭbĭt, *to drink.*

Dĕlĕrĕ, ĕv, ĕt, *to destroy.*

Ignārŭs, ā, ūm, *ignorant.*

Inŭtĭlĭs, ĕ, *useless, unfit for.*

Mārĭmŭs, ā, ūm, *marine, of the sea.*

Prŏpiŏr, ŭs (*comp.*), *nearer.*

Pŭtārĕ, av, āt, *to think, regard*

Simplex, ĭcĭs, *simple.*

Subvĕnĭrĕ, vĕn, vent, *to go to the assistance of, to aid.*

429. Exercises.

(a) 1. Tondendae sunt oves, non deglubendae. 2. Exercenda est virtus. 3. Nonnĕ claudendae sunt urbis portae? 4. Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est. 5. Puer Romam mittendus est. 6. Pauperĭbus qui ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt, subveniāmus. 7. Quid factŭri estis? 8. Simplex cibus puĕris utilissĭmus est. 9. Luna terrae propior est quam sol. 10. Aqua marĭna inutĭlis est bibendo. 11. Inutĭles sunt libri ignāro legendi.

(b) 1. They must be sent to Athens. 2. They must be sent into the country. 3. We must be taught by the wise. 4. The city must be destroyed. 5. The gates must be shut. 6. Must not virtue be learned? 7. Must not virtue be practised? 8. Every opportunity of practising virtue¹⁴ must be seized. 9. The poor must not be defrauded of even a single grain. 10. Has he not defrauded the poor? 11. Let not the poor be defrauded of a single grain. 12. Is not the moon nearer the earth than the sun?

LESSON LXXV.

Impersonal Verbs.

430. IMPERSONAL verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I, thou, he*). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun *it*; e. g.,

Oportět, *it behooves.*

Taedět mē, *it disgusts me* (I am disgusted with).

431. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Constăt, *it is known.*

Juvăt, *it delights.*

432. The impersonal verb *lícět*, *it is lawful, or is allowed*, denotes *permission*, and may be translated by *may* and *might*; e. g.,

Lícět, *may* (it is allowed).

Lícuīt, *might* (it was allowed).

Mihĭ ĭrĕ lícět, *I may go.*

Tĭbĭ ĭrĕ lícět, *You may go.*

Illĭ ĭrĕ lícět, *He may go.*

Nĕbĭs ĭrĕ lícět, *We may go.*

Vĕbĭs ĭrĕ lícět, *You may go.*

Illĭs ĭrĕ lícět, *They may go.*

Mihĭ ĭrĕ lícuīt, *I might have gone.*

Tĭbĭ ĭrĕ lícuīt, *You might have gone.*

REM. 1.—The dative in these examples is the indirect object after *lícět*.

REM. 2.—The present infinitive must be translated by the English perfect after *lícuīt, might*, as in the above examples. (See also 408, Rem.)

(*Eng.*) I may go. (*Lat. Id.*) It is allowed me to go.

(*Eng.*) I might have gone. (*Lat. Id.*) It was allowed me (*then*) to go.

433. The impersonal verb *oportet*, *it behooves*, denotes *duty* or *propriety*, and may be translated by *ought*; e. g.,

Mē irē oportet,	<i>I ought to go.</i>
Tē irē oportet, &c.	<i>You ought to go.</i>
Mē irē oportuit,	<i>I ought to have gone.</i>
Tē irē oportuit,	<i>You ought to have gone.</i>

REM. 1.—Observe that here, too, the present infinitive is to be translated by the perfect after a past tense.

REM. 2.—The infinitive after *oportet* takes a subject accusative.

434.	<i>English.</i>	<i>Latin Idiom.</i>
(a)	I repent of my folly,	It repents me of my folly.
	I am vexed at my folly,	It vexes me of my folly.
	I am ashamed of my folly,	It shames me of my folly.
	I pity the poor,	It pities me of the poor.
	I am weary of life,	It irks me of life.
(b)	Mē meae stultitiae poenitēt,	I repent of my folly.
	Mē meae stultitiae pigēt,	I am vexed at my folly.
	Mē meae stultitiae pudēt,	I am ashamed of my folly.
	Miserēt mē pauperū,	I pity the poor.
	Taedēt mē vitae,	I am weary of life.

435. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The *impersonal* verbs of feeling, *miserēt*, *poenitēt*, *pudēt*, *taedēt*, and *pigēt*, take the accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling. (See examples above.)

436. VOCABULARY.

Adesse, ādfu, *to be present.*

Amicitia, ae, *friendship.*

Constāt, *it is known, is an admitted fact.*

Diligens, entis, *diligent.*

Habitare, av, at, *to inhabit, dwell.*

Immortalis, ē, *immortal.*

Licet, *it is lawful, is permitted.*

Misĕrĕt, <i>one pities; tui mĕ misĕ-</i> <i>rĕt, I pity you.</i>	Rĕcipĕrĕ (iĕ), cĕp, cept, <i>to re-</i> <i>ceive.</i>
Oportĕt, <i>it behooves, one ought.</i>	Saepĕ, <i>often.</i>
Pigĕt, <i>one is grieved at; mĕ pigĕt,</i> <i>I am grieved.</i>	Sŏnŭs, ĩ, <i>sound, noise.</i>
Poenĭtĕt, <i>it repents, one repents.</i>	Tardŭs, ă, ŭm, <i>slow.</i>
Praestăt, <i>it is better.</i>	Vĕlox, ōcis, <i>swift.</i>

437. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Constat sonum luce tardiōrem esse. 2. Saepe facĕre praestat quam loqui. 3. Nonne licet Romae habitāre? 4. Nonne licuit Athĕnis habitāre? 5. Nunquam licet peccāre. 6. Num licet Christiānis gloriāe servĭre? 7. Puĕros oportet diligentes esse. 8. Amicitiam immortālem esse oportet. 9. Tui me misĕret; mei pigĕt. 10. Sapientia semper eo contenta est quod adest. 11. Ne multa loquĕre. 12. Miserĕre nostri. 13. Natŭra omnes propensi sumus ad discendum.

(b) 1. It is well known that light is swifter than sound. 2. Is it not well known that the moon is nearer the earth than the sun? 3. Is it not well known that sound is slower than light? 4. He repents of his folly. 5. I repented of my folly. 6. Ought not Christians to do good to *as many as possible*? 7. Ought not Balbus to have kept^m his word? 8. Ought not Caius to have been condemned to death? 9. I have received many letters from you. 10. The bird has flown away from my hands.

LESSON LXXVI.

Impersonal Periphrastic.

438. THE second periphrastic conjugation is often used impersonally; e. g.,

Mihĭ scribendŭm est,	<i>I must or should write.</i>
Tibĭ scribendŭm est,	<i>you must or should write.</i>
Illĭ scribendŭm est,	<i>he must or should write.</i>
Nŏbĭs scribendŭm est,	<i>we must or should write.</i>
Vŏbĭs scribendŭm est,	<i>you must or should write.</i>
Illĭs scribendŭm est,	<i>they must or should write.</i>

439. Here too the agent is put in the dative (see 426) when expressed. It is omitted:

1) When it means every body or people in general, though it may be translated by *we* or *you*; e. g.,

Edendŭm est, *we* or *you* (every body) *must eat.*

2) When the persons meant are not likely *to be mistaken.*

440. In the impersonal periphrastic construction, if the verb is one which governs a dative (396), its *agent* (the person by whom) must not be expressed; e. g.,

Crĕdendŭm est Caiŏ.

We must believe Caius (*not, Caius must believe*).

REM.—If, in any instance, it is necessary to express the agent, it must either be done by means of the ablative with *ā* or *āb*, or the form of the expression must be changed. The two datives would leave it doubtful *which* was the *agent*.

441. VOCABULARY.

Etiām, *even.*

Lāborārĕ, āv, āt, *to labor, to.*

Mĕtuĕrĕ, u, *to fear.*

Sĕnex, sĕnĭs, *an old man*; pl. *the aged.*

442. Exercises.

(a) 1. Mihi discendum est. 2. Etiam senĭbus discendum est. 3. Imprŏbis metuendum est. 4. Tibi evolandum est ex urbe. 5. Manendum est Romae. 6. Totam hiĕmem manendum est Carthagĭne. 7. Ambulandum est per urbem. 8. Laborandum est, ut discas. 9. Nonne laborandum est, ut discāmus? 10.

Num semper ludendum est? 11. Nonne resistendum est irae? 12. Num credendum est imprōbis? 13. Nonne resistendum est anīno? 14. Non omnes ad discendum propensi sunt. 15. Discendum est, ut possis docēre. 16. Edendum est, ut possīmus vivēre.

(b) 1. We must dwell *in the country*. 2. We must remain *at home*. 3. We must fly from the city (into) the country. 4. The unlearned must labor, that they may learn. 5. We must fight, that we may preserve our lives. 6. The girls must walk through the city. 7. True greatness of mind must be valued at-a-very-high-price. 8. We should spare the conquered. 9. We should resist anger. 10. Should we not resist anger? 11. We should obey the laws of our country. 12. We must not spare even Balbus. 13. We must pardon both Caius and Balbus. 14. We must not believe even Caesar himself. 15. Having written his letter, he will go a-hunting.

LESSON LXXVII.

Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Prepositions.

*443. THOSE verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive; e. g.,

Mihī crēditūr,	<i>I am believed.</i>
Tībī crēditūr,	<i>Thou art believed.</i>
Illī crēditūr,	<i>He is believed.</i>
Nōbīs crēditūr,	<i>We are believed.</i>
Vōbīs crēditūr,	<i>You are believed.</i>
Illīs crēditūr,	<i>They are believed.</i>

444. Prepositions, as we have already seen (200), show the relation of objects to each other; e. g., *in urbē hābitāt, he dwells in the city.*

445. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., *Ad, adversus, antē, apūd, circā or circūm, cīs or cītrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, infrā, intēr, intrā, juxtā, ōb, pēnēs, pēr, pōnē, post, praetēr, prōpē, proptēr, sēcundūm, sūprā, trans, ultrā, versus (rare).*

446. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., *A (āb or abs), absquē, cōrām, cūm, dē, ē or ex, pālām, prae, prō, sīnē, tēnūs.*

447. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The five prepositions, *clām, in, sūb, subtēr, and sūpēr*, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.

REM.—*In* and *sūb* govern the accusative in answer to *whither* (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to *where* (i. e. after verbs of rest). *Subtēr* generally takes the accusative. *Sūpēr* takes the accusative after verbs of motion and also when it signifies *upon*, and the ablative when it signifies *on* or *of* (as of a subject spoken or written about).

448. VOCABULARY.

<i>Cīs, on this side.</i>	<i>Intrā, within.</i>
<i>Coelūm, I, heaven, the heavens.</i>	<i>Paucūs, ā, ūm, few, little.</i>
<i>Cōrām, before, in the presence of.</i>	<i>Piētās, atīs, loyalty, faithfulness.</i>
<i>Ergā, towards.</i>	<i>Prae, before, in comparison with.</i>
<i>Firmūs, ā, ūm, firm, sure.</i>	<i>Sūprā, above.</i>
<i>Infrā, below.</i>	<i>Terrā, ae, the earth.</i>

449. Exercises.

(a) 1. *Vobis non creditur.* 2. *Bonis creditur.* 3. *Gloriae tuae invidētur.* 4. *Irae resistitur.* 5. *Pauci veniunt ad senectūtem.* 6. *Nulla est firma amicitia*

inter malos. 7. Piētas erga patriam conservanda est. 8. Galli cis Rhenum habitant. 9. Intra muros habitābat. 10. Coram popūlo loquētur. 11. Argentum prae auro contemnitur. 12. Caecus de coloribus judicāre non potest. 13. Supra nos coelum conspicimus; infra nos terram.

(b) 1. The good are always envied. 2. The wicked should never be believed. 3. The conquered must be spared. 4. We are envied. 5. They will be envied. 6. He was buried within the walls. 7. They wish to be buried on-this-side-of the Rhine. 8. Let us walk through the city. 9. They have returned from the city into the country. 10. Do you wish to go into the city? 11. My father will remain in the city the whole winter.

LESSON LXXVIII.

Conjunctions.

450. CONJUNCTIONS are merely *connectives*; as, pātēr et filiūs, *the father and son*. Certain combinations of these require some attention.

451. *Et* followed by another *et*; *tūm* or *quūm* followed by *tūm*, are *both—and*.

452. *Nōn solum—sed etiām*, *not only—but also*.

453. *Tām—quām*, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{so—as; as—as.} \\ \textit{as well—as.} \\ \textit{both—and.} \end{array} \right.$

454. *Etiām*, *even, also*; *etiām atquē etiām*, *again and again*; *quōquē*, *also, too* (follows the word it belongs to).

455. Aut, *or*; aut—aut, vĕl—vĕl, *either—or*.
Sĭvĕ—sĭvĕ, seu—seu, *either—or, whether—or*.
456. Nĕc—nĕc, nĕquĕ—nĕquĕ, *neither—nor*.
Vĕl, *or, sometimes even*; with superlatives, *very, extremely, possible*.
457. At, sĕd, autĕm, vĕrŭm, vĕrŏ, *but*.
Attĕmĕn, tĕmĕn, vĕruntĕmĕn, *yet, but, but yet*.
458. Atquĭ, *but, now* (as used in reasoning).
459. Nĕm, namquĕ, ĕnim, *for*.
Ergŏ, *therefore, then*.
Igĭtŭr, ĭdeŏ, *therefore*.
Itĕquĕ, *accordingly, and so, therefore*.
Quĕrĕ, *wherefore*.

460. VOCABULARY.

Amphĭbiŭm, ĭ, <i>amphibious animal</i> .	Nascĭ, nĕt, <i>to be born</i> .
Audax, ĕcis, <i>audacious, daring</i> .	Nĭmiŭs, ĕ, ŭm, <i>excessive, too much</i> .
Dĕterrĕrĕ, u, ĭt, <i>to deter</i> .	Pŭdŏr, ŏris, <i>shame, sense of shame</i> .
Inceptŭm, ĭ, <i>purpose, undertaking</i> .	Somnŭs, ĭ, <i>sleep</i> .
Impĕdirĕ, iv, ĭt, <i>to impede, hinder</i> .	

461. *Exercises*.

(a) 1. Et discet puer et docĕbit. 2. Et Romae vixi et Carthagĭne. 3. Lupus quum ovem tum canem mormordĕrat. 4. Ovem non solum totondit, sed etiam deglupsit. 5. Nec timĭdus est, nec audax. 6. Nimiŭs somnus neque anĭmo, neque corpŏri prodest. 7. Non deterreor ab incepto, sed pudŏre impediŏr. 8. Nihil labŏras; ideo nihil habes. 9. Nemo tam pauper vivit, quam natus est. 10. Amphibia et in aqua et in terra vivunt.

(b) 1. We shall go both to Rome and to Carthage. 2. Will you also accuse me? 3. Will they even con-

demn the king to death? [No.] 4. We must both learn and teach. 5. Do you not wish both to learn and to teach? 6. We might have condemned not only the father, but also the son. 7. He will either remain at Rome, or go to Athens. 8 Dogs as well as wolves sometimes bite sheep. 9. He sent his son to Rome, but was unwilling to go himself. 10. Caius has been accused of treason, but he will never be condemned. 11. He will not go a hunting, for he has buried his son.

LESSON LXXIX.

Subjunctive Mood with ūt, nē, and quō.

462. UT with subj. { 1. *in order that, that, so that.*
 2. *the infin. (expressing purpose).*
 3. *as, with infinitive.*
 4. *granting that, although.*
 5. *that, after to fear that not.*

463. When *ūt* introduces a *purpose*, the subjunctive may be rendered by *may, might*; when it introduces a *consequence* (as after *so, such*), it may be rendered by the *indicative* or *infinitive*.

464. Ut with the indicative is *as, when, since, after, how.*

465. NĒ with subj. { 1. *lest, that not.*
 2. *not with the infinitive.*
 3. *not with the imperative.*
 4. *after to fear that.*

466. Nē with the imperative or subjunctive used imperatively, is simply *not*; as, *nē scribās, or nē scribē*, do not write.

467. After verbs of fearing, *ūt* and *nē* appear to change meanings; *ūt*, *that—not*; *nē*, *that or lest*.

468. After verbs of fearing, the *subjunctive present* must generally be rendered by the *future*; as, *vērēōr ūt faciām*, I fear that I shall *not* do, *vērēōr nē faciām*, I fear that I shall do.

469. *Quō* with the subjunctive is used to express purpose in sentences containing a comparative degree; as, *mēdicō aliquid dandūm est, quō sīt studiōsiōr*, something should be given to the physician, that he may be the more attentive.

☞ For the use of tenses in the subjunctive, see 265 and 266.

470. VOCABULARY.

Cāvērē, cāv, caut, to take care,
be careful.

Cōgnītūs, ā, ūm, known.

Efficērē (iō), fēc, fect, to effect,
accomplish.

Fāmēs, is, hunger.

Incōgnītūs, ā, ūm, unknown.

Mēdicūs, i, physician.

Mōnērē, mōnu, mōnīt, to advise,
warn.

Multitūdō, inīs, multitude.

Nūmērārē, av, at, to number.

Quō, that, in order that.

Sātis (substantively), enough.

Stellā, ae, star.

Sustinērē, tīnu, tent, to sustain,
to endure.

Vērērī, vērit, to fear.

471. Exercises.

(a) 1. Multi alios laudant, ut ab aliis laudentur. 2. Stellārum tanta multitūdo est, ut numerārī non possint. 3. Mēdicis aliquid dandum est, quo sint studiōsiōres. 4. Cave ne incognīta pro cognītis habeas. 5. Ne tentes quod effīci non possit. 6. Vereor, ne labōres tuos augeam. 7. Vereor ne brevi tempōre fames in urbe sit. 8. Timeo ut labōres tantos sustineas. 9. Avārus semper verētur, ut satis habeat. 10. Verebamīni ut pax firma esset.

(b) 1. The cold is so great that the snow will not melt. 2. He praised us, in-order-that he might be praised by us. 3. The multitude of men was so great that it could not be numbered. 4. The multitude is so great that it cannot be numbered. 5. He has come to aid you. 6. They have gone to Rome to aid their father. 7. I sent him home, that he might not be bitten by the dog. 8. He warned his sons not to break the laws. 9. We fear we shall increase your labors. 10. They feared that he would not be acquitted.

LESSON LXXX.

Subjunctive with quōmīnūs, quīn, and other Conjunctions.

472. AFTER verbs of *hindering*, quōmīnūs is more common with the subjunctive than nē. It may generally be translated by *from*, the verb being turned into the participial substantive.

REM.—Quōmīnūs (quō and mīnūs) means literally, *by which the less*, or, *so that the less*; e. g.,

Caiō nihil obstat quōmīnūs sīt beātūs.

(*Nothing opposes Caius by which he should be the less happy.*)

Nothing prevents Caius from being happy.

473. Quīn with subj. {
1. *but* (as used after *negatives*).
 2. *the relative with not*.
 3. *as not with infinitive*.
 4. *that after doubt, deny in negative sentences*.
 5. *from or without with the participial substantive, after prevent, escape, &c.*

474. Quīn coincides very nearly with *but*; it is, however, generally better translated by some of the other forms given above; e. g.,

- 1) There is nobody, quīn pŭtĕt } *but thinks.*
who does not think.
- 2) No one is so mad, quīn pŭtĕt, *as not to think.*
- 3) I do not deny, quīn turpĕ sĭt, *that it is disgraceful.*
- 4) They never saw him, quīn rĭdĕrĕt, *without laughing.*

REM.—Quīn with the subjunctive is generally used after negative expressions and those which imply doubt.

475. The following conjunctions are used with the subjunctive; viz.,

Dŭm, mŏdŏ, dummŏdŏ, *provided, if only.*

Lĭcĕt, *although.*

O sĭ (*O if*), ŭtĭnĕm, *would that.*

Quamvĭs, *however much, however.*

Quĕsĭ, tanquĕm, *as if.*

REM.—Not after *provided, &c.*, is expressed by *nĕ*.

476. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs signifying *to abound*, or *be destitute of*, take the ablative; e. g., Nĕmŏ ĕlĭŏrŭm ŏpĕ cĕrĕrĕ pŏtest, *no one can be (do) without the assistance of others.*

477. VOCABULARY.

Dŭbitĕrĕ, av, at, *to doubt.*

Interdŭm, *sometimes.*

Obstĕrĕ, stĭt, stĕt, *to oppose, prevent.*

Prŏvĭdŭs, ĕ, ŭm, *prudent, cautious.*

Terrĕrĕ, terru, terrĭt, *to terrify.*

478. Exercises.

- (a) 1. Nihil impĕdit, quomĭnus id facĕre possĭmus.
2. Quid obstat, quomĭnus Caius sit beĕtus? 3. Non

me terrēbis, quomīnus illud faciam. 4. Sapiens nunquam dubitābit, quin immortalis sit animus. 5. Nemo est tam bonus ac providus, quin interdum peccet. 6. O si sapiens virtūtem colat! 7. Utīnam hoc verum sit. 8. Sic agis, quāsi me ames.

(b) 1. Nothing prevents you from being happy. 2. Nothing prevents him from doing this. 3. Does any thing prevent you from doing this? 4. We have never doubted that the soul is immortal. 5. Do you doubt that the soul is immortal? 6. There is no one who does not think (473, 2) that you were engaged in the battle. 7. He never saw the shepherd without laughing at him (474, 4). 8. Would that all citizens would observe the laws.

LESSON LXXXI.

Interrogative Sentences.

479. ALL interrogatives take the indicative when the question is put *directly*; as, *nūm crēdīs*, do you believe?

480. *Nūm* and *nē* are merely interrogative particles, and are not construed in direct questions.

481. All interrogatives take the subjunctive when the question is put *indirectly* or *doubtfully*, especially when it depends upon another verb.

482. Double questions take two different constructions, viz.:

- 1) The first clause is introduced by *nūm*, *ūtrūm*, or *nē*, and the second by *ān*.

- 2) The first clause has no interrogative word, and the second has *ñn* or *ně*.

483. VOCABULARY.

Enũmērārē, āv, at, <i>to enumerate, to count up.</i>	Misēr, ěrā, ěrũm, <i>unhappy, miserable.</i>
Ignis, is, <i>m., fire, heat.</i>	Mortālis, ě, <i>mortal.</i>
Immōbilis, ě, <i>immovable, fixed.</i>	Nescirē, iv, it, <i>to be ignorant, not to know.</i>
Lōcũplēs, ětis, <i>rich.</i>	Olim, <i>formerly.</i>
Majōr, ũs, ōris (<i>comp. of magnus</i>), <i>larger, greater.</i>	Quaestiō, ōnis, <i>question.</i>
Mĩnōr, ũs, ōris (<i>comp. of parvus</i>), <i>smaller.</i>	Rōtundũs, ā, ũm, <i>round.</i>
Mōbilis, ě, <i>movable.</i>	Undē, <i>whence.</i>

484. Exercises.

(a) 1. Estne aņimus immortālis? 2. Visne miser esse? 3. Quis enuměret artium multitudĩnem? 4. Nescio, unde sol ignem habeat. 5. Quid dicam nescio. 6. Olim quaestio erat, num terra rotunda esset. 7. Utrum major est sol, an minor, quam terra? 8. Num sol mobilis, an immobilis? 9. Sumusne immortāles, an mortāles?

(b) 1. Who has come? 2. I do not know who has come. 3. Do not all men wish to live? 4. Do you fear that the king will be conquered? 5. Do you not fear that we shall be condemned to death? 6. What did he say? 7. We do not know what he said. 8. Are they rich or poor? 9. You do not know whether we are rich or poor. 10. Whence does the moon derive (*haběre*) her light? 11. He does not know whence the moon derives her light. 12. Who knows whence the sun derives his light?

LESSON LXXXII.

Conditional Sentences.—*Subjunctive in Relative Clauses and with Quum.*

485. EVERY conditional sentence consists of two parts, *the condition* and *the consequent*; e. g.,

Sī quīd hābeāt, dābīt.

If he has any thing, he will give it.

REM.—Here *sī quīd hābeāt* is the *condition*, and *dābīt* the *consequence*.

486. Conditional sentences are of three kinds:

1) Those which assume the *condition* to be *true*;

e. g.,

Sī quīd hābēt, dāt.

If he has any thing, he gives it.

2) Those which represent the condition as *possible*; e. g.,

Sī quīd hābeāt, dābīt.

If he has any thing, he will give it.

3) Those which represent the condition as *impossible*; e. g.,

1. Sī quīd hābērēt, dārēt.

If he had any thing, he would give it.

2. Sī quīd hābuissēt, dēdissēt.

If he had had any thing, he would have given it.

487. It must be observed:

1) That *the condition* is expressed in the first of the above classes by the *indicative*, in the second by the *subjunctive present* or *perfect*, and in the third by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

- 2) That *the consequence* is expressed in the first two of these classes by the *indicative* (or sometimes by the *imperative*), and in the third by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

488. The relative clause takes the subjunctive :

- 1) When it expresses a *purpose* or *result* ; e. g.,

1. Lēgātōs mīserunt, quī dīcērent.

They sent ambassadors to say (*that they might say*).

2. Nēquē ēnīm tū īs ēs quī nesciās.

Nor indeed are you such an one as not to know (*who may not know*).

- 2) When it *defines* or *explains* some indefinite antecedent, whether affirmative or negative ; e. g.,

1. Sunt quī pūtent.

There are (some) who think, *or* some persons think.

2. Nēmō est, quī haud intēllīgāt.

There is no one who does not understand.

489. Quūm (cūm) takes the subjunctive when it introduces a *cause* or *reason*, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another ; e. g.,

Quae cūm itā sint.

Since these things (*lit.* which things) are so.

490. Quum, as an adverb of time (*when*), takes the indicative ; e. g.,

Itēr faciēbām quūm Balbūm vidēbām.

I was travelling *when* I saw Balbus.

The use of *quūm* with the *perfect* or *pluperfect subjunctive* to supply the place of a perfect active participle, has already been noticed (367).

491. VOCABULARY.

Consülĕrĕ, sŭlu, sult, <i>to consult,</i> <i>ask advice.</i>	Suädĕrĕ, suās, suās, <i>to advise.</i>
Nātiŏ, ōnĭs, <i>nation.</i>	Sustĭnĕrĕ, tĭnu, tent, <i>to sustain,</i> <i>withstand.</i>
Pertimescĕrĕ, tĭmu, <i>to fear</i> <i>greatly.</i>	Vulnĕrārĕ, āv, at, <i>to wound.</i>

492. Exercises.

(a) 1. Peccāvit, si id fecit. 2. Peccābit, si id faciat.
3. Peccārent, si id facĕrent. 4. Peccavissent, si id
fecissent. 5. Si vis beātus, impĕra anĭmo. 6. Si me
consŭlis, suadeo. 7. Patriam auro, si potuisset, vendi-
disset. 8. Sunt qui rideant. 9. Erant qui saltavissent.
10. Caesar equitātum, qui sustinĕret hostium impĕtum,
misit. 11. Nulla est enim natio quam pertimescāmus.

(b) 1. If he is alive (*lives*), he is now at Athens. 2.
If he remains at Athens, he will learn much. 3. If he
had gone to Rome, he would have been killed. 4.
They would have sold their country, if they could. 5.
If the king had been in the city, he would have par-
doned you. 6. There were some who were wounded.
7. Since we cannot remain at Rome, we will go to
Athens. 8. Caesar had sent two legions to attack
(make an attack upon) the enemy.

LESSON LXXXIII.

Participles.

493. PARTICIPLES assume an assertion, which may be
formally stated in a sentence whenever it is necessary
or convenient to do so; thus, *puĕr rĭdens*, may be vari-

ously translated, according to the connection; as, *the boy who laughs, the boy when he laughs, &c.*

494. Participles may sometimes be translated by a relative clause; e. g.,

1. Puēr rīdens $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{the boy who laughs.} \\ \textit{the boy who was laughing.} \end{array} \right.$
2. Puēr rīsūrūs, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{the boy who is going to laugh.} \\ \textit{the boy who will laugh.} \end{array} \right.$
3. Puēr āmātūs, *the boy who is (or was) loved.*
4. Puēr āmandūs, *the boy who ought to be loved.*

495. If no substantive is expressed, supply *man, men, he, she, or those, &c.*; e. g.,

1. Rīdentīs, *of him who laughs.*
2. Rīdentiūm, *of those who laugh.*

496. With a neuter plural participle, supply things e. g.,

- Praeterītūrā, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{things that will pass away.} \\ \textit{what will pass away.} \end{array} \right.$

REM.—Participles, being parts of verbs, of course govern the same cases.

497. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *when* or *while*; e. g.,

- Rīdens, *when (or while) he is (or was) laughing.*

REM.—In a sentence with *when* or *while*, we often omit the auxiliary verb; e. g.,

Rīdens, *when laughing.*

498. If the participle stands alone, *he, they, a man, men, or one, &c.*, must be supplied as the subject of the verb; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *when he (or one) is laughing.*
2. Rīdentēs, *when men (or they) are laughing.*

499. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *if*; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *if a man (he or one) laughs.*
2. Amātūs, *if a man (he or one) is loved.*

500. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *because, for, since*, or by participial substantives with *from* or *through*.

501. Dūbītans, {
1. *because I doubt.*
 2. *for I doubt.*
 3. *since I doubt.*
 4. *from doubting.*
 5. *through doubting.*

502. VOCABULARY.

Adulātōr, ōrīs, *flatterer.*

Disjungērē, junx, junct, *to separate.*

Dūrārē, āv, āt, *to last.*

Expellērē, pūl, puls, *to expel, banish.*

Fēlicitās, ātis, *happiness.*

Immensūs, ā, ūm, *immense.*

Innoxius, ā, ūm, *harmless.*

Intervallūm, ī, *distance, space.*

Perfīdiā, ae, *perfidy.*

Perpētuo, *for ever.*

Pervēnirē, vēm, vent, *to arrive at, reach.*

Piūs, ā, ūm, *pious.*

Plācēre, plācu, plācīt, *to please.*

Rēvertērē, vert, vers, *to return, turn back.*

Sātiārē, āv, āt, *to satisfy.*

Vidērī, vīs, *to seem.*

Vitūpērārē, āv, āt, *to reprove, criticise.*

503. Exercises.

(a) 1. Sapiens bona semper placitūra laudat. 2. Pii homīnes ad felicitātem perpetuo duratūram pervenient. 3. Adulātor aut laudat vituperanda, aut vituperat laudanda. 4. Leōnes satiāti (497) innoxii sunt. 5. Equum emptūrus (499) cave ne decipiāris. 6. Roma expulsus Carthagīne puēros docēbit. 7. Respondent

se perfidiam veritos (501) revertisse. 8. Stellae nobis parvae videntur, immenso intervallo a nobis disjunctae.

(b) 1. He who does wrong (494) is never happy. 2. Those who read this book will learn much. 3. There are some who think (488, 2) little of happiness which will not last. 4. The wise prize very highly the happiness which will last for ever. 5. They learned much while remaining at Rome (497). 6. If you love your parents (499), you will obey them. 7. We shall pardon him if condemned. 8. He fled from the city, because he had been accused of bribery (501).

LESSON LXXXIV.

Participles—continued.

504. PARTICIPLES may sometimes be translated by verbs with *though* or *although*; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *though he laughs.*
2. Amātūs, *though he is (was, &c.) loved.*

505. We often omit the auxiliary verb after *though*, e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *though laughing.*
2. Amātūs, *though loved.*

506. Participles may sometimes be translated by verbs or participial nouns, with *after*; e. g.,

1. Passūs (Act.), { 1. *after he has (had) suffered.*
2. *after suffering.*
2. Amātūs, { 1. *after he was (has been) loved.*
2. *after he had been loved.*
3. *after having been loved*

507. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs followed by the conjunction *and*; e. g.

1. Rīdens exclāmāt.

He laughs and exclaims (lit. laughing he exclaims).

2. Rīdens exclāmāvīt.

He laughed and exclaimed.

REM.—In the above examples the participle is construed by the same tense as the accompanying verb; sometimes, however, a different tense must be used; e. g.,

Correptūm lěpōrēm lăcěrăt.

He has seized the hare and is mangling it.

508. Participles with *nōn* may be translated by participial substantives depending upon the preposition *without*; e. g.,

1. Nōn rīdens, *without laughing.*

2. Nōn amātūs, { 1. *without being loved.*
2. *without loving him.*

3. Vītūpěrăt lībrōs nōn intellectōs.

He censures books (not understood) without understanding them.

509. Participles in the ablative absolute may be construed like participles in any other construction, the Latin substantive being translated either by the nominative or the objective; e. g.,

Tarquīniō rēgnantě, *when Tarquin was king.*

Tě sědentě, *as you were sitting.*

Captā Tŷrō, *after Tyre was taken.*

510. Participles may often be translated by substantives of kindred meaning; e. g.,

Lēgēs violātae, *the violation of the laws* (lit. *the violated laws*).

Vērē apprōpinquantē, *on the approach of spring*.

511. VOCABULARY.

Adventūs, ūs, *approach*.

Antē (*prep. with accus.*), *before*.

Apprōpinquārē, āv, āt, *to approach*.

Coenā, ae, *supper, feast*.

Cōgnoscērē, nōv, nīt, *to ascertain*.

Comprehendērē, hend, hens, *to arrest, comprehend*.

Intelligērē, lex, lect, *to understand*.

Pōnērē, pōsu, pōsīt, *to place*.

Prōfīcisēi, prōfect, *to set out, to start*.

Transīrē, i, īt, *to pass over*.

Vēr, vērīs, n., *spring*.

512. Exercises.

(a) 1. Ad coenam vocātus, nondum venit. 2. Multa transīmus ante oculos posīta. 3. Oculus, se non videns, alia videt. 4. Cum legionībus profectus celerīter adēro. 5. Comprehensum homīnem Romam ducēbant. 6. Non petens regnū accēpit. 7. Multi vitupērānt libros non intellectos. 8. His responsis datis, itērum ad eum Caesar legātos mittit. 9. Cognīto Caesāris adventu, legātos ad eum mittunt.

(b) 1. He will not be condemned, although he has been accused of treason. 2. Although invited to the feast, they will not come. 3. They were accused and (507) condemned. 4. He will receive the government without seeking it (508). 5. We censure these boys without knowing them. 6. They were put to death without having been condemned. 7. Having ascertained the approach of our army, the enemy fled. 8. Birds will return on the approach of spring.

LESSON LXXXV.

Derivation of Nouns.

513. WORDS may be formed in two ways; viz.,

- 1) By *derivation*, i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the roots of other words; e. g., *moerōr*, sadness, formed by the addition of *ōr* to *moer*, the root of *moerērě*, to be sad.
- 2) By *composition*, i. e., by the union of two or more words, or their roots; e. g., *běněvōlens*, benevolent, well-wishing, from *běně*, well, and *vōlens*, wishing.

514. Nouns may be derived from other nouns, and from adjectives and verbs.

515. The endings, *lūs*, *lā*, *lūm*, added to the root of nouns, with a connecting vowel (sometimes *ĩ* or *ō*, but generally *u*, which sometimes takes *c* before it), form *diminutives*; e. g., *hortūlūs* (hortus), a little garden.

516. The masculine endings, *ĩdēs* (or *īdēs*), *ādēs*, and *iādēs*, and the feminine *ās* and *īs*, added to the root of names of persons, form *patronymics* or *names of descent*; e. g., *Priāmĩdēs* (Priamus), a son or descendant of Priam; *Tantālīs* (Tantalus), daughter of Tantalus.

517. *Atūs*, *ītās*, and *ūrā*, added to the root of nouns, denote *office*, *rank*, or *body of men*; e. g., *consūlātūs* (consul), consulship; *cīvītās* (civis), state, body of citizens.

518. *Iūm*, added to the root of nouns, denotes the *state* or *condition* of the objects expressed by the primitive; sometimes an *assemblage* of those objects; e. g., *servitiūm* (servus), either servitude or domestics.

519. The endings, *ītās*, *iā*, *itiā*, *ītūdō*, and *tūs* (gen.

tūtis), added to the root of adjectives, form *abstract nouns*; e. g., *bōnītās* (bonus), goodness; *dīlīgentiā* (diligens), diligence; *multītūdō* (multus), multitude; *virtūs* (vir), virtue, manliness.

520. The endings, *ā* and *ō*, added to the first root of verbs, and *ōr* (fem. *riā*) to the third, denote the *agent* or *person who*; e. g., *scrībā* (scrībĕre), a scribe; *bībo* (bibĕre), a drunkard; *victōr* (vincĕre), a conqueror.

521. *Or* and *iŭm*, added to the first root, and *iō*, *ŭs*, and *ŭrā* to the third, denote the *action* or *state* expressed by the verb; e. g., *pāvōr* (pavĕre), fear; *gaudĭŭm* (gaudĕre), joy; *actiō* (agĕre, act), an action, &c.

522. *Idō* and *īgō*, added to the first root, denote the *abstract* of the primitive; e. g., *cŭpĕdō* (cupĕre), desire.

523. *Mĕn* and *mentŭm*, added to the first root, denote the *thing done*, *that by which it is done*, or *that which does*; e. g., *tĕgmĕn* (tegĕre), a covering; *flŭmĕn* (fluĕre), a stream, river.

524. *Ūm*, added to the third root, denotes the *action* of the verb, or the *means* or *result* of it; e. g., *tectŭm* (tegĕre), roof, covering; *scriptŭm* (scribĕre), a writing.

525. VOCABULARY.

Adjŭvārĕ, jŭv, jŭt, *to aid, help.*
 Adventŭs, ŭs (advenĭre), *approach, arrival.*
 Circumdārĕ, dĕd, dāt, *to surround.*
 Cĭvĭtās, ātis (cĭvis), *state.*
 Dīlīgentiā, ae (diligens), *diligence.*
 Fŭgārĕ, āv, āt, *to put to flight.*
 Hortŭlŭs, ī (hortus), *a little garden.*

Impĕrātōr, ōris (imperāre), *commander.*
 Multītūdō, ĩnis (multus), *multitude.*
 Nuntiārĕ, āv, āt, *to announce, report.*
 Pastōr, ōris (pascĕre), *shepherd.*
 Sĕnātŭs, ŭs (senex), *senate.*

526. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Hortūli nostri multos flores habent. 2. Imperātor quam maxīmas copias comparāvit. 3. Dili-gentia tua labōrem patris adjūvit. 4. Hic nuntius ad-ventum tuum nuntiavērat. 5. Cicerōnem magna po-pūli multitūdo circumdēdit. 6. Pastor fugāvit lupum qui ovem unam momordērat.

(b) 1. Have you seen the shepherd's dog? 2. We went to see the boy's little garden. 3. Let them not come into the senate. 4. He has announced the arrival of the king. 5. Did you not announce the arrival of the leaders? 6. Caesar said that he would put to flight the forces of the enemy. 7. The commander has sent messengers to Rome. 8. The leaders will collect as large forces as possible. 9. The laws of the state have been violated by the commander.

 LESSON LXXXVI.
Derivation of Adjectives.

527. ADJECTIVES may be derived from nouns and verbs.

528. The endings, *ālīs*, *ārīs*, *īcūs*, *īlīs*, and *iūs*, added to the root of nouns = *of*, *belonging to*, *related to*; e. g., *rēgālīs* (rex), regal; *pōpūlārīs* (populus), popular; *cīvī-līs* (civis), civil, &c.

529. *Aceūs*, *iciūs*, *eūs*, and *inūs*, denote the *material*, the first two sometimes *origin*, and the last two some-times *similarity*; e. g., *pātrīciūs* (pater), patrician; *au-reūs* (aurum), golden, &c.

530. *Osus* and *lentus* (often with connecting vowel *u*), denote *fulness, abundance*; e. g., *āquōsūs* (aqua), watery; *lūtūlentūs* (lutum), full of mud.

531. *Aeūs, ānūs* (*iānūs*), *iensīs*, and *īnūs*, added to the root of proper names of places, denote *native of, occupant of*; e. g., *Rōmānūs* (Roma), a Roman; *Athēniensīs* (Athenae), an Athenian, &c.

532. *Ariūs* (generally used substantively), denotes *occupation, sometimes pertaining to*; e. g., *consīliāriūs* (consilium), counselling, or a counsellor.

533. *Atūs, ītūs*, and *ūtūs* = *furnished with, &c.*; e. g., *aurātūs* (aurum), gilt; *turrītūs* (turris), turreted, &c.

534. *Stūs* = *being in, having in one's self*; e. g., *rōbustūs* (robur), robust.

535. Adjectives may be derived from verbs by the use of the following endings:

- 1) *Ax* = *having a propensity to perform the action of the verb*; e. g., *ēdax* (edēre), voracious.
- 2) *Bundūs* and *cundūs* = *the strengthened meaning of the present participle used adjectively*; e. g., *mīrābundūs* (mirāri), full of admiration, &c.
- 3) *Idūs* (and sometimes *uūs*) = *the quality indicated by the verb*; e. g., *algīdus* (algēre), cold.
- 4) *Ilīs* and *bīlīs* = *capable of being, easy to be*; e. g., *dōcīlīs* (docēre), easy to be taught, docile; *crēdībīlīs* (credēre), capable of being believed, credible.

536. VOCABULARY.

Anūlūs, ī, *a ring.*

Athēniensīs, ē (Athēnae), *Athenian.*

Carthāgīniensīs, ē (Carthāgo), *Carthaginian.*

Civīlīs, ē (civis), *civil.*

Fallax, ācis (fallēre), *false, deceptive.*

Fabūlōsūs, ā, ūm (fabūla), *fabulous.*

Gallīcūs, ā, ūm (Gallia), *Gallic*,
pertaining to Gaul.

Incrēdībīlīs, ě (in and credĕre),
incredible.

Narrārĕ, āv, āt, *to relate.*

Narrātiō, ōnīs (narrāre), *narra-*
tive, story.

Octō, *eight.*

Pōpŭlārīs, ě (popŭlus), *popular.*

Sōcrātēs, ĩs, *Socrates*, a celebra-
 ted Athenian philosopher

Spēcīōsŭs, ā, ūm (species), *spe-*
cious, plausible.

Vincīrĕ, vinx, vinct, *to bind.*

537. Exercises.

(a) 1. Haec narratio est fabulōsa. 2. Non sum tam imprūdens, ut verbis speciōsis decipiar. 3. Spe fallācī decepti estis; cavēte ne itĕrum decipiamīni. 4. Quis credat illud quod incredibīle est? 5. Caesar octo libris bellum Gallīcum, tribus civīle narrāvit. 6. Athenien- ses Socrātis damnāti (506) pedem ferro vinxērunt.

(b) 1. Many have been deceived by false hopes. 2. Let us not be deceived by false words. 3. These nar- ratives are incredible. 4. He has given his sister two gold rings. 5. The Romans waged many wars. 6. The Carthaginians were conquered by the Romans. 7. The Athenians condemned Socrates to death. 8. They cannot deceive the judge by specious words. 9. The senator wishes to be popular. 10. They are wag- ing a civil war.

LESSON LXXXVII.

Derivation of Verbs and Adverbs.

538. VERBS may be derived from nouns and adjec- tives, and from other verbs.

539. Verbs derived from nouns and adjectives are generally called *denominatives*

540. Transitive denominatives end in *ārĕ* (dep. *ārī*) or *īrĕ*; e. g., *cūrārĕ* (*cura*), to take care of; *fīnīrĕ* (*finis*), to finish.

541. Intransitive denominatives end in *ērĕ* or *scĕrĕ*; e. g., *flōrērĕ* (*flos*), to bloom; *mātūrescērĕ* (*maturus*), to become ripe.

REM.—The ending *scĕrĕ* is joined to the root by means of a connecting vowel; *e* is the connecting vowel in the above example.

542. Verbs derived from other verbs comprise four distinct classes, viz.: *frequentatives*, *inchoatives*, *desideratives*, and *diminutives*.

543. Frequentatives denote *repeated* or *continued* action, and are formed by the addition of *ārĕ* or *ītārĕ* to the third root, except in the first conjugation, where they add *ītārĕ* to the first root; e. g., *hābītārĕ* (*habĕre*), to inhabit; *vōlītārĕ* (*volāre*), to fly often, to flit.

544. Inchoatives denote the *beginning* or *increase* of an action, and are formed by the addition of *scĕrĕ* to the first root with a connecting vowel; e. g., *clārescērĕ* (*clārĕre*), to grow bright, or clear.

545. Desideratives denote a *desire* to do the action of the primitive, and are formed by adding *ūrĕrĕ* to the third root; e. g., *ēsūrĕrĕ* (*edĕre*), to desire to eat.

546. Diminutives denote a *feeble* action, and are formed by adding *illārĕ* to the first root; e. g., *cantillārĕ* (*cantāre*), to sing in a feeble voice.

547. Derivative adverbs generally take one of the following endings, viz.:

- 1) When derived from nouns, *tĭm*, *ītūs*; e. g., *grĕgātĭm* (*grex*), in flocks; *fundītūs* (*fundus*), from the foundation.
- 2) When derived from adjectives, *ĕ*, *ĕ*, *o*, *tĕr* (con-

necting vowel *i* except after *n*); e. g., *vērē* (verus), truly; *fācīlē* (facilis), easily; *cītō* (citus), quickly; *fortūtēr* (fortis), bravely.

- 3) When derived from verbs, *īm* added to the third root; e. g., *stātīm* (stare, stat), immediately.

548. VOCABULARY.

Cantārē, av, āt (canēre), <i>to sing.</i>	Occultārē, av, āt (occulēre), <i>to hide, conceal.</i>
Cūrārē, av, āt (cura), <i>to take care of.</i> [guard.	Prōvinciā, ae (pro and vincēre), <i>province.</i>
Custōdirē, iv, it (custos), <i>to</i>	Pugnārē, av, āt (pugna), <i>to fight.</i>
Finirē, iv, it (finis), <i>to finish.</i>	Saevirē, iv or i, it (saevus), <i>to rage, to be cruel.</i>
Flōrescērē (flōrērē), <i>to begin to bloom.</i>	Spectārē, av, āt (spēcērē), <i>to see, look at.</i>
Fortītēr (fortis), <i>bravely.</i>	Stātīm (stare), <i>immediately.</i>
Germāniā, ae, <i>Germany.</i>	Tectūm, ī (tegēre), <i>a covering, roof, house.</i>
Hābitārē, av, āt (habēre), <i>to inhabit, dwell.</i>	Vigilārē, av, āt (vigil), <i>to watch, remain awake.</i>
Lūdus, ī, <i>play, sport, pl. games.</i>	
Nuntiārē, av, āt (nuntius), <i>to announce, report.</i>	

549. Exercises.

(a) 1. Labōrem nostrum finivimus. 2. Canes tecta nostra custodivērunt. 3. Bellum saevit per Germaniam. 4. Dormivistīne, an vigilāsti? 5. Puellae in horto cantābant. 6. Corpōra nostra curaverāmus. 7. Puēri ludos spectavērunt. 8. Arbōres florescunt. 9. Hic ad summam gloriam florescēbat. 10. Decrevimus habitāre in provincia. 11. Consilia sua occultavērunt. 12. Si te vidērit, statim curret ad te.

(b) 1. Have they announced your arrival? 2. Who will announce the arrival of the king? 3. Caesar sent

very large forces to guard the city. 4. They have gone into the country to witness the games. 5. They have finished the war. 6. We wish to finish the work. 7. The enemy are said to have fought bravely. 8. The flowers are beginning to bloom in our garden. 9. Do you wish to live (dwell) in the city? 10. We wish to live in the country.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

Composition of Words.

550. PREPOSITIONS often enter into composition with other words, as prefixes.

REM.—Many prepositions undergo no change of form on entering into composition, and merely impart to the simple word their own force. These, of course, require no special notice; others, however, present some peculiarities.

- 1) A, āb, abs = *away from*; e. g., abstinĕrĕ (abs and tĕnĕrĕ), to abstain from. In substantives and adjectives, it denotes *privation*; e. g., āmens (ā and mens), without mind, mad.
- 2) Ad = *to* (*d* often assimilated before consonants, except *d, j, m,* and *v*); e. g., accĭpĕrĕ (ad and cĕpĕrĕ), to accept.
- 3) Cŏn (cŭm) = *with, together*, sometimes *completely* (*co* before *h* and *vowels*; *com* before *b, p,* and sometimes before a vowel; *n* assimilated before *l, m,* and *r*); e. g., condŭcĕrĕ (con and dŭcĕrĕ), to lead together, collect.
- 4) Dĕ = *from, down*; e. g., dĕdŭcĕrĕ (dĕ and dŭcĕrĕ), to deduce. In substantives and adjectives, *privation*; e. g., dĕmens (dĕ and mens), mad.
- 5) E, ex = *out of, thoroughly* (*e* before liquids and *b, d, g,* and *v, ef* before *f*); e. g., expugnāre (ex and pugnāre), to vanquish storm.
- 6) In = *into, on, against* (*im* before *b* and *p*; *i* before *gn*; *n* as similated before *l, m,* and *r*); e. g., incurrĕrĕ (in and currĕrĕ).

- to attack. In adjectives, *not*; e. g., *indignūs* (in and dignus), unworthy.
- 7) Ob = *against* (*b* assimilated before *c, f*, and usually *p*); e. g., *oppōnĕrĕ* (ob and ponĕrĕ), to place against, to oppose.
- 8) Prō = *for, forth* (*pro* before vowels); e. g., *prōpōnĕrĕ* (pro and ponĕrĕ), to set forth, propose.
- 9) Sūb = *under, from below, somewhat* (*b* assimilated before *c, f, g*, and sometimes *m, p*, and *r*; *sus* in a few words); e. g., *subjĕrĕ* (sub and jacĕrĕ), to throw under, to subject.

551. The inseparable prepositions, *amb*, around, about; *dīs* or *dī*, asunder; *rĕ* (*rĕd* before vowels), back, again, away; *sĕ*, without, apart from; and *vĕ*, not, often occur as prefixes in compound words; e. g., *ambĕrĕ* (amb and ire), to go round; *dispōnĕrĕ* (dis and ponĕrĕ), to put asunder, to distribute; *rĕdĕrĕ* (red and ire), to return; *sĕdūcĕrĕ* (se and ducĕrĕ), to lead apart; *vĕsānūs* (ve and sanus), not sane, insane.

552. Adverbs are sometimes used as prefixes; e. g., *bĕnĕvōlens* (bene and volens), benevolent; *mālĕvōlens* (male and volens), wishing ill, malevolent.

553. Certain vowel-changes often take place in forming compound words; thus, *a, e* and *ae* are often changed into *i* (*a* sometimes into *e*); e. g., *accĭpĕrĕ* (ad and capĕrĕ), *abstĭnĕrĕ* (abs and tenĕrĕ), *occĭdĕrĕ* (ob and caedĕrĕ).

REM. 1.—Having examined the prefixes, we pass to notice a few terminations of frequent occurrence in compound words.

REM. 2.—When the first part of a compound is a noun, the connecting vowel is generally short *i*, as in *āgrĭcōlā* (ager and colĕrĕ), a husbandman.

554. From *fācĕrĕ*, to do, are derived, (1) *fex*, agent; e. g., *artĭfex* (ars and facĕrĕ), an artist; (2) *fĭcĭūm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *artĭfĭcĭūm*, an art; (3) *fĭcūs*, he who does (*adjectively*); e. g., *bĕnĕfĭcūs*, beneficent.

555. From *căpěřě*, to take, are derived, (1) *ceps*, agent; e. g., *princeps* (primus and capěre), one who takes the first (place), a prince, a leader; (2) *cĭpiŭm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *princĭpiŭm*, a beginning.

556. From *dĭcěřě*, to speak, are derived, (1) *dex*, agent, one who speaks; e. g., *index*, an informer; (2) *dĭciŭm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *indĭciŭm*, a disclosure; (3) *dĭcŭs* (*adj.*), speaking; e. g., *mălēdĭcŭs*, slanderous.

557. From *căněřě*, to sing; *cĕn*, agent; e. g., *tŭbĭcĕn* (tuba and caněre), a trumpeter.

558. From *vellě*, to wish; *vŏlens* and *vŏtŭs* (*adj.*), wishing; e. g., *bĕnĕvŏlens* and *bĕnĕvŏlŭs* (bene and velle), benevolent.

559. From *ferrě* and *gěřěřě*, to bear; *fěr* and *gěr*, one who bears; e. g., *Lŭcĭfěr* (lux and ferre), Venus as morning star, the bearer of light; *armăgěr* (arma and gerěre), armor-bearer.

560. From *cŏlěřě*, to cultivate; *cŏlă*, one who cultivates, or dwells in; e. g., *ăgrĭcŏlă* (ager and colěre), a field-tiller, a husbandman.

561. VOCABULARY.

Addŭcěřě, dux, duct (ad and ducěre), to bring to.

Attingěřě, tĭg, tact (ad and tangěre), to reach, attain.

Conděřě, dĭd, dĭt (con and dare), to found.

Convĕnĭřě, vĕn, vent (con and venĭre), to assemble, convene.

Expŭgnăřě, ăv, ăt (ex and pugnăre), to take by storm.

Inĕrtŭs, ă, ŭm (in and certus), uncertain.

Inĕŏlă, ae, m. & f. (in and cŏlěre), an inhabitant.

Invăděřě, văs, văs (in and văděre), to go against, invade.

Ităliă, ae, Italy.

Obsĕs, ĭdĭs, m. & f., hostage.

Occĭděřě, cĭd, căs (ob and căděre), to fall, set.

Occidĕrĕ, cĭd, cĭs (ob and cae- dĕre), <i>to kill.</i>		Princeps, ĭpĭs (primus and capĕre), <i>the first, a leader,</i>
Philŏsŏphŭs, ĭ, <i>philosopher.</i>		<i>chief.</i>
Possidĕrĕ, ĕd, ess, <i>to possess.</i>		Vĕrŭm, ĭ, <i>truth.</i>

562. *Exercises.*

(a) 1. Multi philosophi verum non attigĕrunt. 2. Rex portas urbis clausit hostĭbus invadentĭbus. 3. Has terras possidĕmus; illas expugnabĭmus. 4. Galli Romam expugnavĕrunt. 5. Sol post montes illos in mare occĭdit. 6. Hic unus miles duos aut tres occĭdit. 7. Incŏlae ad eum legĕtos misĕrunt. 8. Caesar omnem senĕtum ad se convenĭre, principumque libĕros obsĭdes ad se addŭci jussit. 9. Incertum est quo tempĕre Dido Carthagĭnem condidĕrit.

(b) 1. The commander will collect large forces and invade Italy. 2. After having waged war for many years, they took the city by storm. 3. Caesar had ordered all the inhabitants to assemble in his presence. 4. Let us put the invading enemy to flight. 5. Romulus is said to have founded Rome. 6. It is uncertain at what time Carthage was founded. 7. I do not know at what time he returned home. 8. They say that Caius was killed in the first battle.



PARADIGMS.

Nouns.—Five Declensions.

563 ENDINGS of the Genitive Singular.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	ī,	īs,	ūs	ēī.*

REM.—Some Greek nouns are exceptions.

564. Gender in Latin is,

- 1) Natural, when determined by sex, as in English ; as, *hōmō* a man, *masc.* ; *mūliēr*, a woman, *fem.*
- 2) *Grammatical*, when not determined by sex ; as, *sermō*, a discourse, *masc.* ; *laurūs*, a laurel, *fem.*

565. Natural Gender.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Common.
Names of males.	Names of females.	Names applicable to both sexes.

566. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined partly by their signification, but principally by their endings.

567. Grammatical Gender, when not determined by nom. ending.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Most names of rivers, winds, and months.	Most names of countries, towns, islands, and trees.	Indeclinable nouns and clauses used as nouns.

REM.—Grammatical gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

568. First Declension.

1. Characteristic *ae*.
2. Nominative endings : Latin *a* ; Greek *e*, *as*, and *es*.
3. Grammatical gender : *a* and *e*, *fem.* ; *as* and *es*, *masc.*

REM.—Cases coming under previous rules (565 and 567) are, of course, excepted.

* In this ending *e* is long, except in *spēi*, *fīdēi*, and *rēi*.

4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	ă,	ae,	ae,	ăm,	ă,	ă.
<i>Plur.</i>	ae,	ărŭm,	is,	ăs,	ae,	is.

REM.—The declension of Greek nouns presents some exceptions

5. Paradigms.

1. *Mūsă, a muse.*

	Sing.	Plur.
N.	Mūs-ă,	Mūs-ae.
G.	Mūs-ae,	Mūs-ărŭm.
D.	Mūs-ae,	Mūs-is.
A.	Mūs-ăm,	Mūs-ăs.
V.	Mūs-ă,	Mūs-ae.
A.	Mūs-ă,	Mūs-is.

2. *Epitōme, an abridgment.*

	Sing.	Plur.
N.	Epitōm-ē,	Epitōm-ae.
G.	Epitōm-ēs,	Epitōm-ărŭm.
D.	Epitōm-ae,	Epitōm-is.
A.	Epitōm-ēn,	Epitōm-ăs.
V.	Epitōm-ē,	Epitōm-ae.
A.	Epitōm-ē,	Epitōm-is.

3. *Aenēas (a man's name).*

N.	Aenē-ăs.
G.	Aenē-ae.
D.	Aenē-ae.
A.	Aenē-ăm (ăn).
V.	Aenē-ă.
A.	Aenē-ă.

4. *Anchisēs (a man's name).*

N.	Anchis-ēs.
G.	Anchis-ae.
D.	Anchis-ae.
A.	Anchis-ēn.
V.	Anchis-ē (ă).
A.	Anchis-ē (ă).

569. *Second Declension.*1. Characteristic *ī*.

2. Nominative endings: Latin, *er, ir, us, um*; Greek, *os* and *on*.

3. Grammatical gender: *um* and *on*, neut.; the rest masculine, except,

1) *Alvŭs, dŏmŭs, hŭmŭs, and vannŭs, which are feminine; pĕlăgŭs and vĭrŭs, neuter; and vulgŭs, generally neuter, but sometimes masculine.*

2) Such as come under previous rules.

4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	Nom. end.	ī,	ō,	ŭm,	ě (or like nom.),	ō,
<i>Plur.</i>	ī (<i>neut. ă</i>),	ōrŭm,	is,	ōs (<i>neut. ă</i>),	ī (<i>neut. ă</i>),	is.

REM.—A few Greek nouns are exceptions.

5. Paradigms.

Servūs, <i>slave.</i>	Rēgnūm, <i>king- dom.</i>	Gěněr, <i>son-in- law.</i>	Agěr, <i>field.</i>
-----------------------	-------------------------------	--------------------------------	---------------------

SINGULAR.

Serv-ūs.	Rēgn-ūm.	Gěněr.	Agěr.
Serv-ī.	Rēgn-ī.	Gěněr-ī.	Agr-ī.
Serv-ō.	Rēgn-ō.	Gěněr-ō.	Agr-ō.
Serv-ūm.	Rēgn-ūm.	Gěněr-ūm.	Agr-ūm.
Serv-ě.	Rēgn-ūm.	Gěněr.	Agěr.
Serv-ō.	Rēgn-ō.	Gěněr-ō.	Agr-ō.

PLURAL.

Serv-ī.	Rēgn-ā.	Gěněr-ī.	Agr-ī.
Serv-ōrūm.	Rēgn-ōrūm.	Gěněr-ōrūm.	Agr-ōrūm.
Serv-īs.	Rēgn-īs.	Gěněr-īs.	Agr-īs.
Serv-ōs.	Rēgn-ā.	Gěněr-ōs.	Agr-ōs.
Serv-ī.	Rēgn-ā.	Gěněr-ī.	Agr-ī.
Serv-īs.	Rēgn-īs.	Gěněr-īs.	Agr-īs.

REM.—VĪr, *a man*, is declined like *gěněr*.

6. Paradigms of Greek nouns.

1. Iliōn, <i>n. (name of a city).</i>	2. Dēlōs, <i>f. (name of an island).</i>
N. Ili-ōn.	N. Dēl-ōs.
G. Ili-ī.	G. Dēl-ī.
D. Ili-ō.	D. Dēl-ō.
A. Ili-ōn.	A. Dēl-ōn.
V. Ili-ōn.	V. Dēl-ě.
A. Ili-ō.	A. Dēl-ō.

570. *Third Declension.*1. Characteristic *īs*.2. Nominative endings: *a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x*.

3 Table of gender in the third declension.

Masculine.	[Feminine.	Neuter.
<i>ei, or, os, es increasing in gen. and o, except do, go, and io.</i>	<i>do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, s impure, es not increasing in gen. and x.</i>	<i>a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us.</i>

For exceptions, see 579.

4. Classification of nouns of the third declension, according to the formation of root from nominative ending.

Class I.]	Class II.	Class III.	Class IV.
Root like Nom.	Root adds a letter.	Root drops nom. ending.	Root changes nom. ending.

5. Masculine and feminine case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	..	īs,	ī,	ěm, (īm),	..	ě (ī),
<i>Plur.</i>	ēs,	ům (iům),	ībūs,	ēs,	ēs,	ībūs.

REM. 1.—The inclosed endings *īm* and *ī* belong only to a few words.

REM. 2.—The ending *iům* of the genitive plural occurs in the following classes of nouns; viz.,

- 1) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*; as, *mārē*, *māriům*; *ānīmāl*, *ānīmāliům*.
- 2) Nouns in *is* and *es* of Class III.; as, *hostīs*, *hostiům*; *nūbēs*, *nūbiům*.
- 3) All monosyllables in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant; as, *urbs*, *urbiům*; *arx*, *arciům*.
- 4) Nouns in *ns* and *rs* (though in these *ům* is sometimes used); as, *cliens*, *clientiům*; *cohors*, *cohortiům*.

6. Neuter case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Ab.
<i>Sing.</i>	..	īs,	ī,	ě (ī),
<i>Plur.</i>	ā (iā),	ům (iům),	ībūs,	ā (iā),	ā (iā),	ībūs.

REM.—The inclosed endings belong to neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.

571. CLASS I. comprises nouns in *c*,* *l*, *n*, *r*, *t*, and *y*. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel-changes:

- 1) Nouns in *tēr* and *bēr* generally drop *e* in the root: as, *pātēr*, a father; root, *patr*.
- 2) Nouns in *ěn* generally change *ě* into *ī* in the root; as, *flūměn*, a river; root, *flūmīn*.
- 3) Nouns in *ūt* change *ū* into *ī* in the root; as, *cāpūt*, a head; root, *cāpī*.

REM.—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed; this is the case in most nouns in *āl* and *ōr*, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

572. CLASS II. comprises nouns of the third declension in *a*, *o*, and a few in *i*. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

- 1) Nouns in *a*, and a few in *i*, add *t*; as, *poēmā*, a poem; root, *poēmāt*: *hydrōmělī*, mead; root, *hydrōmělīt*.
- 2) Nouns in *o* add *n*; as, *leō*, a lion; root, *leōn*.

REM. 1.—*O* is long in the root.

REM. 2.—Nouns in *do* and *go* change *o* into *ī*, before *n* in the root; as, *virgo*, a virgin; root, *virgīn*.

* There are only two nouns of this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

573. CLASS III. comprises nouns of the third declension in *bs*, *ms*, *p*, *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *is*, *ys*, *e*, a few in *i*,* and a few in *es*. They form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

- 1) Nouns in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, and *ys*, drop *s*; as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*; *hiems*, winter; root, *hiēm*.
- 2) Nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) drop the *s* in *x*; as, *vox* (*cs*), a voice; root, *vōc*; *rex* (*gs*), a king; root, *rēg*.
- 3) Nouns in *is*, *e*, and a few in *es*, drop those endings; as, *hostis*, an enemy; root, *host*: *nūbēs*, a cloud; root, *nūb*: *mārē*, a sea; root, *mār*.

574. CLASS IV. comprises nouns of the third declension in *as*, *os*, *us*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*. These form the root by changing *s* into *r*, *t*, or *d*.

- 1) Nouns in *as*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*, generally change *s* into *t*; as, *piētās*, piety; root, *piētāt*: *mons*, a mountain; root, *mont*: *ābiēs*, a fir-tree; root, *ābiēt*: *mīlēs*, a soldier; root, *mīlīt*. (See REM. 2, below.)

REM. 1.—Masculines in *as*, of Greek origin, insert *n* before *t* in the root; as, *ēlēphās*, an elephant; root, *ēlēphant*.

REM. 2.—Many nouns in *es* change *e* into *i*, before *t*, in the root; as, *mīlēs*; root, *mīlīt*.

- 2) Nouns in *os* and *us* generally change *s* into *r* or *t*; as, *flōs*, a flower; root, *flōr*: *sācerdōs*, a priest; root, *sācerdōt*: *virtūs*, virtue; root, *virtūt*: *gēnūs*, a kind; root, *gēnēr*: *tempūs*, time; root, *tempōr*.

REM.—Most nouns in *us* change *s* into *r*, and *u* of the nominative becomes *ē* or *ō* in the root, as in these examples.

575. Paradigms.

Mūliēr, <i>f.</i> , a woman.		Virgō, <i>f.</i> , a virgin.	
(root, same as nom. [126].)		(root, <i>virgīn</i> [131, 2. REM. 2].)	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Mūliēr,	Mūliēr-ēs.	N. Virgō,	Virgīn-ēs.
G. Mūliēr-īs,	Mūliēr-ūm.	G. Virgīn-īs,	Virgīn-ūm.
D. Mūliēr-ī,	Mūliēr-ībūs.	D. Virgīn-ī,	Virgīn-ībūs.
A. Mūliēr-ēm,	Mūliēr-ēs.	A. Virgīn-ēm,	Virgīn-ēs.
V. Mūliēr,	Mūliēr-ēs.	V. Virgō,	Virgīn-ēs.
A. Mūliēr-ē,	Mūliēr-ībūs.	A. Virgīn-ē,	Virgīn-ībūs.

* Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin: most of these are indeclinable; a few form the root by dropping *i*, and a few by adding *t* (572, 1).

Rex (gs), *m.*, a king.(root, *rĕg* [134, 2].)

Singular.	Plural
N. Rex,	Rĕg-ĕs.
G. Rĕg-ĭs,	Rĕg-ĭm.
D. Rĕg-ĭ,	Rĕg-ĭbŭs.
A. Rĕg-ĕm,	Rĕg-ĕs.
V. Rĕx,	Rĕg-ĕs.
A. Rĕg-ĕ,	Rĕg-ĭbŭs.

Corpŭs, *n.*, a body.(root, *corpŏr* [137, 2].)

Singular.	Plural.
N. Corpŭs,	Corpŏr-ĕ.
G. Corpŏr-ĭs,	Corpŏr-ĭm.
D. Corpŏr-ĭ,	Corpŏr-ĭbŭs.
A. Corpŭs,	Corpŏr-ĕ.
V. Corpŭs,	Corpŏr-ĕ.
A. Corpŏr-ĕ,	Corpŏr-ĭbŭs.

GREEK NOUNS.

Pĕrĭclĕs (*a man's name*).

N. Pĕrĭcl-ĕs.
G. Pĕrĭcl-ĭs.
D. Pĕrĭcl-ĭ.
A. Pĕrĭcl-ĕm (eĕ).
V. Pĕrĭcl-ĕs (ĕ).
A. Pĕrĭcl-ĕ.

Hĕrŏs, *a hero*.

Singular.	Plural.
N. Hĕrŏ-s,	Hĕrŏ-ĕs.
G. Hĕrŏ-ĭs,	Hĕrŏ-ĭm.
D. Hĕrŏ-ĭ,	Hĕrŏ-ĭbŭs.
A. Hĕrŏ-ĕm (ĕ),	Hĕrŏ-ĕs (ĕs).
V. Hĕrŏ-s,	Hĕrŏ-ĕs.
A. Hĕrŏ-ĕ,	Hĕrŏ-ĭbŭs.

576. *Fourth Declension.*

1. Characteristic *ŭs*.
2. Nominative endings: *us* and *u*.
3. Grammatical Gender: *u*, neuter; *us*, masculine; except

Acŭs, a needle; *dŏmŭs*, a house; *mĕnŭs*, a hand; *ĭdŭs*, the idea
portĭcŭs, a gallery; *trĭbŭs*, a tribe; which are feminine.

4. Masculine and feminine case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	ŭs,	ŭs,	ŭĭ,	ŭm,	ŭs,	ŭ.
<i>Plur.</i>	ŭs,	ŭŭm,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs*),	ŭs,	ŭs,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs*).

5. Neuter case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	ŭ,	ŭs,	ŭ,	ŭ,	ŭ,	ŭ.
<i>Plur.</i>	ŭĕ,	ŭŭm,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs*),	ŭĕ,	ŭĕ,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs*).

* This ending is used only in a few words.

6. Paradigms.

Fructūs, <i>m.</i> , <i>fruit.</i>		Cornū, <i>n.</i> , <i>a horn.</i>	
(root, <i>fruct.</i>)		(root, <i>corn.</i>)	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūs.	N. Corn-ū,	Corn-uā.
G. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-uūm.	G. Corn-ūs,	Corn-uūm.
D. Fruct-uī,	Fruct-ībūs.	D. Corn-ū,	Corn-ībūs.
A. Fruct-ūm,	Fruct-ūs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-uā.
V. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-ūs.	V. Corn-ū,	Corn-uā.
A. Fruct-ū,	Fruct-ībūs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-ībūs.

577. *Fifth Declension.*1. Characteristic *ēī*.*2. Nominative ending : *es*.3. Grammatical gender *feminine*, except *diēs*, a day (*m.* and *f.* in singular, and *m.* in plural), and *mēridiēs*, mid-day (*masc.*).

4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Sing.</i>	ēs,	ēī,*	ēī,*	ēm,	ēs,	ē.
<i>Plur.</i>	ēs,	ērūm,	ēbūs,	ēs,	ēs,	ēbūs.

5. Paradigms.

Rēs, <i>f.</i> , <i>a thing.</i>		Diēs, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> , <i>a day.</i>	
(root, <i>r.</i>)		(root, <i>di.</i>)	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	N. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
G. R-ēī,	R-ērūm.	G. Di-ēī,	Di-ērūm.
D. R-ēī,	R-ēbūs.	D. Di-ēī,	Di-ēbūs.
A. R-ēm,	R-ēs.	A. Di-ēm,	Di-ēs.
V. R-ēs,	R-ēs.	V. Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
A. R-ē,	R-ēbūs.	A. Di-ē,	Di-ēbūs.

578. *Case-endings of Substantives.*

SINGULAR.

	Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.
	<i>F.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>		<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>F.</i>
N.	ā.	ūs, ēr, īr,	ūm.	various.		ūs.	ū.	ēs.
G.	ae.	ī.		īs.		ūs.		ēī.*
D.	ae.	ō.		ī.		uī.	ū.	ēī.*
A.	ām.	ūm.		ēm (īm), like nom.		ūm.	ū.	ēm.
V.	ā.	ē, ēr, īr,	ūm.	like nom.		ūs.	ū.	ēs.
A.	ā.	ō.		ē (ī).		ū.		ē.

* In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. *e* is long, except in *spēs* (where it is short), *fidei*, and *rei* (where it is common).

PLURAL.								
	Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.
	<i>F.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>F.</i>
N.	ae.	ī.	ā.	ēs.	ā or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.
G.	ārūm.	ōrūm.		ūm (iūm).		uūm.		ērūm.
D.	īs.	īs.		ībūs.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūs.
A.	ās.	ōs.	ā.	ēs.	ā or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.
V.	ae.	ī.	ā.	ēs.	ā or iā.	ūs.	uā.	ēs.
A.	īs.	īs.		ībūs.		ībūs (ūbūs).		ēbūs.

REM.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

579. Table of Genders.

I. NATURAL GENDER.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Common.
Names of males.	Names of females.	Names applicable to both sexes.

II. GRAMMATICAL GENDER, independent of nominative ending.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Most names of rivers, winds, and months.	Most names of countries, towns, islands, and trees.	Indeclinable nouns, and clauses used as nouns.

III. GRAMMATICAL GENDER, as determined by nominative ending.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Dec. I.	as, es.	a, e.	
Dec. II.	er, us, os.*		um, on.
Dec. III.	er, or, os, es, <i>increasing in gen.</i> , o <i>except do, go,</i> and <i>io.</i>	do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, s <i>impure</i> , x, es <i>not increasing</i> <i>in gen.</i>	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.
Dec. IV.	us.		u.
Dec. V.		es.	

Principal Exceptions.†

SECOND DECLENSION.

Alvūs dōmūs, hūmūs, and vannūs, are *feminine*; pēlāgūs and vīrūs, *neuter*; vulgūs, generally *neuter*, sometimes *masculine*.

* Nouns in *ir* have natural gender.

† This list of exceptions contains some whose gender is not grammatical. They are given here for convenience of reference.

THIRD DECLENSION.

1) MASCULINES.

(*do* and *go*.) Cardŏ, cŏmĕdŏ, harpăgŏ, ordŏ, ũnĕdŏ, lĭgŏ, *and* margŏ
(the last sometimes *fem.*).

(*as*.) *As* and Greek nouns in *as* (gen. *antis*).

(*is*.) Amnis, anguis, axis, cassis, cinis (or *f.*), collis, crinis, ensis, fascis, finis (or *f.*), follis, funis, ignis, lapis, mensis, orbis, panis, piscis, postis, pulvis, sanguis, torris, unguis, vectis, *and* vermīs.

(*s impure*.) Adeps, dens, fons, forceps (or *f.*), mons, pons, quadrans, *and* rudens.

(*x*.) Călix, cŏdex, cortex, grex, pollex, thŏrax, *and* vertex.

(*l*.) Săl *and* sŏl.

(*n*.) Liĕn, pectĕn, rĕn, *and* many words of Greek origin.

(*ur*.) Furfŭr, turtŭr, *and* vultŭr.

(*us*.) Lĕpŭs *and* mŭs.

2) FEMININES.

(*or* and *os*.) Arbŏr, cŏs, *and* dŏs.

(*es increasing*.) Compĕs, mercĕs, mergĕs, quiĕs, rĕquiĕs, sĕgĕs, *and* tĕgĕs.

(*o*.) Cărŏ, ĕchŏ, *and* Argŏ.

(*us*.) Grŭs (*m.*), incŭs, jŭventŭs, pălŭs, pĕcŭs (ŭdis), sălŭs, sĕnectŭs, servitŭs, sŭs (*m.*), tellŭs, *and* virtŭs.

3) NEUTERS.

(*er*.) Cădăvĕr, itĕr, tŭbĕr, ŭbĕr, vĕr, verbĕr, *and* names of plants in *er*.

(*or*.) Adŏr, aequŏr, cŏr, *and* marmŏr.

(*as* and *es*.) Făs, nĕfăs, văs, *and* aes.

(*os*.) Os (ŏris), ŏs (ossis), *and* the Greek words, *chaŏs*, *ĕpŏs*, *ĕthŏs*, *and* *mĕlŏs*.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Acŭs, idŭs, mănŭs, porticŭs, *and* trĭbŭs, are feminine.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Diĕs *and* mĕrĭdiĕs are masculine, though the former is sometimes *fem.* in *sing.*

580. Adjectives.—First and second Declension.

I. Case-endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.

	Singular.			Plural.			A few ¹ have Sing. thus ²		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
	2.*	1.	2.	2.	1.	2.			
N.	ūs, ěr, †	ă	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ă.	ūs, ěr,	ă,	ŭm.
G.	ī,	ae,	ī.	ōrŭm,	ārŭm,	ōrŭm.	iūs,	iūs,	iūs.
D.	ō,	ae,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ī,	ī,	ī.
A.	ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm.	ōs,	ās,	ă.	ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm.
V.	ě, ěr, †	ă	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ă.	ě, ěr,	ă,	ŭm.
A.	ō,	ă,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ō,	ă,	ō.

2. Paradigms.

Bōnūs, *good*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
N.	Bōn-ūs,	ă,	ŭm;	Bōn-ī,	ae,	ă.
G.	Bon-ī,	ae,	ī;	Bōn-ōrŭm,	ārŭm,	ōrŭm.
D.	Bon-ō,	ae,	ō;	Bōn-īs,	īs,	īs.
A.	Bon-ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm;	Bōn-ōs,	ās,	ă.
V.	Bon-ě,	ă,	ŭm;	Bōn-ī,	ae,	ă.
A.	Bon-ō,	ă,	ō;	Bōn-īs,	īs,	īs.

Těněr, *tender*: root, *těněr* (*e* not dropped).

	Singular.			Plural.		
N.	Těněr,	ă,	ŭm;	Těněr-ī,	ae,	ă.
G.	Těněr-ī,	ae,	ī;	Těněr-ōrŭm,	ārŭm,	ōrŭm.
D.	Těněr-ō,	ae,	ō;	Těněr-īs,	īs,	īs.
A.	Těněr-ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm;	Těněr-ōs,	ās,	ă.
V.	Těněr,	ă,	ŭm;	Těněr-ī,	ae,	ă.
A.	Těněr-ō,	ă,	ō;	Těněr-īs,	īs,	īs.

REM. 1.—Most adjectives in *ēr* drop *ě* before *r* of the root in all genders.REM. 2.—The following adjectives have the genitive singular in *iūs* (the *i* is generally short in *alterius*), and the dative singular in *ī* in all genders, viz.: *aliūs*, another; *nullūs*, no one; *solūs*, alone; *tōtūs*, the whole; *ullūs*, any; *unūs*, one; *altēr*, the other; *neutēr*, neither; and *ūtēr*, which (of the two).581. *Adjectives of the Third Declension.*

1. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes, viz.:

* The declensions of the different genders are here indicated by numerals.

† In adjectives in *ēr*, the *masc. nom. sing.* is generally the root (*ě* is sometimes dropped): *ěr*, therefore, is not properly a *case-ending*; it is given merely to show the termination of the *nom.* and *voc. sing.*, without regard to the root (107).

‡ See list, 113, REM.

1) Those which have three different forms in the nominative singular (one for each gender).

2) Those which have two (the *masc.* and *fem.* being the same).

3) Those which have but one (the same for all genders).

2. Adjectives of the third declension are declined in their several genders like nouns of the same *declension*, *gender*, and *ending*. It must, however, be observed,

1) That those which have only one form in the nominative singular have the abl. sing. in *ě* or *ī*, and the rest, with the exception of comparatives, in *ī* only.

2) That all except comparatives have, in the *plural*, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc. neuter* in *iā*, and the *genitive* in *iŭm*.

3. Paradigms.

CLASS I.

Acěr, sharp.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Acěr,	ācr-īs,	ācr-ě.	N. Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-iā.
G. Acr-īs,	ācr-īs,	ācr-īs.	G. Acr-iŭm,	ācr-iŭm,	ācr-iŭm.
D. Acr-ī,	ācr-ī,	ācr-ī.	D. Acr-ībŭs,	ācr-ībŭs,	ācr-ībŭs.
A. Acr-ěm,	ācr-ěm,	ācr-ě.	A. Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-iā.
V. Acěr,	ācr-īs,	ācr-ě.	V. Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-iā.
A. Acr-ī,	ācr-ī,	ācr-ī.	A. Acr-ībŭs,	ācr-ībŭs,	ācr-ībŭs.

CLASS II.

1. Tristīs, sad.

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Trist-īs,	trist-ě.	N. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
G. Trist-īs,	trist-īs.	G. Trist-iŭm,	trist-iŭm.
D. Trist-ī,	trist-ī.	D. Trist-ībŭs,	trist-ībŭs.
A. Trist-ěm,	trist-ě.	A. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
V. Trist-īs,	trist-ě.	V. Trist-ēs,	trist-iā.
A. Trist-ī,	trist-ī.	A. Trist-ībŭs,	trist-ībŭs.

2. Tristiör (comparative), more sad.

N. Tristiör,	tristiŭs.	N. Tristiör-ēs,	tristiör-ā.
G. Tristiör-īs,	tristiör-īs.	G. Tristiör-ŭm,	tristiör-ŭm.
D. Tristiör-ī,	tristiör-ī.	D. Tristiör-ībŭs,	tristiör-ībŭs.
A. Tristiör-ěm,	tristiŭs.	A. Tristiör-ēs,	tristiör-ā.
V. Tristiör,	tristiŭs.	V. Tristiör-ēs,	tristiör-ā.
A. Tristiör-ě (ī),	tristiör-ě (ī).	A. Tristiör-ībŭs,	tristiör-ībŭs.

CLASS III.

Fēlix, happy.

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Fēlix,	fēlix.	N. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
G. Fēlic-īs,	fēlic-īs.	G. Fēlic-iūm,	fēlic-iūm.
D. Fēlic-ī,	fēlic-ī.	D. Fēlic-ībūs.	fēlic-ībūs.
A. Fēlic-ēm,	fēlix.	A. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
V. Fēlix,	fēlix.	V. Fēlic-ēs,	fēlic-iā.
A. Fēlic-ē (ī),	fēlic-ē (ī).	A. Fēlic-ībūs,	fēlic-ībūs.

582. Comparison of Adjectives.

In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issimūs,	issimā,	issimūm.
Examples.	Root.	Comparative.	Superlative.		
Altūs (<i>high</i>),	alt.	altiōr (iōr, iūs),	altissimūs (ā, ūm).		
Mītīs (<i>mild</i>),	mīt.	mītiōr (iōr, iūs),	mītissimūs (ā, ūm).		

REM. 1.—Adjectives in *ēr* add *rimūs* (ā, ūm) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulchēr, pulchriōr, pulcherrimūs.

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in *lis* form the superlative by adding *līmūs* to the root of the positive; e. g.,

Fācilīs (<i>easy</i>),	fāciliōr,	fācillimūs.
Diffīcilīs (<i>difficult</i>),	diffīciliōr,	diffīcillimūs.
Sīmīlīs (<i>like</i>),	sīmīliōr,	sīmīllimūs.
Dissīmīlīs (<i>unlike</i>),	dissīmīliōr,	dissīmīllimūs.

REM. 3.—The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison, viz.:

Bōnūs (<i>good</i>),	mēliōr,	optimūs.
Mālūs (<i>bad</i>),	pejōr,	pessimūs.
Māgnūs (<i>great</i>),	mājōr,	maximūs.
Parvūs (<i>little</i>),	mīnōr,	mīnimūs,
Multūs (<i>much</i>),	plūs (pl. plūrēs, plūrā),	plūrimūs.

583. Numerals.*

	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Adverbs.
1	Unūs, <i>one</i> .	Prīmūs, <i>first</i> .	Singūlī, <i>one by one</i> .	Sēmēl, <i>once</i> .
2	Duō.	Sēcundūs.	Bīnī.	Bīs.
3	Trēs.	Tertiūs.	Ternī.	Tēr.

* See Numerals, p. 145.

4	Quātuor.	Quartūs.	Quāternī.	Quāter.
5	Quinquē.	Quintūs.	Quīnī.	Quīnquīēs.
6	Sex.	Sextūs.	Sēnī.	Sexiēs.
7	Septēm.	Septīmūs.	Septēnī.	Septiēs.
8	Octō.	Octāvūs.	Octōnī.	Octiēs.
9	Nōvēm.	Nōnūs.	Nōvēnī.	Nōviēs.
10	Dēcēm.	Dēcīmūs.	Denī.	Dēciēs.

584. *Substantive Pronouns.*

SINGULAR.

1st Person.

N.	Egō, I.
G.	Meī, of me.
D.	Mihī, to or for me.
A.	Mē, me.
V.	
A.	Mē, with, &c., me.

2d Person.

Tū, thou.
Tuī, of thee.
Tībī, to or for thee.
Tē, thee.
Tū, O thou.
Tō, with thee.

3d Person.

{	Suī, of himself, her-
	self, itself.
	Sibī, to himself, &c.
	Sē, himself.
	Sē, with himself.

PLURAL.

N.	Nōs we.
G.	Nostrūm, } of us.
	or Nostrī, }
D.	Nōbīs, to us.
A.	Nōs, us.
V.	
A.	Nōbīs, with us.

Vōs, ye or you.
Vestrūm } of you.
or Vestrī, }
Vōbīs, to you.
Vōs, you.
Vōs, O ye or you.
Vōbīs, with you.

Suī, of themselves.
Sibī, to themselves.
Sē, themselves.
Sē, with themselves.

585. *Adjective Pronouns.*

I. The *Possessive Pronouns* (so called because they denote possession), *meūs, meā, meūm*; *tuūs, tuā, tuūm*; *suūs, suā, suūm*; *nošlēr, noštrā, noštrūm*; *vešlēr, veštrā, veštrūm*, are declined, as we have already seen (114, REM. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declension.

II. *Demonstrative Pronouns* (so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer), are *hīc, illē, istē, īs*, and *their compounds*, and are declined as follows:

1. *Hīc, this.*

Singular.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	Hīc,	haec,	hōc.
G.	Hujūs,	hujūs,	hujūs.
D.	Huīc,	huīc,	huīc.
A.	Hunc,	hanc,	hōc.
V.			
A.	Hōc,	hāc,	hōc.

Plural.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
	Hī,	hae,	haec.
	Hōrūm,	hārūm,	hōrūm.
	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.
	Hōs,	hās,	haec.
	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.

2. Illě, *he or that.*

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Illě,	illā,	illūd.	Illī,	illae,	illā.
G. Illiūs,	illīūs,	illīūs.	Illōrūm,	illārūm,	illōrūm.
D. Illī,	illī,	illī.	Illīs,	illīs,	illīs.
A. Illūm,	illām,	illūd.	Illōs,	illās,	illā.
V.					
A. Illō,	illā,	illō.	Illīs,	illīs,	illīs.

3. Istě, *that.*

Istě, *that*, is declined like *illě*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

4. Is, *he or that.*

(Less specific than *illě*.)

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Is,	eā,	īd.	Īī,	eae,	eā.
G. Ejūs,	ejūs,	ejūs.	Eōrūm,	eārūm,	eōrūm.
D. Eī,	eī,	eī.	Īīs or eīs,	īīs or eīs,	īīs or eīs.
A. Eūm,	eām,	īd.	Eōs,	eās,	eā.
V.					
A. Eō,	eā,	eō.	Īīs or eīs,	īīs or eīs,	īīs or eīs.

5. Iděm, *the same.*

(Formed by annexing *děm* to *īs*.)

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Iděm,	eāděm,	īděm.	Īděm,	eaeděm,	eāděm.
G. Ejusděm,	ejusděm,	ejusděm.	Eōrunděm,	eārunděm,	eōrunděm.
D. Eīděm,	eīděm,	eīděm.	Eisděm, or Iisděm,	eisděm, or iisděm,	eisděm, or iisděm.
A. Eunděm,	eanděm,	īděm.	Eōsděm,	eāsděm,	eāděm.
V.					
A. Eōděm,	eāděm,	eōděm.	Eisděm, or Iisděm,	eisděm, or iisděm.	eisděm, or iisděm.

III. The *Intensive Pronoun*, *ipsě*, himself, is so called because it is used to render an object *emphatic*. It is declined as follows :

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Ipsě,	ipsă,	ipsŭm.	Ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsă.
G. Ipsīŭs,	ipsīŭs,	ipsīŭs.	Ipsōrŭm,	ipsārŭm,	ipsōrŭm.
D. Ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsī.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.
A. Ipsŭm,	ipsăm,	ipsŭm.	Ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsă.
V.					
A. Ipsō,	ipsă,	ipsō.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.

IV. The *Relative Pronoun*, *quī*, who, is so called because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows :

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Quī,	quae,	quōd.	Quī,	quae,	quae.
G. Cujŭs,	cujŭs,	cujŭs.	Quōrŭm,	quārŭm,	quōrŭm.
D. Cuī,	cuī,	cuī.	Quībŭs,	quībŭs,	quībŭs.
A. Quěm,	quăm,	quōd.	Quōs,	quās,	quae.
V.					
A. Quō,	quă,	quō.	Quībŭs,	quībŭs,	quībŭs.

V. The *Interrogative Pronouns*, *quīs* and *quī*, are so called because they are used in asking questions. *Quī* (which? what?) is used *adjectively*, and is declined like the relative. *Quīs* (who? which? what?) is generally used *substantively*, and is declined like the relative, except in the forms *quīs*, nom. masc., and *quīd*, nom. and acc. neut.

VI. *Indefinite Pronouns* are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., *quīdām*, a certain one; *āliquīs*, some one; *quisquē*, every one; *sīquīs*, if any, &c. They are compounds either of *quīs* or *quī*, and are declined in nearly the same manner as the simple pronouns.

REM.—The compounds of *quīs* generally take *quīd* in the *neut. sing.* when used *substantively*, and *quōd* when used *adjectively*. Some of those compounds, as *āliquīs*, *sīquīs*, take *quă* (not *quae*) in the *fem. sing.* and *neut. plur.*

586. Paradigm of the verb *Essē*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*am*).

Singular.	Plural.
Sŭm, <i>I am.</i>	Sŭmŭs, <i>we are.</i>
Es, <i>thou art.</i>	Estīs, <i>you are.</i>
Est, <i>he is.</i>	Sunt, <i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT (*was*).

Singular.		Plural.
Erām, <i>I was.</i>		Erāmūs, <i>we were.</i>
Erās, <i>thou wast.</i>		Erātīs, <i>you were.</i>
Erāt, <i>he was.</i>		Erant, <i>they were.</i>

FUTURE (*shall or will be*).

Erō, <i>I shall be.</i>		Erīmūs, <i>we shall be.</i>
Erīs, <i>thou wilt be.</i>		Erītīs, <i>you will be.</i>
Erīt, <i>he will be.</i>		Erunt, <i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT (*have been or was*).

Fuī, <i>I have been.</i>		Fuīmūs, <i>we have been.</i>
Fuistī, <i>thou hast been.</i>		Fuistīs, <i>you have been.</i>
Fuīt, <i>he has been.</i>		Fuērunt, } <i>they have been.</i>
		Fuēre, }

PLUPERFECT (*had been*).

Fuērām, <i>I had been.</i>		Fuērāmūs, <i>we had been.</i>
Fuērās, <i>thou hadst been.</i>		Fuērātīs, <i>you had been.</i>
Fuērāt, <i>he had been.</i>		Fuērant, <i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall or will have been*).

Fuērō, <i>I shall have been.</i>		Fuērīmūs, <i>we shall have been.</i>
Fuērīs, <i>thou wilt have been.</i>		Fuērītīs, <i>you will have been.</i>
Fuērīt, <i>he will have been.</i>		Fuērint, <i>they will have been.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*may or can be*).

Sīm, <i>I may be.</i>		Sīmūs, <i>we may be.</i>
Sīs, <i>thou mayest be.</i>		Sītīs, <i>you may be.</i>
Sīt, <i>he may be.</i>		Sint, <i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should be*).

Essēm, <i>I might be.</i>		Essēmūs, <i>we might be.</i>
Essēs, <i>thou mightest be.</i>		Essētīs, <i>you might be.</i>
Essēt, <i>he might be.</i>		Essent, <i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT (*may have been*).

Fuērīm, <i>I may have been.</i>		Fuērīmūs, <i>we may have been.</i>
Fuērīs, <i>thou mayest have been.</i>		Fuērītīs, <i>you may have been.</i>
Fuērīt, <i>he may have been.</i>		Fuērint, <i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT (*might, could, would, or should have been*).

Fuissēm, <i>I might have been.</i>		Fuissēmūs, <i>we might have been.</i>
Fuissēs, <i>thou mightest have been.</i>		Fuissētīs, <i>you might have been.</i>
Fuissēt, <i>he might have been.</i>		Fuissent, <i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.		Plural.
Es, or estō, <i>be thou.</i>		Estě or estōtě, <i>be ye.</i>
Estō, <i>let him be.</i>		Suntō, <i>let them be.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT,	Essě, <i>to be.</i>
PERFECT,	Fuissě, <i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE,	Fütürüs (ǎ, ům) essě, <i>to be about to be</i>

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE,	Fütürüs, ǎ, ům, <i>about to be.</i>
---------	-------------------------------------

587. *Regular Verbs.—Four Conjugations.*

1. Infinitive endings.

1.	2.	3.	4.
ārě,	ērě,	ěřě,	irě.

2. Favorite vowels.

1.	2.	3.	4.
ā,	ē,	ě (ĭ),	i

588. FIRST CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *ārě*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2.	3.
āv,	āt.

2. Paradigm.

Amārě, *to love*: 1st root, *ām*; 2d, *āmāv*; 3d, *āmāt*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Active, <i>I love.</i>		Passive, <i>I am loved.</i>	
Singular.	Plural	Singular.	Plural.
Am-ō,	Am-āmūs,	Am-ör,	Am-āmūr,
Am-ās,	Am-ātīs,	Am-ārīs (rě),	Am-āmīnī,
Am-āt;	Am-ant.	Am-ātūr;	Am-antūr.

IMPERFECT, *was loving*; *was loved.*

Am-ābām,	Am-ābāmūs,	Am-ābār,	Am-ābāmūr,
Am-ābās,	Am-ābātīs,	Am-ābārīs (rě),	Am-ābāmīnī,
Am-ābāt;	Am-ābant.	Am-ābātūr;	Am-ābantūr

FUTURE, *will love ; will be loved.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Am-ābō,	Am-ābimūs,	Am-ābōr,	Am-ābimūr,
Am-ābīs,	Am-ābitīs,	Am-ābērīs (rē),	Am-ābimīnī,
Am-ābit̄ ;	Am-ābunt.	Am-ābitūr ;	Am-ābuntūr.

PERFECT, *have loved ; have been loved.*

Amāv-ī,	Amāv-īmūs,	Amāt-ūs sūm,*	Amāt-ī sūmūs,
Amāv-istī,	Amāv-istīs,	Amāt-ūs ēs,	Amāt-ī estīs,
Amāv-īt̄ ;	Amāv-ērunt (ērē).	Amāt-ūs est ;	Amāt-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had loved ; had been loved.*

Amāv-ērām,	Amāv-ērāmūs,	Amāt-ūs ērām,*	Amāt-ī ērāmūs,
Amāv-ērās,	Amāv-ērātīs,	Amāt-ūs ērās,	Amāt-ī ērātīs,
Amāv-ērāt̄ ;	Amāv-ērant.	Amāt-ūs ērāt̄ ;	Amāt-ī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *will have loved ; will have been loved.*

Amāv-ērō,	Amāv-ērīmūs,	Amāt-ūs ērō,*	Amāt-ī ērīmūs,
Amāv-ērīs,	Amāv-ērītīs,	Amāt-ūs ērīs,	Amāt-ī ērītīs,
Amāv-ērīt̄ ;	Amāv-ērint.	Amāt-ūs ērīt̄ ;	Amāt-ī ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may love ; may be loved.*

Am-ēm,	Am-ēmūs,	Am-ēr,	Am-ēmūr
Am-ēs,	Am-ētīs,	Am-ērīs (rē),	Am-ēmīnī,
Am-ēt̄ ;	Am-ent.	Am-ētūr ;	Am-entūr.

IMPERFECT, *might love ; might be loved.*

Am-ārēm,	Am-ārēmūs,	Am-ārēr,	Am-ārēmūr,
Am-ārēs,	Am-ārētīs,	Am-ārērīs (rē),	Am-ārēmīnī,
Am-ārēt̄ ;	Am-ārent.	Am-ārētūr ;	Am-ārentūr.

PERFECT, *may have loved ; may have been loved.*

Amāv-ērīm,	Amāv-ērīmūs,	Amāt-ūs sīm,†	Amāt-ī sīmūs,
Amāv-ērīs,	Amāv-ērītīs,	Amāt-ūs sīs,	Amāt-ī sītīs,
Amāv-ērīt̄ ;	Amāv-ērint.	Amāt-ūs sīt̄ ;	Amāt-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have loved ; might have been loved.*

Amāv-issēm,	Amāv-issēmūs,	Amāt-ūs essēm,†	Amāt-ī essēmūs,
Amāv-issēs,	Amāv-issētīs,	Amāt-ūs essēs,	Amāt-ī essētīs,
Amāv-issēt̄ ;	Amāv-issent.	Amāt-ūs essēt̄ ;	Amāt-ī essent.

* See 331, N.

† See 332, N.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Am-ā, <i>or</i> ām-ātō,	Am-ātě, <i>or</i> ām-ātōtě,	Am-ārě, <i>or</i> ām-ātōr,	Am-āmīnī
Am-ātō;	Am-antō.	Am-ātōr;	Am-antōr

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Am-ārě.		Am-ārī.
PERF.	Amāv-issě.		Amāt-ūs essě.
FUT.	Amāt-ūrūs essě.		Amāt-ūm irī.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Am-ans.		PERF.	Amāt-ūs.
FUT.	Amāt-ūrūs.		FUT.	Am-andūs.

GERUND.

Am-andī, andō, andūm, andō.

SUPINES.

Amāt-ūm. | Amāt-ū.

589. SECOND CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *ērě*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2.	3.
u (<i>ēv</i>),*	īt.

2. Paradigm.

Mōnērě, *to advise*: 1st root, *mōn*; 2d, *mōnu*; 3d, *mōntt*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Active, *I advise*.

Passive, *I am advised*.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Mōn-eō,	Mōn-ēmūs,	Mōn-eōr,	Mōn-ēmūr,
Mōn-ēs,	Mōn-ētīs,	Mōn-ērīs (<i>rě</i>),	Mōn-ēmīnī,
Mōn-ēt;	Mōn-ent.	Mōn-ētūr;	Mon-entūr.

IMPERFECT, *was advising*; *was advised*.

Mōn-ēbām,	Mōn-ēbāmūs,	Mōn-ēbār,	Mōn-ēbāmūr,
Mōn-ēbās,	Mōn-ēbātīs,	Mōn-ēbārīs (<i>rě</i>),	Mōn-ēbāmīnī,
Mōn-ēbāt;	Mōn-ēbant.	Mōn-ēbātūr;	Mōn-ēbantūr

FUTURE, *shall advise*; *shall be advised*.

Mōn-ēbō,	Mōn-ēbīmūs,	Mōn-ēbōr,	Mōn-ēbīmūr,
Mōn-ēbīs,	Mōn-ēbītīs,	Mōn-ēbērīs (<i>rě</i>),	Mōn-ēbīmīnī,
Mōn-ēbīt;	Mōn-ēbunt.	Mōn-ēbītūr;	Mōn-ēbuntūr.

* See 192, N.

PERFECT, *have advised; have been advised.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Mönu-ī,	Mönu-īmūs,	Mönit-ūs sūm,*	Mönit-ī sūmūs,
Mönu-istī,	Mönu-istīs,	Mönit-ūs ěs,	Mönit-ī ěstīs,
Mönu-īt;	Mönu-ērunt (ērĕ).	Mönit-ūs est;	Mönit-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had advised; had been advised.*

Mönu-ērām,	Mönu-ērāmūs,	Mönit-ūs ěrām,*	Mönit-ī ěrāmūs,
Mönu-ērās,	Mönu-ěrātīs,	Mönit-ūs ěrās,	Mönit-ī ěrātīs,
Mönu-ěrāt;	Mönu-ěrant.	Mönit-ūs ěrāt;	Mönit-ī ěrant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have advised; shall have been advised.*

Mönu-ěrĕ,	Mönu-ěrīmūs,	Mönit-ūs ěrĕ,*	Mönit-ī ěrīmūs,
Mönu-ěrīs,	Mönu-ěrītīs,	Mönit-ūs ěrīs,	Mönit-ī ěrītīs,
Mönu-ěrīt;	Mönu-ěrint.	Mönit-ūs ěrīt;	Mönit-ī ěrunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may advise; may be advised.*

Mön-eām,	Mön-eāmūs,	Mön-eār,	Mön-eāmūr,
Mön-eās,	Mön-eātīs,	Mön-eārīs (rĕ),	Mön-eāmīnī,
Mön-eāt;	Mön-eant.	Mön-eātūr;	Mön-eantūr.

IMPERFECT, *might advise; might be advised.*

Mön-ěrĕm,	Mön-ěrĕmūs,	Mön-ěrěr,	Mön-ěrĕmūr,
Mön-ěrĕs,	Mön-ěrĕtīs,	Mön-ěrěrīs (rĕ),	Mön-ěrĕmīnī,
Mön-ěrĕt;	Mön-ěrent.	Mön-ěrĕtūr;	Mön-ěrentūr.

PERFECT, *may have advised; may have been advised.*

Mönu-ěrīm	Mönu-ěrīmūs,	Mönit-ūs sīm,†	Mönit-ī sīmūs,
Mönu-ěrīs,	Mönu-ěrītīs,	Mönit-ūs sīs,	Mönit-ī sītīs,
Mönu-ěrīt;	Mönu-ěrint.	Mönit-ūs sīt;	Mönit-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have advised; might have been advised.*

Mönu-issĕm,	Mönu-issĕmūs,	Mönit-ūs ěssĕm,†	Mönit-ī ěssĕmūs,
Mönu-issĕs,	Mönu-issĕtīs,	Mönit-ūs ěssĕs,	Mönit-ī ěssĕtīs,
Mönu-issĕt;	Mönu-issent.	Mönit-ūs ěssĕt;	Mönit-ī ěssĕnt.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Mön-ě,	Mön-ětĕ,	Mön-ěrĕ,	Mön-ěmīnī,
or mön-ětĕ,	or mön-ětĕtĕ,	or mön-ětĕr,	
Mön-ětĕ;	Mön-ěntĕ.	Mön-ětĕr;	Mön-ěntĕr.

* See 331 N.

† See 332, N.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Mön-ērě.		Mön-ērī.
PERF.	Mönu-issě.		Mönīt-ūs essě.
FUT.	Mönīt-ūrūs essě.		Mönīt-üm irī.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Mön-ens.		Mönīt-ūs.
FUT.	Mönīt-ūrūs.		Mön-endūs.

GERUND.

Mön-endī, endō, endüm, endō.

SUPINES.

Mönīt-üm.		Mönīt-ū.
-----------	--	----------

590. THIRD CONJUGATION (Inf. ending ěřě).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2d, s, or *like* 1st; 3d, t, sometimes s.

2. Paradigm.

Rěgěřě, *to rule*: 1st root, *rěg*; 2d, *rex*; 3d, *rect*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Act., <i>I rule.</i>		Pass., <i>I am ruled.</i>	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Rěg-ō,	Rěgīmūs,	Rěg-ōr,	Rěg-īmūr,
Rěg-īs,	Rěg-ītīs,	Rěg-ěrīs (řě),	Rěg-īmīnī,
Rěg-īt;	Rěg-unt.	Rěg-ītūr;	Rěg-untūr.

IMPERFECT, *was ruling*; *was ruled.*

Rěg-ěbām,	Rěg-ěbāmūs,		Rěg-ěbār,	Rěg-ěbāmūr,
Rěg-ěbās,	Rěg-ěbātīs,		Rěg-ěbārīs (řě),	Rěg-ěbāmīnī,
Rěg-ěbāt;	Rěg-ěbant.		Rěg-ěbātūr;	Rěg-ěbantūr.

FUTURE, *shall rule*; *shall be ruled.*

Rěg-ām,	Rěg-ēmūs,		Rěg-ār,	Rěg-ēmūr,
Rěg-ēs,	Rěg-ētīs,		Rěg-ěrīs (řě),	Rěg-ēmīnī,
Rěg-ět;	Rěg-ent.		Rěg-ětūr;	Rěg-entūr

PERFECT, *have ruled; have been ruled.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Rex-ī,	Rex-īmūs,	Rect-ūs sūm,*	Rect-ī sūmūs,
Rex-istī,	Rex-istīs,	Rect-ūs ēs,	Rect-ī estīs,
Rex-īt;	Rex-ērunt (ērē).	Rect-ūs est;	Rect-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had ruled; had been ruled.*

Rex-ērām,	Rex-ērāmūs,	Rect-ūs ērām,*	Rect-ī ērāmūs,
Rex-ērās,	Rex-ērātīs,	Rect-ūs ērās,	Rect-ī ērātīs,
Rex-ērāt;	Rex-ērant.	Rect-ūs ērāt;	Rect-ī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have ruled; shall have been ruled.*

Rex-ērō,	Rex-ērīmūs,	Rect-ūs ērō,*	Rect-ī ērīmūs,
Rex-ērīs,	Rex-ērītīs,	Rect-ūs ērīs,	Rect-ī ērītīs,
Rex-ērīt;	Rex-ērint.	Rect-ūs ērīt;	Rect-ī ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may rule; may be ruled.*

Rĕg-ām,	Rĕg-āmūs,	Rĕg-ār,	Rĕg-āmūr,
Rĕg-ās,	Rĕg-ātīs,	Rĕg-ārīs (rē),	Rĕg-āmīnī,
Rĕg-āt;	Rĕg-ant.	Rĕg-ātūr;	Rĕg-antūr.

IMPERFECT, *might rule; might be ruled.*

Rĕg-ērēm,	Rĕg-ērēmūs,	Rĕg-ērēr,	Rĕg-ērēmūr,
Rĕg-ērēs,	Rĕg-ērētīs,	Rĕg-ērērīs (rē),	Rĕg-ērēmīnī
Rĕg-ērēt;	Rĕg-erent.	Rĕg-ērētūr,	Rĕg-erentūr.

PERFECT, *may have ruled; may have been ruled.*

Rex-ērīm,	Rex-ērīmūs,	Rect-ūs sīm,†	Rect-ī sīmūs
Rex-ērīs,	Rex-ērītīs,	Rect-ūs sīs,	Rect-ī sītīs,
Rex-ērīt;	Rex-ērint.	Rect-ūs sīt;	Rect-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have ruled; might have been ruled.*

Rex-issēm,	Rex-issēmūs,	Rect-ūs essēm,†	Rect-ī essēmūs,
Rex-issēs,	Rex-issētīs,	Rect-ūs essēs,	Rect-ī essētīs,
Rex-issēt;	Rex-issent.	Rect-ūs essēt;	Rect-ī essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Rĕg-ĕ,	Rĕg-ītĕ,	Rĕg-ērĕ,	Rĕg-īmīnī,
or rĕg-ītō,	or rĕg-ītōtĕ,	or rĕg-ītōr,	
Rĕg-ītō;	Rĕg-untō.	Rĕg-ītōr;	Rĕg-untōr.

* See 331, N.

† See 332, N.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Rĕg-ĕrĕ.		Rĕg-ĭ.
PERF.	Rĕx-issĕ.		Rĕct-ŭs essĕ.
FUT.	Rĕct-ŭrŭs essĕ.		Rĕct-ŭm ĭrĭ.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Rĕg-ens.		PERF.	Rĕct-ŭs.
FUT.	Rĕct-ŭrŭs.		FUT.	Rĕg-endŭs

GERUND.

Rĕg-endĭ, endō, endŭm, endō.

SUPINES.

Rĕct-ŭm.		Rĕct-ŭ.
----------	--	---------

3. Paradigm of verbs in *i ŏ* of the third conjugation.

Căpĕrĕ, to take: 1st root, *căp*; 2d, *cĕp*; 3d, *capt*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Căp-iŏ,	Căp-ĭmŭs,	Căp-iŏr,	Căp-ĭmŭr,
Căp-ĭs,	Căp-ĭtĭs,	Căp-ĕrĭs (rĕ),	Căp-ĭmĭnĭ,
Căp-ĭt;	Căp-iunt.	Căp-ĭtŭr;	Căp-iuntŭr.

IMPERFECT.

Căp-iĕbăm,	Căp-iĕbămŭs,	Căp-iĕbăr,	Căp-iĕbămŭr,
Căp-iĕbās,	Căp-iĕbătĭs,	Căp-iĕbărĭs (rĕ),	Căp-iĕbămĭnĭ,
Căp-iĕbăt;	Căp-iĕbant.	Căp-iĕbătŭr;	Căp-iĕbantŭr.

FUTURE.

Căp-iăm,	Căp-iēmŭs,	Căp-iăr,	Căp-iēmŭr,
Căp-iēs,	Căp-iĕtĭs,	Căp-iĕrĭs (rĕ),	Căp-iēmĭnĭ,
Căp-iĕt;	Căp-iĕnt.	Căp-iĕtŭr;	Căp-iĕntŭr.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Căp-iăm,	Căp-iămŭs,	Căp-iăr,	Căp-iămŭr,
Căp-iās,	Căp-iătĭs,	Căp-iărĭs (rĕ),	Căp-iămĭnĭ,
Căp-iăt.	Căp-iant.	Căp-iătŭr;	Căp-iantŭr.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.


3d Pl. Căp-iuntō. | 3d Pl. Căp-iuntōr.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Căp-iens. | FUT. Căp-iendūs.

GERUND.

Căp-iendī, dō, &c.

 The other parts of verbs in i ō are entirely regular.

591. FOURTH CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *irē*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2d, *iv*; 3d, *it*.

2. Paradigm.

Audirē, *to hear*: 1st root, *aud*; 2d, *audiv*; 3d, *audit*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Act., <i>I hear</i> .		Pass., <i>I am heard</i> .	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Aud-iō,	Aud-īmūs,	Aud-iōr,	Aud-īmūr,
Aud-īs,	Aud-ītīs,	Aud-irīs (rē),	Aud-īmīnī,
Aud-īt;	Aud-iunt.	Aud-itūr;	Aud-iuntūr.

IMPERFECT, *was hearing*; *was heard*.

Aud-iēbām,	Aud-iēbāmūs,	Aud-iēbār,	Aud-iēbāmūr,
Aud-iēbās,	Aud-iēbātīs,	Aud-iēbārīs (rē),	Aud-iēbāmīnī,
Aud-iēbāt;	Aud-iēbant.	Aud-iēbātūr;	Aud-iēbantūr

FUTURE, *shall hear*; *shall be heard*.

Aud-iām,	Aud-iēmūs,	Aud-iār,	Aud-iēmūr,
Aud-iēs,	Aud-iētīs,	Aud-iērīs (rē),	Aud-iēmīnī,
Aud-iēt;	Aud-ient.	Aud-iētūr;	Aud-iētūr.

PERFECT, *have heard*; *have been heard*.

Audiv-i,	Audiv-īmūs,	Audit-ūs sūm,*	Audit-i sūmūs,
Audiv-istī,	Audiv-istīs,	Audit-ūs ēs,	Audit-i estīs,
Audiv-īt;	Audiv-ērunt (ērē).	Audit-ūs est;	Audit-i sunt.

* See 331, N.

PLUPERFECT, *had heard; had been heard.*

Audīv-ērām,	Audīv-ērāmūs,		Audit-ūs ērām,*	Audit-ī ērāmūs,
Audīv-ērās,	Audīv-ērātīs,		Audit-ūs ērās,	Audit-ī ērātīs,
Audīv-erāt;	Audīv-ērant.		Audit-ūs ērāt;	Audit-ī ērant

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have heard; shall have been heard.*

Audīv-ērō,	Audīv-ērīmūs,		Audit-ūs ērō,*	Audit-ī ērīmūs,
Audīv-ērīs,	Audīv-ērītīs,		Audit-ūs ērīs,	Audit-ī ērītīs,
Audīv-ērīt;	Audīv-ērint.		Audit-ūs ērīt;	Audit-ī ērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may hear; may be heard.*

Aud-īām,	Aud-īāmūs,		Aud-īār,	At d-īāmūr,
Aud-īās,	Aud-īātīs,		Aud-īārīs (rě),	Aud-īāmīnī,
Aud-īāt;	Aud-īant.		Aud-īātūr;	Aud-īantūr.

IMPERFECT, *might hear; might be heard.*

Aud-irēm,	Aud-irēmūs,		Aud-irēr,	Aud-irēmūr,
Aud-irēs,	Aud-irētīs,		Aud-irērīs (rě),	Aud-irēmīnī,
Aud-irēt;	Aud-irent.		Aud-irētūr;	Aud-irentūr.

PERFECT, *may have heard; may have been heard.*

Audīv-ērīm,	Audīv-ērīmūs,		Audit-ūs sīm,†	Audit-ī sīmūs,
Audīv-ērīs,	Audīv-ērītīs,		Audit-ūs sīs,	Audit-ī sītīs,
Audīv-ērīt;	Audīv-ērint.		Audit-ūs sīt;	Audit-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have heard; might have been heard.*

Audīv-issēm,	Audīv-issēmūs,		Audit-ūs essēm,†	Audit-ī essēmūs
Audīv-issēs,	Audīv-issētīs,		Audit-ūs essēs,	Audit-ī essētīs,
Audīv-issēt;	Audīv-issent.		Audit-ūs essēt;	Audit-ī essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Aud-ī,	Aud-itě,		Aud-irě,	Aud-īmīnī,
or aud-itō,	or aud-itōtě,		or aud-itōr,	
Aud-itō;	Aud-iuntō.		Aud-itōr;	Aud-iuntōr.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Aud-irě.		Aud-irī.
PERF.	Audīv-issě.		Audit-ūs essě.
FUT.	Audit-ūrūs essě.		Audit-ūm irī.

* See 331, N.

† See 332, N

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Aud-iens.		PERF.	Audit-ūs.
FUT.	Audit-ūrūs.		FUT.	Audiendūs.

GERUND.

Aud-iendī, iendō, iendūm, iendō.

SUPINES.

Audit-ūm.		Audit-ū.
-----------	--	----------

592. *Formation of Second Root.*

Conj. I.		Conj. II.		Conj. III.		Conj. IV. .
----------	--	-----------	--	------------	--	-------------

REGULAR.

āv.		u or ēv.		s or like 1st root.		iv
-----	--	----------	--	---------------------	--	----

FIRST IRREGULARITY.

Radical vowel lengthened.		radical vowel lengthened.		radical vowel lengthened (and often changed).		radical vowel lengthened.
------------------------------	--	------------------------------	--	---	--	------------------------------

SECOND IRREGULARITY.

Reduplication.		reduplication.		reduplication.	
----------------	--	----------------	--	----------------	--

THIRD IRREGULARITY.

Analogy of 2d conj.		analogy of 3d conj.		analogy of 2d or 4th conj.		analogy of 2d or 3d conj.
------------------------	--	------------------------	--	-------------------------------	--	------------------------------

593. *Deponent Verbs.*

Deponent verbs are such as have a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*. They take, however, all the four participles; e. g.,

- 1) Lōquens, *speaking*; 2) lōcūtūs, *having spoken*; 3) lōcūtūrūs, *about to speak*; 4) lōquendūs, *to be spoken*.

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs do not have.

Irregular Verbs.

594. Paradigm of *Possē*,* to be able.

2d root, *pōtu*.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. Possūm, pōtēs, pōtest, possūmūs, pōtestīs, possunt.

Imp. pōtērām; *Fut.* pōtērō; *Perf.* pōtu-ī; *Pluperf.* pōtu-ērām; *Fut. Perf.* pōtu-ērō.

* For the conjugation of the simple verb, *essē*, see 586.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. possím ; *Imp.* possěm ; *Perf.* pötu-ěřím ; *Pluperf.* pötu-issěm.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. possě ; *Perf.* pötu-issě.

PARTICIPLE.

Pötens (used as an adjective, powerful).

595. Paradigms of *Vellě* (to be willing) and its compounds.

Vellě.	Nollě.	Mallě.
2d root, <i>völu</i> .	2d root, <i>nölu</i> .	2d root, <i>mälu</i> .

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Völě,	Nölě,	Mälě,
Vís,	Nonvís,	Mävís,
Vult ;	Nonvult ;	Mävult ;
Völümüs,	Nölümüs,	Mälümüs,
Vultís,	Nonvultís,	Mävultís,
Völunt.	Nölunt.	Mälunt.

IMPERFECT.

Völ-ěbäm, bäs, &c.	Nöl-ěbäm, bäs, &c.	Mäl-ěbäm, bäs, &c.
--------------------	--------------------	--------------------

FUTURE.

Völ-äm.	Nöl-äm.	Mäl-äm.
---------	---------	---------

PERFECT.

Völu-l.	Nölu-l.	Mälu-l.
---------	---------	---------

PLUPERFECT.

Völu-ěřäm.	Nölu-ěřäm.	Mälu-ěřäm.
------------	------------	------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Völu-ěřö.	Nölu-ěřö.	Mälu-ěřö.
-----------	-----------	-----------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Věl-ím, is, &c.	Nöl-ím, is, &c.	Mäl-ím, is, &c.
-----------------	-----------------	-----------------

IMPERFECT.

Vell-ěm, es, &c.	Noll-ěm.	Mäl-ěm.
------------------	----------	---------

PERFECT.

Völu-ěřím.	Nölu-ěřím.	Mälu-ěřím.
------------	------------	------------

PLUPERFECT.

Völu-issěm.	Nölu-issěm.	Mälu-issěm.
-------------	-------------	-------------

IMPERATIVE.

Nōl-ī or itō.	
Nōl-itē or itōtē.	

INFINITIVE.

PRES. Vellē.	Nollē.	Mallē.
PERF. Vōlu-issē.	Nōlu-issē.	Mālu-issē.

PARTICIPLES.

Vōlens.	Nōlens.	
---------	---------	--

196. Paradigm of *Ferrē*, to bear.

2d root, *tūl*; 3d, *lāt*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Active.</i>	Fēr-ō, fer-s, fer-t, fēr-īmūs, fer-tīs, fēr-unt.		<i>Passive.</i>	Fēr-ōr, fer-rīs, fer-tūr, fēr-īmūr, fēr-īmīnī, fēr-untūr.
----------------	---	--	-----------------	--

IMPERFECT.

Fēr-ēbām, bās, &c.		Fēr-ēbār, bārīs, &c.
--------------------	--	----------------------

FUTURE.

Fēr-ām, ēs, &c.		Fēr-ār, ērīs, &c.
-----------------	--	-------------------

PERFECT.

Tūl-ī, istī, &c.		Lāt-ūs sūm, ēs, &c.
------------------	--	---------------------

PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-ērām, ās, &c.		Lāt-ūs ērām, &c.
-------------------	--	------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Tūl-ērō, &c.		Lāt-ūs ērō, &c.
--------------	--	-----------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Fēr-ām, ās, &c.		Fēr-ār, ārīs, &c.
-----------------	--	-------------------

IMPERFECT.

Fer-rēm, rēs, &c.		Fer-rēr, rērīs, &c.
-------------------	--	---------------------

PERFECT.

Tūl-ērīm, &c.		Lāt-ūs sīm, &c.
---------------	--	-----------------

PLUPERFECT.

Tūl-issēm.		Lāt-ūs essēm, &c.
------------	--	-------------------

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>
Fěr, or fertǒ,		Fer-rě, or fer-tǒr,
Fer-tǒ;		Fer-tǒr;
Fer-tě, or fer-tǒtě,		Fěr-ĩmĩnĩ,
Fěr-untǒ.		Fěr-untǒr.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> Fer-rě,		Fer-rĩ,
<i>Perf.</i> Tũl-isse,		Lāt-ũs essě,
<i>Fut.</i> Lāt-ũrũs essě.		Lāt-ũm irĩ.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> Fěr-ens,		<i>Perf.</i> Lāt-ũs (ǎ, ũm).
<i>Fut.</i> Lāt-ũrũs (ǎ, ũm).		<i>Fut.</i> Fěr-endũs (ǎ, ũm).

GERUND.

Fěr-endĩ, dǒ, dũm, dǒ.

SUPINE.

Lāt-ũm. | Lāt-ũ.

REM.—The compounds of *ferrě* are conjugated like the simple verb.

597. Paradigm of *Fĩerĩ*, to become, be made.

PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Fĩǒ, fĩs, fĩt, &c.		Fĩ-ǎm, fĩ-ǎs, fĩ-ǎt, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Fĩ-ěbǎm, ěbǎs, &c. | Fĩ-ěřem, ěřes, &c.

FUTURE.

Fĩ-ǎm, ěs, &c. |

PERFECT.

Fact-ũs sũm, &c. | Fact-ũs sĩm, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Fact-ũs ěřǎm, &c. | Fact-ũs essěm, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Fact-ũs ěřǒ, &c. |

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fĩ, or fĩ-tǒ, Fĩ-tě.		<i>Plur.</i> Fĩ-tě, or fĩ-tǒtě, Fĩ-untǒ.
--------------------------------------	--	---

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fiēri; *Perf.* Fact-ūs essē; *Fut.* Fact-ūm irī.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Fact-ūs (ā, ūm); *Fut.* Fāciendūs (ā, ūm).

598. Paradigm of *Irē*, to go.

2d root, *iv*; 3d, *it*.

PRESENT.

<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Eō, is, it; imūs, itīs, eunt.		Eām, eās, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Ibām, ibās, &c.		Irēm, irēs, &c.
-----------------	--	-----------------

FUTURE.

Ibō, ibīs, &c.		
----------------	--	--

PERFECT.

Iv-ī, iv-istī, &c.		Iv-ērīm, ēris, &c.
--------------------	--	--------------------

PLUPERFECT.

Iv-ērām, ērās, &c.		Iv-issēm, issēs, &c.
--------------------	--	----------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

Iv-ērō, ēris, &c.		
-------------------	--	--

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing. I, or itō,</i> Itō.		<i>Plur. Itē, or itōtē,</i> Euntō.
---------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Irē; *Perf.* Iv-issē; *Fut.* Itūrūs essē.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Iens (*gen.* euntīs); *Fut.* Itūrūs, ā, ūm.

GERUND.

Eundī, dō, dūm, dō.		Itūm, itū.
---------------------	--	------------

SUPINE.

599. *Edērē*, to eat.

Edērē, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of *essē*. These are as follows:

Regular.

<i>Pres.</i>	Edō, &c.
<i>Imperat.</i>	Edē, &c.
<i>Subj. Imp.</i>	Edērēm, &c.
<i>Infjn.</i>	Edērē.

Irregular.

Es, est, estīs.
Es, estō, estē, estōtē.
Essēm, essēs, &c.
Essē.

600. *Periphrastic Conjugations.*

There are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in *rūs* and *dūs*, combined with the various tenses of the verb *essē*. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as *future*, or as one that is about to be done; e. g., *scriptūrūs sūm*, I am about to write: the second expresses *duty* or *necessity*; e. g., *virtūs cōlendā est*, virtue must be cultivated.

601. *Impersonal Verbs.*

1. Impersonal verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I, thou, he*). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun *it*; e. g.,

Oportēt, it behooves.

Taedēt mē, it disgusts me (I am disgusted with).

2. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Constāt, it is known.

Juvāt, it delights.

3. The second periphrastic conjugation is often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Mihī scribendūm est, I must or should write.

Tibī scribendūm est, you must or should write.

Illī scribendūm est, he must or should write.

Nōbīs scribendūm est, we must or should write.

Vōbīs scribendūm est, you must or should write.

Illīs scribendūm est, they must or should write.

4. Those verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive; e. g.,

Mihī crēditūr, I am believed.

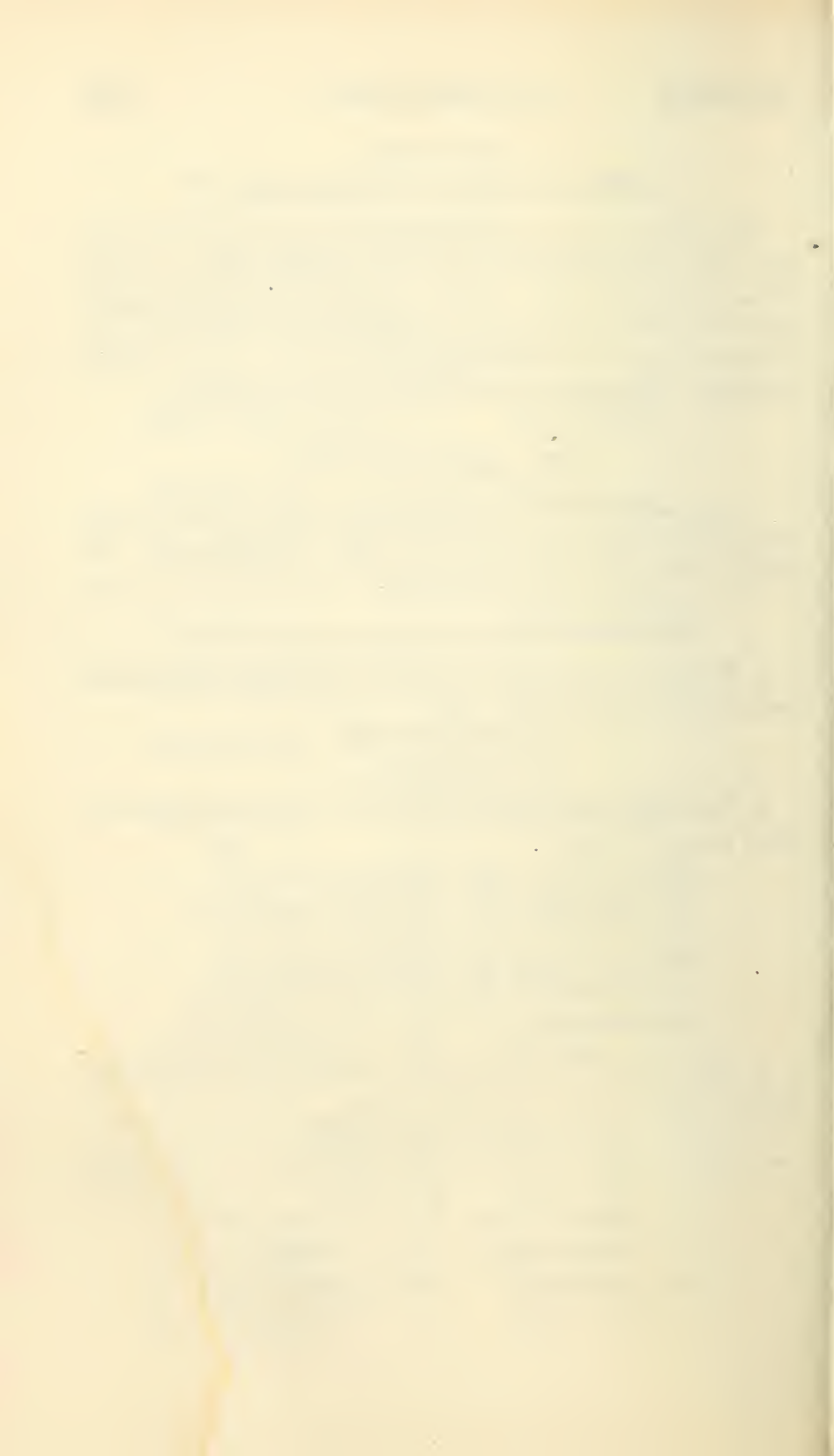
Tibī crēditūr, Thou art believed.

Illī crēditūr, He is believed.

Nōbīs crēditūr, We are believed.

Vōbīs crēditūr, You are believed.

Illīs crēditūr, They are believed.



SYNTAX.

INTRODUCTION.

602. PARTS of speech (as we have seen, 2), either singly or combined, form propositions; e. g., *Amās, thou lovest*; *puěr lūdīt, the boy plays*.

603. Propositions, either singly or combined, form sentences; e. g., *Equūs currīt (one prop.), the horse runs*; *Puěr lūdīt ět ěquūs currīt (two propositions)*.

604. Sentences, in their various forms and combinations, of course, comprise the language.

605. Sentences may be divided into two classes, viz.:

- 1) Simple sentences, or such as contain a single proposition; e. g., *Puěr lūdīt*.
- 2) Compound sentences, or such as contain more than one proposition; e. g., *Puěr lūdīt ět ěquūs currīt*.

606. In a compound sentence, the propositions which compose it are either,

- 1) Independent of each other, as in the above example, and are called co-ordinate propositions; or,
- 2) One of them is used to qualify the other, or some part of it, and is called a dependent or subordinate proposition, while that on which it depends is called a leading or principal proposition; e. g., *Servūs vĕnĭt ũt portās claudĕt, the slave has come to shut the gates*. Here, '*servūs vĕnĭt*' is a principal proposition, and '*ũt portās claudĕt*' is a dependent proposition.

CHAPTER I.

The Essential Elements of Sentences.—Subject and Predicate.

SECTION I.—SUBJECT.

607. EVERY sentence, however simple, consists of two distinct parts, viz. :

- 1) The *Subject*, or that of which it speaks, as, *puēr*, in the sentence *puēr lūdīt*.
- 2) The *Predicate*, or that which is said of the subject, as *lūdīt*, in the above sentence.

608. The subject of a sentence must be either,

- 1) A noun; e. g., *puēr*, in the sentence *puēr lūdīt*; or,
- 2) A word or clause used as a noun; e. g., *mentīrī*, in the sentence *turpē est mentīrī*.

609. RULE I. *The Subject*.—The subject of a finite* verb is put in the nominative; e. g., *Equūs currīt*, *the horse runs*.

610. The subject may either be *simple* or *compound*.

- 1) The *simple subject* consists either of a single nominative, or of two or more nominatives representing the same person or thing; e. g., (1) *Lātinūs rēgnābāt*, *Latinus was reigning*; (2) *Lātinūs rex rēgnābāt*, *Latinus the king was reigning*.
- 2) The *compound subject* consists of two or more simple subjects connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g., *Caesār ēt Balbūs Rōmām vēnērunt*, *Caesar and Balbus came to Rome*.

SECTION II.—PREDICATE.

611. The predicate of a sentence must be either,

- 1) A verb; e. g., *lūdīt*, in the sentence *puēr lūdīt*; or,
- 2) The verb *essē* (or sometimes a passive verb) with an attributive† noun or adjective; e. g.,

* For the subject of an infinitive see 655.

† By an *attributive* noun is meant one which is used to qualify or describe another noun.

1.

Cicērō fuīt consŭl, *Cicero was consul.*

Christiānī est nēmīnēm viōlārē, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.* Here, *fuīt consŭl* and *Christiānī est* are the predicates.

2.

Terrā est rōtundā, *the earth is round.*

Hŭmānŭm est errārē, *to err is human.* Here, *est rōtundā* and *hŭmānŭm est* are the predicates.

612. RULE II. *Finite Verb.*—A finite verb must agree with its subject in number and person; e. g., *Puēr lŭdīt, the boy plays.*

REM.—If the subject is *compound*, the verb is generally put in the plural.

613. RULE III. *Attributive Noun.*—An attributive noun in the predicate, after the verb *essē* and a few passive verbs, is put,

- 1) In the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., *Cicērō fuīt consŭl, Cicero was consul.*
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Christiānī est nēmīnēm viōlārē, it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.*

614. RULE IV. *Adjectives.*—Adjectives and participles (whether in the subject or the predicate) agree in *gender, number, and case*, with the nouns which they qualify; e. g., *Terrā est rōtundā the earth is round.*

615. The predicate, like the subject, may be either *simple* or *compound*.

- 1) The *simple* predicate contains but a single finite verb; e. g., *Puēr currīt, the boy runs.*
- 2) The *compound* predicate consists of two or more simple predicates connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g. *Puēr currīt et lŭdīt, the boy runs and plays.*

616. In principal sentences (including simple sentences) the verb of the predicate may be put in any finite mood.

- 1) The *indicative* is used, in positive assertions; e. g., *Portas claudīt, he is shutting the gates.*
- 2) The *subjunctive* is used,

- a) To express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*; e. g., Dārēt, *he would give it* (i. e., *if he had it, perhaps*).
- b) *Sometimes* to express a *wish* or *command*; e. g., Scribāt, *he may write, may he write, or let him write*.

3) The imperative is used to express a command; e. g., Portās claudē, *shut the gates*.

617. RULE V. *Vocative*.—The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative; e. g., Quid est, Cātīlinā? *why is this, Catiline?*

REM.—This, of course, forms no part of the subject or predicate.

CHAPTER II.

Subordinate Elements.—Modifiers.

SECTION I.—USE OF MODIFIERS.

618. BOTH subject and predicate may have qualifying words and clauses connected with them, to limit or modify their meaning; e. g.,

- 1) Lātīnūs rex rēgnāvit, *Latinus the king reigned*. Here the subject is modified by *rex* (59).
- 2) Militēs fortītēr pāgnant, *the soldiers fight bravely*. Here the predicate is modified by *fortītēr* (77).

619. Any modifier, whether in the subject or the predicate, may be itself modified; e. g., Lātīnūs, *bōnūs* rex, rēgnāvit. Here the modifier, *rex*, is itself modified by *bōnūs*.

620. Nouns, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs, are often found with modifiers.

SECTION II.—MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.

621. Nouns, including pronouns, may be modified,

I. By adjectives and participles.

II. By nouns and clauses used with the force of adjectives.

622. I. Nouns may be modified by adjectives and participles; e. g., Bōnūs puēr, *a good boy*.

See Rule IV.

623. II. Nouns may be modified by nouns and clauses used with the force of adjectives. These are,

- 1) Limiting nouns.
- 2) Relative clauses.

624. RULE VI. *Limiting Nouns*.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

- 1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., *Lătīnūs rex*, *Latinus the king*.
- 2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Rēgīs filiūs*, *the king's son*: except,
 - a) When it denotes *character* or *quality*; it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the genitive or ablative; e. g., *Puēr exīmiæ pulchrītūdīnis*, or *Puēr exīmiā pulchrītūdīnē*, *a boy of remarkable beauty*.

625. RULE VII. *Relative Clauses*.—The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; e. g., *Puēr quī lūdīt*, *the boy who plays*.

626. The predicate of a relative clause is sometimes in the *indicative* and sometimes in the *subjunctive*. It may be observed, however, that the subjunctive is used,

- 1) To express *purpose* or *result*; e. g., *Lēgātōs mīsērunt quī dīcērent*, *they sent ambassadors to say* (lit., *who might say*).
- 2) To define an indefinite antecedent; e. g., *Sunt quī pūtent*, *there are (some) who think*.

SECTION III.—MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.

627. Adjectives may be modified,

I. By adverbs.

II. By words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs.

628. I. Adjectives may be modified by adverbs; e. g., *Haud difficīlis*, *not difficult*.

629. RULE VIII. *Adverbs*.—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., *Haud difficīlis*, *not difficult*; *mīlēs fortītēr pūgnāt*, *the soldier fights bravely*.

REM.—It will be observed that *adverbs* modify verbs and other adverbs as well as adjectives.

630. II. Adjectives may be modified by words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs. These are,

- 1) The genitive.
- 2) The dative.
- 3) The ablative.
- 4) The infinitive.

631. RULE IX. *Genitive*.—Many adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, skill, participation, recollection, fulness*, and the like, together with their *contraries*, take the genitive; e. g., *Cūpīdūs laudīs, desirous of praise.*

632. RULE X. *Dative*.—Many adjectives are followed by the dative of the object to which the quality is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., *Pax mihi grātissimā ērat, peace was very acceptable to me.*

633. RULE XI. *Ablative*.—Adjectives may be modified by an ablative denoting *cause, manner, or means*; e. g., *Aegēr āvāritiā, diseased by avarice.*

634. RULE XII. *Ablative*.—The adjectives, *dignūs, indignūs, contentūs, praeditūs, frētūs*, and *libēr*, take the ablative; e. g., *Virtūs parvō contentā est, virtue is content with little.*

635. RULE XIII. *Supine in ū as Ablative*.—The supine in *ū* as a verbal noun in the ablative is used after adjectives signifying *good or bad, easy or difficult, agreeable or disagreeable, &c.*; e. g., *Difficilē dictū (difficult in saying), difficult to say.*

636. RULE XIV. *Ablative*.—The comparative degree without *quām* is followed by the ablative; e. g., *Clēmētiā dīviniūs, more godlike than clemency.*

Obs.—If *quām* is expressed, the following noun will be in the same case as that which precedes; e. g., *Eurōpā mīnōr est quām Asiā, Europe is smaller than Asia.*

637. RULE XV. *Infinitive*.—The infinitive sometimes depends upon adjectives; e. g., *Dignūs āmārī, worthy to be loved.*

REM.—Infinitives dependent upon adjectives are generally used as substantives, and as such may be referred to Rule XI. or XII.

SECTION IV.—MODIFIERS OF VERBS.

638. Verbs may be modified,

- I. By objects.
- II. By adverbial modifiers.

§ 1. *Objects.*

639. Verbs may be modified by objects. These are,

- 1) The oblique cases of nouns.
- 2) Infinitives or clauses used as nouns.

640. Verbs may take one or more oblique cases of nouns as *objects*; e. g., (1) *Caiūs puellām laudāt*, *Caius praises the girl.*
(2) *Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt*, *Balbus shows the way to the boy.*

641. RULE XVI.—The *accusative* is used as the *direct object* of an action; e. g., *Caiūs puellām laudāt*, *Caius praises the girl.*

642. RULE XVII.—The *genitive* is used,

- 1) After verbs of pitying; e. g., *Mīsērēmīnī sōciōrūm*, *pity the allies.*
- 2) After verbs of remembering and forgetting; e. g., *Mēmīnī vīvōrūm*, *I remember the living.*
- 3) After *rēfert* and *intērest*; e. g., *Intērest omniūm*, *it is the interest of all.*

REM.—Verbs of remembering and forgetting sometimes take the *accusative*; e. g., *Mēmīnī Cinnām*, *I remember Cinna.*

643. RULE XVIII.—The *dative* is used,

- 1) After *essē* in expressions denoting possession; e. g., *Puērō est libēr*, *the boy has a book* (lit., *there is a book to the boy*).
- 2) After the compounds of *essē*, except *possē*, to be able; e. g., *Mihī profuit*, *it profited me.*
- 3) After the compounds of *bēnē*, *sāhs*, and *mālē*; e. g., *Officiō suō sātīsfēcīt*, *he has discharged his duty* (lit., *has done enough for*).
- 4) After the compounds of the prepositions, *ād*, *antē*, *cōn*, *īn*, *intēr*, *ōb*, *post*, *prae*, *sūb*, and *sūpēr*, together with a few others; e. g., *Vēnī ūt mihī succurrās*, *I have come that you may assist* (succor) *me.*
- 5) After verbs signifying *to command* or *obey*, *please* or *displease*, *favor* or *injure*, *serve* or *resist*, together with *to indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *believe*, *persuade*, &c.; e. g., *Lēgībūs pārēt*, *he obeys the laws* (is obedient to the laws).

644. RULE XIX.—The *ablative* is used,

- 1) After the deponent verbs, *ūlī*, *frūī*, *fungī*, *pōlīrī*, *vescī*,

dignārī,* and their compounds; e. g., *Lactē vescuntūr* they live upon milk.

- 2) After verbs signifying to abound or be destitute of; e. g., *Nēmō āliorūm ōpē cārērē pōtest*, no one can be (do) without the assistance of others.

645. RULE XX. *Two Accusatives*.—Verbs of asking, demanding teaching, and concealing, may take two accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing; e. g., *Caesār frūmentūm Aeduōs flāgītābāt*, Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.

646. RULE XXI. *Accusative and Genitive*.—Verbs of accusing, convicting, acquitting, warning, and the like, take the accusative of the person, and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e. g., *Caiūm prōditiōnīs accūsant*, they accuse Caius of treachery.

REM.—The genitive is perhaps best explained by making it depend upon the ablative *crīmīnē*, understood. See 214, Note.

647. RULE XXII. *Accusative and Genitive*.—The impersonal verbs of feeling, *mīsērēt*, *poenītēt*, *pūdēt*, *taedēt*, and *pīgēt*, take the accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling; e. g., *Taedēt mē vitae*, I am weary of life (lit., it wearies me of life).

648. RULE XXIII. *Accusative and Dative*.—Any transitive verb may take the accusative of the direct object and the dative of the indirect object; e. g., *Balbūs puērō viām monstrāt*, Balbus shows the way to the boy.

649. RULE XXIV. *Accusative and two Datives*.—Transitive verbs of giving, sending, imputing (*đārē*, *mittērē*, *vertērē*, &c.), sometimes take a direct object in the accusative, together with two indirect objects in the dative; e. g., *Rēgnūm suūm Rōmānīs donō dēdit*, he gave his kingdom to the Romans as a present (for a present).

650. RULE XXV. *Accusative and Ablative*.—Verbs signifying to separate from, or deprive of, take the accusative of the direct object, together with the ablative of that from which it is separated, &c. e. g., *Mē lūcē prīvant*, they deprive me of light.

* *Dignārī* takes a direct object in connection with the ablative; e. g., *Tē hōnōrē dignātūr*, he thinks you worthy of honor.

651. RULE XXVI. *Two Datives*.—Intransitive verbs signifying *to be, to come, to go*, and the like, often take two datives, one denoting the object *to which*, and the other the object *for which*; e. g., *Caesāri auxiliō vēnit, he went to the assistance of Caesar*.

652. RULE XXVII. *Dative and Ablative*.—*Opūs est* and *ūsūs est*, as impersonal verbs signifying need, take the dative of the person and the ablative of the object needed; e. g., *Dūcē nōbīs ōpūs est, we need a leader* (lit., *there is need to us of a leader*).

653. Verbs sometimes take an infinitive or clause as object; e. g.,

1. *Cūpīt pūgnārē, he desires (what?) to fight*.

2. *Spērō tē essē beātūm, I hope (what?) that you are happy*.

3. *Nesciō undē sōl ignēm hābeāt, I know not (what?) whence the sun derives its fire*.

654. RULE XXVIII. *Infinitive as Object*.—The infinitive mood, either alone or with other words connected with it, may be used as the object of a verb. (See examples above.)

REM.—The infinitive as *object* is used chiefly after verbs of *perceiving, declaring, desiring*, and the like.

655. RULE XXIX. *Subject of Infinitive*.—The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative; e. g., *Spērō tē essē beātūm, I hope you are happy*.

REM.—In this example *te*, which is the subject of *essē*, is put in the accusative according to rule.

656. RULE XXX. *Dependent Question as Object*.—An *indirect or dependent question* may be used as the object of a verb; e. g., *Nesciō undē sōl ignēm hābeāt, I know not whence the sun derives its fire*.

657. The verb in dependent questions is put in the subjunctive, as in the above example.

658. RULE XXXI. *Object after Passive Verbs*.—Verbs in the passive voice are followed by the same cases as in the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive; e. g., (*Act.*) *Balbūm furtī accūsant, they accuse Balbus of theft*; (*Pass.*) *Balbūs furtī accūsātūr, Balbus is accused of theft*.

659. RULE XXXII. *Agent of Passive Verbs*.—After passive verbs, the agent of the action is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *āb*; e. g., *Pučr ā Caiō dōcētūr, the boy is taught by Caius*; except,

The second periphrastic conjugation (425), which takes the dative of the agent; e. g., *Mihĭ scribendū est, I must write.*

660. RULE XXXIII. *Impersonal Passive Verbs.*—Verbs which have no direct object in the active voice, are only used impersonally in the passive; e. g., *Mihĭ crēditūr, I am believed* (lit., *it is believed to me*).

§ II. *Adverbial Modifiers.*

661. Verbs often take adverbial modifiers: these are,
 1) Adverbs.
 2) Adverbial expressions.

662. Verbs may be modified by adverbs; e. g., *Fortitēr pūgnāt, he fights bravely.*

See Rule VIII.

REM.—Adverbial modifiers are the same whether the verb is *active* or *passive*.

663. Verbs may be modified by adverbial expressions: these are,
 1) The oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions.
 2) Infinitives, or dependent propositions.

664. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) used as adverbial modifiers, may be referred to the following classes, viz.:

- 1) Adverbial expressions of *manner, means, &c.*
- 2) Adverbial expressions of *time.*
- 3) Adverbial expressions of *place.*
- 4) Miscellaneous adverbial expressions.

665. The oblique cases of nouns (and sometimes of adjectives) may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *manner, means, &c.*

666. RULE XXXIV. *Manner, Means, &c.*—The *manner* or *cause* of an action, and the *means* or *instrument* employed, are expressed by the ablative; e. g., *Dōmīnūm glādiō occidit, he killed his master with a sword.*

667. RULE XXXV. *Price.*—Price, when expressed by nouns, is usually put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, usually in the genitive; e. g., (1) *Avārūs pātriām aurō vendēt, the avaricious man will sell his country for gold*; (2) *Avārūs pēcūniām māgnī aestimāt, the avaricious man values money highly.*

668. The oblique cases of nouns may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *time*.

669. RULE XXXVI. *Time*.—Time *when* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; e. g., *Hiēmē ursūs dormīt, the bear sleeps in winter.*

670. RULE XXXVII. *Length of Time*.—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g., *Caiūs annūm ūnūm vixīt, Caius lived one year*

671. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *place*.

672. RULE XXXVIII.—The name of a town where any thing is, or is done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive, otherwise in the ablative; e. g., (1) *Caiūs Cortōnae vixīt, Caius lived at Cortona*; (2) *Caiūs Tibūrē vixīt, Caius lived at Tibur.*

673. RULE XXXIX.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town, is generally put in the ablative with a preposition; e. g., *Ursūs in antrō dormīt, the bear sleeps in a cave.*

674. RULE XL.—After verbs of motion,

1) The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is expressed by the accusative without a preposition, otherwise by the accusative with *onē*; e. g., (1) *Rōmām vēnīrē, to come to Rome*; (2) *In Itāliām vēnīrē, to come into Italy.*

2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition, otherwise by the ablative with *onē*; e. g., (1) *Rōmā vēnīrē, to come from Rome*; (2) *Ab Itāliā vēnīrē, to come from Italy.*

675. RULE XLI.—*Dōmūs* and *rūs*, together with the genitives *bellī*, *hūmā*, and *mīlītiāe*, are used like names of towns; e. g., *Caiūs rūrē rēdiīt, Caius returned from the country*; *Balbūs ēt dōmī ēt mīlītiāe fuit, Balbus was with me both at home and on service.*

676. RULE XLII.—The supine in *ūm*, as a verbal noun in the accusative, follows verbs of motion to express the purpose or object

of that motion; e. g., *Mittit lēgātōs pacēm pētītūm*, *he sends ambassadors to sue for peace.*

677. The ablative absolute and the oblique cases of nouns with prepositions are used to express various adverbial relations.

678. RULE XLIII. *Ablative Absolute.*—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence, are put in the ablative absolute; e. g., *Caesār victīs hostībūs*, *Caesar having conquered his enemies* (or, *when he had conquered*; lit., *his enemies being conquered*).

REM.—The ablative absolute generally expresses either the adverbial relation of *time* (as in the above example) or that of *cause*; sometimes, however, it adds an attendant circumstance.

679. RULE XLIV. *Prepositions with Accusative.*—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., *Ad*, *adversūs*, *antē*, *āpūd*, *circā* or *circūm*, *cīs* or *cītrā*, *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *infā*, *intēr*, *intrā*, *juxtā*, *ōb*, *pēnēs*, *pēr*, *pōnē*, *post*, *praetēr*, *prōpē*, *propētēr*, *sēcundūm*, *sūprā*, *trans*, *ultrā*, *versūs* (*rare*).

680. RULE XLV. *Prepositions with Ablative.*—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., *A* (*āb* or *abs*), *absquē*, *cōrām*, *cūm*, *dē*, *ē* or *ex*, *pālām*, *prae*, *prō*, *sīnē*, *tēnūs*.

681. RULE XLVI. *Prepositions with Accusative or Ablative.*—The five prepositions, *clām*, *īn*, *sūb*, *subtēr*, and *sūpēr*, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.

REM. 1.—*In* and *sūb* govern the accusative in answer to *whither* (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to *where* (i. e. after verbs of rest). *Subtēr* generally takes the accusative. *Sūpēr* takes the accusative after verbs of motion, and also when it signifies *upon*, and the ablative when it signifies *on* or *of* (as of a subject spoken or written about).

REM. 2.—Prepositions in composition often govern the same cases as when they stand alone.

682. Verbs may be modified by infinitives or by dependent propositions.

683. RULE XLVII. *Infinitive as Modifier of Verb.*—The infinitive mood may be used after verbs denoting *custom*, *ability*, and the like; e. g., *Nōn faciēre possūm*, *I am not able to do*, &c.

684. Dependent propositions, as adverbial modifiers, are gene-

rally introduced by conjunctions, and express a great variety of relations, as *time, place, manner, condition, &c.*

685. Dependent propositions take the verb,

- 1) Sometimes in the indicative; e. g., *Itěr fáciěbám, quým hás littěrás dábam, I was making a journey when I gave these letters.*
- 2) But more commonly in the subjunctive; e. g., *Sí quíd háběāt, dábít, if he has any thing, he will give it.*

SECTION V.—MODIFIERS OF ADVERBS.

686. Adverbs are modified by other adverbs; e. g., *Sătís běně scripsít, he has written sufficiently well.*

687. Prepositions and conjunctions are connectives, and neither modify nor are modified.

688. Interjections are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address, and have no grammatical influence upon the rest of the sentence.

CHAPTER III.

USE OF MOODS, PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

689. THE indicative is used in positive assertions; e. g., *Puěr hūdít, the boy plays.*

REM.—The indicative is commonly used in principal propositions, but sometimes in dependent ones.

690. The subjunctive is used both in principal and dependent propositions.

691. I. In principal propositions the subjunctive is used,

- 1) To express a wish or a command; e. g., *Scribăt, he may write, may he write, or let him write.*
- 2) To express an affirmation *doubtfully or conditionally*; e. g., *Dărět, he would give it (i. e. if he had it, perhaps).*

692. II. In dependent propositions.

- 1) With *út, ně, quō, quĕn, quōmĕnĕs*, to express *purpose or*

- consequence ; e. g., *Vēnīt ūt scribāt, he has come to write ; Caiō nihil obstat quōmīnūs sīt beātūs, nothing prevents Caius from being happy (by which he should be less happy).*
- 2) With *quūm* (*cūm*), when it introduces a *cause* or *reason*, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another ; e. g., *Quae cūm itā sint, since these things are so.*
 - 3) With *licēt*, although, *quāsī, tanquā, ac sī, as if, dūm, mōdō, dummodō*, provided, if only, *quamvīs*, however much, however ; e. g., *Imprōbūs itā vivit, quāsī nesciāt, &c., the wicked (man) lives, as if he did not know, &c. ; Nēmō, quamvīs sīt locūplēs, no one, however wealthy he may be.*
 - 4) In conditional sentences, to represent the condition either as *simply possible* or as *impossible* ; e. g., *Sī quīd hābeāt, dābit, if he has any thing, he will give it. Sī quīd hāberēt, dārēt, if he had any thing, he would give it.*
 - 5) In *indirect* or *dependent* questions ; e. g., *Nesciō undē sōl ignēm hābeāt, I know not whence the sun derives its fire.*
 - 6) In relative clauses, (1) to express *purpose* or *result*, and (2) to define an indefinite antecedent ; e. g., (1) *Lēgatōs mīserunt quī dīcerent, they sent ambassadors to say ;* (2) *Sunt quī pūtent, there are (some) who think.*

693. *Subjunctive Tenses in Dependent Propositions.*—The subjunctive, (1) when dependent upon a present tense (*pres., perf. def., or fut.*) is put in the *present* to denote an incomplete action, and in the *perfect* to denote a completed action ; and (2) when dependent upon a past tense (*imperf., perf. indef., or pluperf.*), in the *imperfect* to denote an incomplete action, and in the *pluperfect* to denote a completed action ; e. g.,

1. *Nesciō quīd dīcāt, I know not what he is saying.*
2. *Nesciō quīd dixērīt, I know not what he said.*
3. *Nescīvīt quīd dīcērēt, I knew not what he said.*
4. *Nescīvīt quīd dixissēt, I knew not what he had said.*

694. The imperative is used to express a command ; e. g., *Portās claudē, shut the gates.*

695. The infinitive, which expresses the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number, is used,

- 1) As the subject of another verb ; e. g., *Difficilē est iudicārē, it is difficult to judge.*

- 2) As the object of another verb; e. g., Cŭpiŏ sàpěřě, *I desire to be wise.*
- 3) As the modifier of an adjective or verb; e. g., (1) Dignŭs àmàri, *worthy to be loved*; (2) Nŏn fàcěřě possŭm, *I am not able to do, &c.*

696. Participles, gerunds, and supines are followed by the various cases of nouns like the other parts of verbs. In regard to their own government, it must be observed,

- 1) That participles, like adjectives, agree with substantives.
- 2) That gerunds are governed like the same cases of substantives.
- 3) That supines, as verbal nouns, are governed like the same cases of other nouns.



DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

ENGLISH IDIOM.

1 To think nothing of.

2. To value highly.*

3. To think little of. † }
To hold cheap. }

4. *No* stability.

Some time.

Much good.

How much pleasure.

LATIN IDIOM.

To reckon at nothing (*nihilī ducere* or *facere*).

To value at a high price (*magnī aestimāre*).

To value at a little price (*parvī aestimāre*).

Nothing of stability (*nihil stabilitātis*).

Something of time (*aliquid temporis*).

Much of good (*multum boni*).

How much of pleasure (*quantum voluptātis*).

REM.—Hence *no*, *some* (when they denote *quantity*, not *number*), *much*, *how much*, are to be translated by *nihil*, *aliquid*, *multum*, *quantum*, followed by the *gen.*

5. He did it *unwillingly*.

He *unwilling* did it.

6. *It* is disgraceful to lie.

To lie is disgraceful.

7. It is the *part*
——— *duty*
——— *business*
——— *mark*
——— *character* } of a wise man.

It is of a wise man.

8. To condemn a man *to death*.

To condemn a man of the head.

9. As many as *possible*.
——— *he can or could.* }

As the most (*quam plurimī*).

The greatest *possible*.
——— *he can or could.* }

As the greatest (*quam maximus*).

[That is, as many as the most: as great as greatest, &c.]

10. On the *top* of the mountain.
In the *middle* of the water.

On the mountain *highest*.
In the water *middle* (in *summo monte*; in *media aqua*).

* To value *very highly* (*maximī aestimāre*).

† The substantive will follow in the *accusative* notwithstanding the *of* for that has nothing to do with the Latin verb.

ENGLISH IDIOM.

LATIN IDIOM.

- | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---|-----------------------------|--|--|--|------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|--|---------------|--|---|--|---|--|--|
| 11. Is going to bed. | Is going <i>to lie down</i> (<i>cuŕitum</i> , sup.) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 12. It is hard <i>to say</i> . | It is hard <i>in saying</i> (<i>difficile est dictu</i> ; supine). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 13. Whilst they were (are, &c.)
playing. | During playing (<i>inter ludendum</i>). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 14. The intention of writing a letter. | The intention of a letter <i>to-be-written</i> (<i>scribendae epistolae</i>). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 15. We must cultivate virtue. | Virtue is <i>to-be-cultivated</i> (<i>colenda est virtus</i>). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 16. Caius must write. | It is <i>to-be-written</i> by Caius (<i>Caius scribendum est</i>). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 17. We must believe Caius. | It is <i>to-be-believed</i> to Caius (<i>credendum est Caio</i>). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 18. The ways of expressing the
<i>purpose</i> are, | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| He comes to see the games. | <table border="0"> <tr> <td style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">{</td> <td style="vertical-align: middle;">(a) Venit ut ludos spectet.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="vertical-align: middle;">(b) Venit ludos spectatum (<i>sup.</i>).</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="vertical-align: middle;">(c) Venit ludos spectaturus.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="vertical-align: middle;">(d) Venit ad ludos spectandos.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="vertical-align: middle;"> To which add,</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="vertical-align: middle;">(e) Venit causa (<i>for the purpose</i>)
 ludorum spectandorum; and</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="vertical-align: middle;">(f) Instead of <i>ut</i>, the relative
 may be used:</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="vertical-align: middle;"> He sent ambassadors, <i>qui pacem</i>
 petèrent (<i>to sue for peace</i>).</td> </tr> </table> | { | (a) Venit ut ludos spectet. | | (b) Venit ludos spectatum (<i>sup.</i>). | | (c) Venit ludos spectaturus. | | (d) Venit ad ludos spectandos. | | To which add, | | (e) Venit causa (<i>for the purpose</i>)
ludorum spectandorum; and | | (f) Instead of <i>ut</i> , the relative
may be used: | | He sent ambassadors, <i>qui pacem</i>
petèrent (<i>to sue for peace</i>). |
| { | (a) Venit ut ludos spectet. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | (b) Venit ludos spectatum (<i>sup.</i>). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | (c) Venit ludos spectaturus. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | (d) Venit ad ludos spectandos. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | To which add, | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | (e) Venit causa (<i>for the purpose</i>)
ludorum spectandorum; and | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | (f) Instead of <i>ut</i> , the relative
may be used: | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | He sent ambassadors, <i>qui pacem</i>
petèrent (<i>to sue for peace</i>). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 19. a) I may go. | Mihi ire licet (<i>it is permitted to me to go</i>). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| b) I might <i>have gone</i> . | Mihi ire licuit (<i>it was permitted to me to go</i>). | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 20. a) I ought to go. | Me ire oportet. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| b) I ought to have gone. | Me ire oportuit. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

CAUTIONS.

- a. *Him, her, them* (or *he, she, they*, when they are to be translated by the accusative), must be translated into Latin by the proper case of *suī*, when they and the nominative of the verb stand for the same person. Also, in the same case, *his, hers, its, theirs*, must be translated by *suūs*.
- b. In a sentence with *that* dependent on a past tense, the perfect is to be translated into Latin by the present infinitive, whenever the notion expressed by it is not to be described as *over before the time* of the principal verb.
- c. *Would, should*, after a past tense are future forms:
- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| } | He says that he will come. |
| } | He said that he would come. |
- d. *Thing* should be expressed by *res* (fem.), when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether *men* or *things* were meant:
Thus, of many things, not *multōrum*, but *multārum rerum*.
- e. *Cum* is written *after*, and as one word with the ablatives *me, te, &c.*:
mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum.
- f. Many English verbs become transitive by the addition of a preposition; for instance, *to smile at, &c.*
- g. *Such* in English is often used where *size* is meant, rather than *quality*. It should then be translated into Latin by *tantus, quantus*; not *talīs, qualis*.
- h. *That* or *those*, when it stands for a substantive which has been expressed in a preceding clause, is not to be translated.
- i. When *that* introduces a consequence, *that not* is *ut non*, not *ne*.
- | | | |
|-----------------|---|---|
| <i>That—not</i> | } | for a purpose <i>ne</i> . |
| | } | for a consequence . . . <i>ut non</i> . |
- j. After verbs of *fearing*, the Eng. *future* and the *participial substantive* are translated into Latin by the present or imperfect subjunctive, with *ut* or *nē*.
- k. *Who, what, which*, are often dependent interrogatives, especially after verbs of *asking, knowing, doubting, &c.*

- l. *May, might*, sometimes mean *can, could*, and must be translated by *possūm*.
- m. The *perf. infin.* must be translated into Latin by the *present infin.* after *might, could, ought*, unless the action is to be represented as *over* before the time to which *might, could, &c.* refer.
- n. In English, substantives standing before and spoken of other substantives, are used *adjectively*, and must be translated into Latin by adjectives.
- o. *What* is sometimes used for *how* (*quam*); sometimes for *how great* (*quantus*).
- p. *For* and *as* are to be untranslated, when the noun that follows can be placed in *apposition* to another noun in the sentence.
- q. When *one, two, &c.* mean *one, two, &c. apiece, or for each*, they must be translated by the *distributive numerals, singŭli, bini, &c.*
- r. *I have to do it*, must be translated by the part. in *du*.
 (Eng.) With whom we *have* to live.
 (Lat.) With whom *it is to-be-lived* (*quibuscum vivendum est*).
- s. *It is*, followed by what is in form the *infn. pass.*, generally expresses *necessity, fitness, or something intended*.
- t. But *is to be* sometimes means, not *necessity, fitness, or intention*, but *possibility*; as, 'the passage *is to be found* in the fifth book,' = the passage *may or can* be found in the fifth book.
- u. A *present participle* must be translated into Latin by a *perfect participle* (or its substitute, *quum* with *perf.* or *pluperf. subj.*) when the action expressed by it must be *over*, before that expressed by the verb *begins*.
- v. The English *present part. act.* is generally translated by the Latin *past partic.*, when the verb is *deponent*.
- w. When the action was not done *in*, but only near a town, *at* must be translated by *ad* or *apud*.
- x. *One* often means *some one* (*aliquis*) or *a certain one* (*quidam*).
- y. *Will* and *would, will not* and *would not*, are often principal verbs, to be translated by *velle* and *nolle* respectively.
 They are to be so translated when for
will, *would*, we may substitute
is (are, &c.) *willing, was* (were, &c.) *willing*.
- z. When an English word is followed by a preposition, consider whether the Latin word to be used is followed by a preposition or by a case; and then by what preposition or what case.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A.

A, āb, abs (*prep. with abl.*), from, by.

Abirē, i, it, to go away, depart.

Absolvērē, v, ūt, to acquit.

Ac, and.

Accēdērē, cess, cess, to approach.

Accipērē (iō), cēp, cept, to receive, accept.

Accipitēr, trīs, hawk.

Accūsārē, āv, āt, to accuse.

Acēr, ācrīs, ācrē, sharp, severe.

Achillēs, īs, Achilles, a Grecian hero.

Acies, eī, line of battle.

Ad (*prep. with acc.*), to.

Addūcērē (*ad and ducere*), dux, duct, to lead to.

Adeō, so, in such a manner.

Adessē (*ad and esse*), fu, fūt, to be present.

Adjūmentūm, ī, aid, help.

Adjūvārē, jūv, jūt, to aid, help.

Admirātiō, ōnis, admiration.

Admōnērē, u, it, to admonish, warn.

Adūlātiō, ōnis, flattery.

Adūlātōr, ōris, flatterer.

Adventūs (*advenire*), ūs, approach.

Aedificārē, āv, āt, to build.

Aedificiūm, ī, building, edifice.

Aenēas, ae, Aeneas, a Trojan prince.

Aequitās, ātis, equity, justice.

Aestās, ātis, summer.

Aestimārē, āv, āt, to value, prize; māgnī aestimārē, to prize highly.

Afferrē (*ad and ferre*), attūl, allāt, to bring to.

Agēr, āgrī, field.

Agērē, ēg, act, to drive, lead, do; grātiās āgērē, to render thanks.

Agnūs, ī, lamb.

Agricolā, ae, husbandman.

Aliquandō, some time.

Aliquīs, quā, quīd, any one, any some; āliquīd tempōris, some time.

Aliūs, ā, ūd (113. R.), other.

Alpēs, iūm, the Alps.

Altūs, ā, ūm, high, lofty.

Amārē, āv, āt, to love.

Ambitūs, ūs, bribery.

Ambulārē, āv, it, to walk.

Amēricānūs, ā, ūm, American.

Amicitia, ae, friendship.

Amicus, ī, friend.

Amittērē, mīs, miss, to lose.

Amphibiūm, ī, an amphibious animal.

Amplius (*adv.*), more, further.

Amplūs, ā, ūm, ample, large.

An, interrog. part., used in double questions, 482.

Anchisēs, ae, Anchises, the father of Aeneas.

Anguīs, īs, m. or f., snake.

Angustiae, ārum, a narrow pass, defile.

Animāl, ālis, animal.

Animūs, ī, mind, soul.

Annuērē, nu, nūt, to assent, to give assent.

Annūs, ī, year.

Antē (*prep. with acc.*), before.

Antea (*adv.*), before.

Antrūm, ī, cave.

Anulūs, ī, ring.

Apērērē, ēru, ert, to uncover, to open.

Appropinquārē, āv, āt, to approach.

Aquā, ae, water.

Aquārī, āt, to bring water.

Aquilā, ae, eagle.

Arā, ae, altar.

Arārē, āv, āt, to plough.

Arbōr, ōris, f., tree.

Argentūm, ī, silver.

Armīgēr, ī, *armor-bearer*.
 Arrīpērē (iō), īpu, ept, *to snatch, seize*.
 Ars, artīs, *art*.
 Arx, arcīs, *citadel, tower*.
 Ascāniūs, ī, *Ascanius, son of Aeneas*.
 Asīnūs, ī, *ass*.
 Aspergērē (or adspērgērē), ers, ers, *to sprinkle*.
 At, *but*.
 Athēnae, ārūm, *Athens, city of Greece*.
 Athēniensīs (Athēnae), ě, *Athenian, pl., the Athenians*.
 Atquī (conj.), *but, now (as used in reasoning)*.
 Attāmēn, *but, but yet*.
 Attingērē (ad and tangēre), tīg, tact, *to attain, reach*.
 Auctōr, ōrīs, *author*.
 Auctumnūs, ī, *autumn*.
 Audax, ācis, *daring, audacious*.
 Audīrē, īv, īt, *to hear*.
 Augērē, aux, auct, *to increase*.
 Aureūs (aurūm), ā, ūm, *golden*.
 Aurūm, ī, *gold*.
 Aut, or; aut—aut, *either—or*.
 Autēm, *but*.
 Auxīliūm, ī, *aid*.
 Avāriciā, ae, *avarice*.
 Avārūs, ā, ūm, *avaricious*.
 Avīs, īs, *bird*.

B.

Balbūs, ī, *Balbus, a man's name*.
 Barbā, ae, *beard*.
 Beātē (beātus), *happily*.
 Beātūs, ā, ūm, *happy*.
 Bellūm, ī, *war*.
 Bēnē, *well*.
 Bēnēficiūm, ī, *benefit*.
 Bēnignūs, ā, ūm, *kind*.
 Bibērē, bib, bibīt, *to drink*.
 Bienniūm, ī, *two years, space of two years*.
 Bōnūs, ā, ūm, *good*.
 Brāchiūm, ī, *arm*.
 Brēvis, ě, *short*.
 Brūtūs, ī, *Brutus, a Roman consul*.

C.

Cādērē, cēcīd, cās, *to fall*.
 Caecūs, ā, ūm, *blind*.
 Caesār, ārīs, *Caesar, a distinguished Roman general*.
 Caiūs, ī, *Caius, a man's name*.
 Cālāmītās, ātis, *misfortune, calamity*.
 Candīdūs, ā, ūm, *white*.
 Cānērē, cēcīn, cant, *to sing*.
 Cānis, īs, c., *dog*.
 Cantārē (canēre), āv, āt, *to sing*.
 Cāpērē (iō), cēp, capt, *to take, receive*.
 Captīvūs, ā, ūm, *capt, alive*.
 Cāpūt, ītis, *head; cāpītīs, of the head, to death*.
 Carpērē, carps, carpt, *to gather, to pluck, to card*.
 Carthāgīniensīs (Carthāgo), ě, *Carthaginian*.
 Carthāgō, īnis, *Carthage, an ancient city in northern Africa*.
 Castīgārē, āv, āt, *to chastise*.
 Castrā, ōrūm, *camp*.
 Cātēnā, ae, *chain*.
 Cāvērē, cāv, caut, *to take care, to be on one's guard against*.
 Cēlēbēr, brīs, brē, *celebrated*.
 Cēlērītēr, *quickly*.
 Certāmēn, īnis, *contest*.
 Certūs, ā, ūm, *certain*.
 Christianūs, ī, *Christian*.
 Cībūs, ī, *food*.
 Cīcērō, ōnis, *Cicero, the great Roman orator*.
 Cīngērē, nx, nct, *to surround*.
 Cīrcumdārē (circum and dāre), dēd, dāt, *to surround*.
 Cīs, *on this side*.
 Cīvilīs (cīvīs), ě, *civil*.
 Cīvis, īs, *citizen*.
 Cīvītās (cīvīs), ātis, *state*.
 Claudērē, claus, claus, *to shut*.
 Clēmēns, entīs, *mild, merciful*.
 Clēmēntiā, ae, *mildness, clemency*.
 Clīpeūs, ī, *shield*.
 Coelūm, ī, *heaven, the heavens*.
 Coenā, ae, *supper, feast*.
 Cōgītārē, āv, āt, *to think, to think about*.
 Cōgnītūs, ā, ūm, *known*.

- Cōgnoscērě, nōv, nīt, *to ascertain.*
 Cōlērě, cōlu, cult, *to till, cultivate, practise.*
 Collōquiūm, ī, *conference.*
 Cōlōr ōris, *color.*
 Cōlumbā, ae, *dove.*
 Committērě, mīs, miss, *to engage; proeliūm committērě, to engage battle.*
 Compārārě, āv, āt, *to procure, raise, levy.*
 Compellērě, pūl, puls, *to compel, drive.*
 Compescērě, escu, *to restrain, repress.*
 Complērě, ēv, ēt, *to fill.*
 Comprēhendērě, nd, ns, *to arrest.*
 Concertārě, āv, āt, *to contend, quarrel.*
 Conciliūm, ī, *council, meeting.*
 Conclērě (con [cūm] and clārě), dīd, dīt, *to build, found.*
 Conditīō, ōnis, *condition, terms.*
 Confūgērě (iō), fūg, *to flee for refuge.*
 Conjux, ūgīs, *spouse, wife, husband.*
 Conservārě, āv, āt, *to preserve.*
 Consiliūm, ī, *advice, instruction.*
 Conspicērě (iō), spex, spect, *to see, discover.*
 Constāt (impers.), *it is known, is an admitted fact.*
 Constitūērě, u, ūt, *to arrange, appoint.*
 Construērě, strux, struct, *to build, construct.*
 Consūl, ūlis, *consul, the Roman chief magistrate.* [advice.
 Consulērě, sūlu, sult, *to consult, ask*
 Contemnērě, ps, pt, *to despise.*
 Contentūs, ā, ūm, *contented, content.*
 Continērě, u, tent, *to restrain, confine.*
 Continuūs, ā, ūm, *successive.*
 Contrā (prep. with acc.), *against.*
 Convēnīrě (cōn [cūm] and venīre), vēn, vent, *to come together.*
 Convertērě, t, s, *to turn, convert.*
 Cōpia, ārūm, *forces.*
 Cōquērě, x, ct, *to cook, to bake, to ripen.*
 Cōr, cordīs, n., *heart.*
 Cōrām (prep. with abl.), *before, in presence of; adv., openly, in person.*
- Cōrōnā, ae, *crown, garland.*
 Corpūs, ōris, *body.*
 Corrigērě, rex, rect, *to correct.*
 Corrupērě, rūp, rupt, *to mislead, corrupt.*
 Crābrō, ōnis, *wasp.*
 Crēbēr, brā, brūm, *frequent.*
 Crēdērě, crēdīd, crēdīt, *to believe, put confidence in.*
 Crescērě, crēv, crēt, *to increase, to wax (as moon).*
 Culpā, ae, *fault, blame.*
 Cūm (prep. with abl.), *with.*
 Cunctūs, ā, ūm, *all as a whole.*
 Cūpērě (iō), īv (i), īt, *to desire.*
 Cūpiditās, ātis, *desire, passion.*
 Cūpidūs, ā, ūm, *desirous of.*
 Cūrārě (cura), āv, āt, *to take care of.*
 Currērě, cūcurr, curs, *to run.*
 Currūs, ūs, *chariot.*
 Custōdirě (custos), īv, īt, *to guard.*
- D.
- Damnārě, āv, āt, *to condemn.*
 Dārě, dēd, dāt, *to give.*
 Dē (prep. with abl.), *from, about, concerning.*
 Dēcēm, ten.
 Dēcernērě, crēv, crēt, *to decree, decide.*
 Dēcīmūs, ā, ūm, *tenth.*
 Dēcīpērě (iō), cēp, cept, *to deceive.*
 Dēdērě, dēdīd, dēdīt, *to surrender.*
 Dēfendērě, d, s, *to defend.*
 Dēglūbērě, ups, upt, *to skin, flay.*
 Dēlērě, lēv, lēt, *to destroy.*
 Dēmōnstrārě, āv, āt, *to show, demonstrate.*
 Dēprēhendērě, d, s, *to seize, catch.*
 Dēterrērě, u, īt, *to deter, prevent.*
 Dēvincērě, vīc, vict, *to conquer.*
 Dīcērě, dix, dict, *to say.*
 Dīdō, ōnis, *Dido, the foundress of Carthage.*
 Dīēs, ēī, *day.*
 Dīffīcīlis, ē, *difficult.*
 Dīgnūs, ā, ūm, *worthy.*
 Dīlāniārě, āv, āt, *to tear in pieces.*
 Dīligens, tīs, *diligent.*

Diligentia (*diligens*), ae, *diligence*.
 Dimittērē, mīs, miss, *to dismiss*.
 Discērē, didic, *to learn*.
 Discipulūs, ī, *pupil*.
 Disjungērē, x, ct, *to separate*.
 Dividērē, vīs, vīs, *to divide*.
 Divinūs, ā, ūm, *divine*.
 Divitiācūs, ī, *Divitiacus, a man's name*.
 Dōcērē, u, t, *to teach*.
 Dōlērē, u, it, *to grieve*.
 Dōlōr, ōrīs, *pair, grief, sorrow*.
 Dōmīnūs, ī, *master as owner*.
 Dōmūs, ūs or ī, f., *house; dōmī, at home*.
 Dōnārē, āv, āt, *to give, present*.
 Dōnūm, ī, *gift*.
 Dormīrē, iv, it, *to sleep*.
 Dūbītārē, āv, āt, *to doubt*.
 Dūcentī, ae, ā, *two hundred*.
 Dūcērē, dux, duct, *to lead*.
 Dūm, *while*.
 Dummodō, *if, but, provided*.
 Duō, ae, ō, *two*.
 Duōdēcīm, *twelve*.
 Dūrārē, āv, āt, *to last*.
 Dux, dūcīs, *leader, guide*.

E.

Edērē, ēd, ēs (420), *to eat*.
 Edūcērē (*e and ducere*), dux, duct, *to lead forth*.
 Effīcērē (iō), fēc, fect, *to effect, accomplish*.
 Egō, meī, &c., *I*.
 Elēgantiā, ae, *elegance*.
 Elēphās, antīs, m., *elephant*.
 Emērē, em, empty, *to buy, purchase*.
 Enīm, *for, indeed*.
 Enūmērārē, āv, āt, *to enumerate*.
 Epistolā, ae, *letter, epistle*.
 Epitōmē, ēs, *abridgment*.
 Equēs, itīs, *horseman*.
 Equitātūs, ūs, *cavalry*.
 Equūs, ī, *horse*.
 Ergā (*prep. with acc.*), *towards*.
 Ergō (*conj.*), *therefore*.
 Errārē, āv, āt, *to err*.
 Erūdīrē, iv, it, *to instruct*.
 Essē, fu, fūt, *to be; est, is, it is*.
 Et, *and; et—et, both—and*.

Ētiām, *also, even; ētiām atquē ētiām, again and again*.
 Evertērē, rt, rs, *to pull down, to overthrow*.
 Evōlārē, āv, āt, *to fly away, to flee from*.
 Ex (*prep. with abl.*), *from*.
 Excitārē, āv, āt, *to excite, arouse*.
 Exclāmārē, āv, āt, *to exclaim, cry out*.
 Excrūciārē, āv, āt, *to torture*.
 Exercērē, u, it, *to practise, exercise*.
 Exercitūs, ūs, *army*.
 Exōrārē, āv, āt, *to supplicate*.
 Expellērē, pūl, puls, *to expel, banish*.
 Expōnērē, pōsu, pōsīt, *to set forth, explain*.
 Expūgnārē (*ex and pūgnāre*), āv, āt, *to storm*.
 Exspectārē, āv, āt, *to expect*.

F.

Fābulōsūs, ā, ūm (*fabūla*), *fabulous*.
 Fācērē (iō), fēc, fact, *to do, make, act*.
 Fāciēs, eī, *face, appearance*.
 Fācilīs, ē, *easy*.
 Fallax (*fallere*), ācīs, *false, deceptive*.
 Fāmēs, īs, *hunger*.
 Faustulūs, ī, *Faustulus, an Italian shepherd*.
 Fāvērē, fāv, faut, *to favor*.
 Fēlicitās, ātīs, *happiness*.
 Ferrē, tūl, lāt (414), *to bear*.
 Ferrūm, ī, *iron*.
 Fīdēlīs, ē, *faithful*.
 Fīdēs, eī, *faith, fidelity; fīdēm viōlārē, to break one's word*.
 Fīērī, fact (416), *to become, be made*.
 Fīgūrā, ae, *figure*.
 Fīliā, ae (D. pl. *fīliābūs*), *daughter*.
 Fīliūs, ī, *son*.
 Fīnīrē (*finis*), iv, it, *to finish*.
 Fīnīs, īs (*m. and f. sing., m. pl.*), *end*.
 Fīrmūs, ā, ūm, *firm*.
 Flāgītīum, ī, *crime*.
 Flērē, flēv, flēt, *to weep*.
 Flōrērē (*flos*), u, *to flourish, bloom*.
 Flōrescērē (*florere*), *to begin to bloom*.

Flōs, ōris, *flower*.
 Fluērē, x, x, *to flow*.
 Flūmēn, inīs, *river, stream*.
 Foedūs, ēris, *treaty*.
 Fortīs, ě, *brave*.
 Fortitēr (*fortis*), *bravely*.
 Fortunā, ae, *fortune*.
 Frangērē, frēg, fract, *to break*.
 Frātēr, trīs, *brother*.
 Fraudārē, āv, āt, *to defraud*.
 Frētūs, ā, ūm, *relying on*.
 Frīgūs, ōris, *cold*.
 Frūtex, icīs, m., *shrub*.
 Fūgā, ae, *flight*.
 Fūgārē (*fūgā*), āv, āt, *to put to flight*.
 Fūgērē (iō), fūg, fūgīt, *to flee*.
 Fundūs, ī, *estate, farm*.
 Fungī, funct, *to discharge, fulfil*.
 Furtūm, ī, *theft*.
 Futūrūs, ā, ūm, *future*.

G.

Gallīcūs (*Galliā*), ā, ūm, *Gallic*.
 Gallūs, ī, *a Gaul*.
 Gēnēr, ī, *son-in-law*.
 Gēnūs, ēris, *kind, nature*.
 Gērērē, gess, gest, *to carry on, to wage (as war)*.
 Germāniā, ae, *Germany*.
 Glādiūs, ī, *sword*.
 Glōriā, ae, *glory*.
 Graeci, ōrūm, *the Greeks*.
 Grānūm, ī, *grain*.
 Grātiā, ae, *gratitude, favor; pl., thanks*.
 Grāvīs, ě, *heavy*.
 Grex, ēgīs, m. *flock, herd*.

H.

Hābērē, u, it, *to have*.
 Hābitārē (*habere*), āv, āt, *to inhabit*.
 Haedūs, ī, *kid*.
 Hannibāl, ālis, *Hannibal*.
 Hastā, ae, *spear*.
 Hērōs, ōis, *hero*.
 Hesternūs, ā, ūm, *of yesterday*.
 Hīc, haec, hōc, *this*.
 Hiems, ěmīs, *winter*.
 Histōriā, ae, *history*.

Hōmō, inīs, *man*.
 Hōnōr, ōris, *honor*.
 Hortūlus (*hortūs*), *little garden*.
 Hortūs, ī, *garden*.
 Hostīs, īs, *enemy*.
 Hūmānūs, ā, ūm, *human, natural to man*.
 Hūmērūs, ī, *shoulder*.

I

Ibī, *there*.
 Idēm, eādēm, idem, *same*.
 Ideō, *therefore*.
 Igitūr, *therefore*.
 Ignārūs, ā, ūm, *ignorant*.
 Ignāvūs, ā, ūm, *indolent, cowardly*.
 Ignīs, is, m., *fire, heat*.
 Ignōrātiō, ōnis, *ignorance*.
 Ignoscērē, ōv, ōt, *to pardon*.
 Illē, illā, illūd, *that, he, she, it*.
 Illustrārē, āv, āt, *to illumine, to enlighten*.
 Immensūs, ā, ūm, *immense*.
 Immergērē, rs, rs, *to plunge into*.
 Immōbilīs, ě, *immovable*.
 Immortālīs, ě, *immortal*.
 Impēdirē, īv, it, *to impede, hinder*.
 Impendērē, *to overhang, threaten*.
 Impērārē, āv, āt, *to command; imperātā, ōrūm, commands*.
 Impērātor (*impērāre*), ōris, *commander*.
 Impētūs, ūs, *attack*.
 Impiūs, ā, ūm, *impious*.
 Imprōbūs, ā, ūm, *bad, wicked*.
 Imprūdēns, entīs, *imprudent*.
 In (*prep. with acc. or abl.*), with acc., *into, to, against; with abl., in*.
 Incendērē, d, s, *to set on fire, to burn*.
 Inceptūm, ī, *beginning*.
 Incertūs, ā, ūm, *uncertain*.
 Incōgnītūs, ā, ūm, *unknown*.
 Incōlā (*in and colere*), ae, *inhabitant*.
 Incōlūmīs, ě, *safe, uninjured*.
 Incrēdībilīs (*in and credere*), ě, *incredible*.
 Indicērē, dix, dict, *to declare (as war)*.
 Indignūs, ā, ūm, *unworthy*.
 Indoctūs, ā, ūm, *unlearned*.

Indulgērē, ls, lt, *to indulge.*
 Industriā, ae, *industry.*
 Inferrē, intūl, illāt (414), *to wage.*
 Inf̄rā (*prep. with acc.*), *below.*
 Infigērē, flīx, flīct, *to inflict.*
 Ingēniūm, ī, *talent, ability.*
 Injūriā, ae, *injury, wrong done.*
 Innocens, tīs, *innocent.*
 Innoxius, ā, ūm, *harmless.*
 Instruērē, strux, struct, *to arrange,*
array.
 Intelligērē, lex, lect, *to understand.*
 Int̄r (*prep. with acc.*), *between, dur-*
ing.
 Interdūm, *sometimes.*
 Interessē, fu, fūt, *to be engaged in.*
 Interficērē (iō), fēc, fect, *to kill.*
 Int̄rim, *in the mean time, mean-*
while.
 Intervallūm, ī, *distance, space.*
 Intrā (*prep. with acc.*), *within.*
 Inūtilis, ē, *useless.*
 Invādērē (*in and vādere*), vās, vās,
to invade.
 Invēnirē, vēn, vent, *to find.*
 Invīdērē, vīd, vīs, *to envy.*
 Invītūs, ā, ūm, *unwilling.*
 Ipsē, ā, ūm, *self, he himself.*
 Irā, ae, *anger.*
 Irē, iv, it, *to go.*
 Irritārē, āv, āt, *to irritate.*
 Is, eā, id, *he, she, it, that.*
 Istē, ā, ūd, *that.*
 Itāliā, ae, *Italy.*
 Itāquē, *therefore.*
 It̄r, it̄neris, *journey, way.*
 It̄rūm, *again.*

J.

Jūbērē, juss, juss, *to direct, order.*
 Jūcundūs, ā, ūm, *pleasant, delight-*
ful.
 Jūdex, icis, *judge.*
 Jūdicārē, āv, āt, *to judge.*
 Jūrārē, āv, āt, *to swear.*
 Justūs, ā, ūm, *just, fair.*

L.

Lābōr, ōris, *labor.*
 Lābōrārē, āv, āt, *to labor*
 Lānā, ae, *wool.*

Lātinūs, ī, *Latinus, a king of La-*
tium.
 Laudārē, āv, āt, *to praise.*
 Laus, dis, *praise.*
 Lāvārē, lāv, laut, *or lāvāt, to wash.*
 Lāviniā, ae, *Lavinia, daughter of*
Latinus.
 Lēgātūs, ī, *ambassador.*
 Lēgērē, lēg, lect, *to read.*
 Lēgiō, ōnis, *legion, body of foot.*
 Lēnis, ē, *mild, merciful.*
 Leō, ōnis, *lion.*
 Lex, lēgis, *law.*
 Lībēr, librī, *book.*
 Lībēr, ā, ūm, *free.*
 Lībērī, ōrūm, *children.*
 Licēt (impers. v.), *it is lawful.*
 Licēt, *although.*
 Līquescērē, līcu, *to melt.*
 Lītērae, ārūm (pl.), *letter, epistle.*
 Lōcūplēs, ētis, *wealthy, rich.*
 Lōcūs, ī (pl. lōcī or lōcā), *place.*
 Lōqui, lūcūt, *to speak.*
 Lūcērē, lux, *to shine.*
 Luctūs, ūs, *grief, sorrow.*
 Lūcūs, ī, *grove.*
 Lūdērē, lūs, lūs, *to play.*
 Lūdūs, ī, *play, sport.*
 Lūgērē, lux, *to grieve, mourn, weep*
for.
 Lūnā, ae, *moon.*
 Lūpūs, ī, *wolf.*
 Lusciniā, ae, *nightingale.*
 Lux, lūcis, *light.*

M.

Mācūlārē, āv, āt, *to stain, to blem-*
ish.
 Māgistēr, trī, *master as teacher.*
 Māgnitūdō (magnus), inīs, *greatness,*
size.
 Māgnūs, ā, ūm, *great, large; māgnī,*
at a great price, highly; māgnūm
est, it is a great thing.
 Majōr, ūs (comp. of magnus), *greater*
larger.
 Mālē (malus), *badly.*
 Mallē, mālu (410), *to prefer*
 Mālūm, ī, *evil, misfortune.*
 Mālūs, ā, ūm, *bad.*
 Mānērē, ns, ns, *to remain.*

Mānūs, ūs, *f.*, hand, force.
 Mārē, īs, sea.
 Mārīnūs, ā, ūm, marine, of the sea.
 Mātēr, trīs, mother.
 Mātrōnā, ae, matron.
 Maxīmūs, ā, ūm (*superl. of magnus*),
 greatest, very great; maximī, at
 a very great price.
 Mēdicūs, ī, physician.
 Mēdiūs, ā, ūm, middle, midst of, mid-
 dle of, 267.
 Mēl, mellīs, honey.
 Mendāciūm, lie, falsehood.
 Mens, tīs, mind, the reasoning fa-
 culty.
 Mensis, īs, m., month.
 Mētūērē, u, to fear.
 Mētūs, ūs, fear.
 Meūc, ā, ūm (*masc. voc. sing., mi*), my.
 Mīcārē, u, to glitter, shine.
 Milēs, itīs, soldier.
 Militiā, ae, military service; milī-
 tiae (*gen. sing.*), in war, on service.
 Millē, thousand.
 Mīnōr, ūs (*comp. of parvus*), smaller.
 Mirābilis, ē, wonderful.
 Mīsēr, ā, ūm, miserable, wretched.
 Mīsērēri, ert or ērit, to pity.
 Mīsērēt (*impers. verb*), it pities, one
 pities.
 Mittērē, mīs, miss, to send.
 Mōbilis, ē, movable.
 Mōdō, only.
 Mōnērē, u, it, to advise, admonish.
 Mons, tīs, m., mountain.
 Monstrārē, āv, āt, to show.
 Mordērē, mōmord, mors, to bite.
 Mors, tīs, death.
 Mortālis (mors), ē, mortal.
 Mōvērē, mōv, mōt, to move.
 Mūliēr, ēris, woman.
 Multitūdō (*multūs*), īis, multitude.
 Multūs, ā, ūm, much, many; multā
 (*neut. pl.*), many things; multūm
 bōnī, much good; multūm tem-
 pōris, much time.
 Mūrūs, ī, wall.
 Mūtārē, āv, āt, to change.

N.

Nām, for.
 Namquē, for.

Nārē, nāv, to swim.
 Narrārē, āv, āt, to relate, narrate.
 Narrātiō (*narrārē*), narration, nar-
 rative.
 Nascī, nāt, to be born.
 Nātiō, ōnis, nation.
 Nē, interrog. particle, 287 and 288.
 Nē (used with *imperat. and subj.*), not.
 Nēc, neither; nēc—nēc, neither—
 nor.
 Nēglīgērē, lex, lect, to disregard.
 Nēmō (īnis, not in good use), nobody,
 no one.
 Nēquidēm, not even, generally with
 the emphatic word between the
 two parts; as, nē pōpūlus quidēm,
 not even the people.
 Nērē, nēv, nēt, to spin.
 Nescīrē, īv, it, not to know, to be ig-
 norant of.
 Nidūs, ī, nest.
 Nihil, nothing.
 Nīmiūs, ā, ūm, too much, excessive.
 Nix, nivīs, snow.
 Nōcērē, u, it, to hurt.
 Nollē, nōlu (410), to be unwilling.
 Nōmēn, īnis, name.
 Nōn, not; nōn sōlūm—sēd ētiām,
 not only—but also.
 Nondūm, not yet.
 Nonnē, interrog. particle; expects
 ans, yes. 288, REM.
 Nostēr, trā, trūm, our.
 Nōvembēr, brīs (*abl. ī*), November.
 Nox, noctīs, night.
 Nūbēs, īs, cloud.
 Nullūs, ā, ūm (113, R.), no, no one.
 Nūm, interrog. particle; expects
 ans, no. 288, REM. [*Rome*.
 Nūmā, ae, Numa, second king of
 Nunc, now.
 Nūmērārē, āv, āt, to number.
 Nūmērūs, ī, number.
 Nunquām, never.
 Nuntiārē (*nuntiūs*), āv, āt, to an-
 nounce, report.
 Nuntiūs, ī, messenger.

O.

O (interjection), O.
 O sī, O if, would that.

Obessĕ, fu, fūt, *to be prejudicial to.*
 Obliviscĭ, oblīt, *to forget.*
 Obsĕs, ĭdīs, *hostage.*
 Obstārĕ, stīt, stāt, *to oppose, prevent.*
 Obtĭnĕrĕ, ĩnu, ent, *to acquire, obtain.*
 Occāsĭō, ōnīs, *occasion.*
 Occĭdĕrĕ (*ob and caedĕre*), cĭd, cĭs, *to kill.*
 Occĭdĕrĕ (*ob and cādĕre*), cĭd, cās, *to fall.*
 Occultārĕ (*occulĕre*), āv, āt, *to conceal, hide.*
 Octō, *eight.*
 Oculūs, ĭ, *eye.*
 Odiūm, ĭ, *hatred.*
 Officiūm, ĭ, *duty.*
 Olīm, *once, formerly.*
 Omnĭnō, *in all.*
 Omnīs, ĕ, *all, every.*
 Oportĕt (*impers.*), *it behooves, one ought.*
 Optiō, ōnīs, *choice.*
 Opūs, ĕrīs, *work.*
 Orātiō, ōnīs, *oration.*
 Orātōr, ōrīs, *orator.*
 Ornārĕ, āv, āt, *to adorn.*
 Ovīs, ĭs, *sheep.*

P.

Pābulārĭ, āt, *to forage.*
 Palliūm, ĭ, *cloak.*
 Pārārĕ, āv, āt, *to prepare.*
 Pārĕrĕ, u, ĭt, *to obey.*
 Parcĕrĕ, pĕperc, parcĭt, *to spare.*
 Pars, tīs, *part.*
 Parvūs, ā, ūm, *small, little; parvūm, little, a little; parvī, at a low price; parvī aestĭmārĕ, to think little of.*
 Pastōr (*pascĕre*), ōrīs, *shepherd.*
 Pātĕr, trīs, *father.*
 Pātriā, ae, *native country.*
 Paucūs, ā, ūm, *little, few.*
 Paupĕr, ĕrīs, *a poor man.*
 Pausāniās, ae, *Pausanias, a distinguished Spartan general.*
 Pāvō, ōnīs, *peacock.*
 Pax, pācis, *peace.*
 Peccārĕ, āv, āt, *to sin, do wrong.*
 Pĕcūniā, ae, *money.*
 Pendĕrĕ, pĕpend, *to hang.*

Pĕr (*prep. with acc.*), *through.*
 Perdĕrĕ, dĭd, dĭt, *to waste.*
 Perfĭdiā, ae, *perfidy.*
 Perfūgiūm, ĭ, *refuge.*
 Pĕriculōsūs (*periculūm*), ā, ūm, *dangerous.*
 Pĕrītūs, ā, ūm, *skilful, skilled in.*
 Perniciēs, ēī, *destruction.*
 Perpĕtuō, *for ever.*
 Perspicĕrĕ (ĭō), ex, ect, *to perceive, see.*
 Persuādĕrĕ, s, s, *to persuade.*
 Pertĭmescĕrĕ, tĭmu, *to fear greatly.*
 Pervĕnĭrĕ, vĕn, vent, *to arrive at, reach.*
 Pĕs, pĕdīs, *foot.*
 Pĕtĕrĕ, ĭv or ĭ, ĭt, *to seek.*
 Philōsōphūs, ĭ, *philosopher.*
 Piĕtās, ātis, *piety, faithfulness.*
 Pĭĕt (*impers.*), *it irks, one is grieved at; mĕ pĭĕt, I am grieved.*
 Piscĭs, ĭs, *m., fish.*
 Piūs, ā, ūm, *pious.*
 Plācārĕ, āv, āt, *to appease.*
 Plācĕrĕ, u, ĭt, *to please.*
 Plānĕ, *plainly.*
 Plūrĭmūs, ā, ūm (*superl. of multus*), *very much or great; pl., very many.*
 Poĕmā, ātis, *poem.*
 Poenĭtĕt (*impers.*), *it repents, one repents.*
 Poĕtā, ae, *poet.*
 Pōnĕrĕ, pōsu, pōsĭt, *to place.*
 Pons, tīs, *m., bridge.*
 Pōpŭlārĭs (*popŭlŭs*), ĕ, *popular.*
 Pōpŭlŭs, ĭ, *people.*
 Portā, ae, *gate.*
 Poscĕrĕ, pōpōsc, *to demand.*
 Possĕ, pōtu (irreg., 407), *to be able.*
 Possĭdĕrĕ, ĕd, ess, *to possess.*
 Post (*prep. with acc.*), *after.*
 Postĕrā, ūm (*mas. not used*), *next, following.*
 Postŭlārĕ, āv, āt, *to demand.*
 Pōtĭrĭ, ĭt, *to get possession of.*
 Prae (*prep. with abl.*), *before, in comparison with.*
 Praebĕrĕ, u, ĭt, *to furnish, offer.*
 Praeceptŭm, ĭ, *precept, instruction.*
 Praedā, ae, *booty.*
 Praeditŭs, ā, ūm, *endued with.*

Praemittĕrĕ, mĭs, miss, to send before.
 Praepĕrĕrĕ, Āv, āt, to prepare.
 Praesens, tĭs, present.
 Praestans, tĭs, excellent.
 Praestĕt (impers.), it is better.
 Praetĕrĭtŭs, ā, ūm, past; neut. pl.,
 the past.
 Prĕtŭm, ĭ, meadow.
 Prĕtĭoſŭs, ā, ūm, valuable.
 Prĭmŭs, ā, ūm, first.
 Princeps (prĭmŭs and cĕpĕre), ĭpĭs,
 chief, leader.
 Prĭvĕrĕ, Āv, āt, to deprive.
 Prĭvĕtŭs, ā, ūm, private, personal.
 Prō (prep. with abl.), for, before.
 Prōbŭs, ā, ūm, honest.
 Prōdessĕ, prōfu, prōfŭt, to profit.
 Prōdĭtĭō, ōnĭs, treachery.
 Prōdĭtōr, ōrĭs, traitor.
 Prōdŭcĕrĕ, dux, duct, to lead for-
 ward, or out.
 Proeliŭm, ĭ, battle.
 Prōfĭciscĭ, fect, to set out, to march.
 Prōmittĕrĕ, mĭs, miss, to promise.
 Prōmōvĕrĕ, mōv, mōt, to move for-
 ward, advance.
 Prōpensŭs, ā, ūm, inclined to.
 Prōpiōr, ūs (comp.), nearer.
 Prōvidŭs, ā, ūm, cautious, prudent.
 Prōvincĭā (pro and vincĕre), ae, pro-
 vince.
 Proximŭs, ā, ūm, nearest, next.
 Prŭdens, tĭs, prudent, cautious.
 Prŭdentiā (prudens), ae, prudence.
 Pŭdōr, ōrĭs, shame, modesty.
 Puellā, ae, girl.
 Puĕr, ĭ, boy.
 Pŭgnĕrĕ (pugnā), Āv, āt, to fight.
 Pulchĕr, chrĕ, chrŭm, beautiful.
 Pŭnĭrĕ, ĩv, ĩt, to punish.
 Pŭtĕrĕ, Āv, āt, to think, regard.

Q.

Quaestiō, ōnĭs, question.
 Quām (adv.), how; quām multĭ, how
 many; with superl. intensive, as
 quām maxĭmŭs, as great as pos-
 sible.
 Quām (conj.), than.
 Quamvis, however, however much.
 Quantŭs, ā, ūm, how great.

Quārĕ, wherefore.
 Quartŭs, ā, ūm, fourth.
 Quāsi, as if.
 Quatuōr, four.
 Quĕ (always appended to another
 word), and.
 Quĭ, quae, quōd, who, which, that.
 Quĭ, quae, quōd (interrog.), who,
 which, what?
 Quĭā, because.
 Quiescĕrĕ, ēv ēt, to rest, be quiet.
 Quĭn (473), that not, but that.
 Quinquĕ, five.
 Quintŭs, ā, ūm, fifth.
 Quĭs, quae, quĭd (interrog. subs.),
 who, which, what?
 Quō, that, in order that.
 Quōmĭnŭs (472), that not, from.
 Quōquĕ, also.
 Quŭm, when; quŭm—tŭm, both—
 and.

R.

Rĕtĭō, ōnĭs, reason.
 Rĕcipĕrĕ (ĭō), cĕp, cept, to receive.
 Rĕcordārĭ, āt, to remember, call to
 mind.
 Rĕdĭrĕ, ĭ, ĩt, to return.
 Rĕdŭcĕrĕ, dux, duct, to lead back.
 Rĕferrĕ, tŭl, lĕt, to relate.
 Rĕgĕrĕ, rex, rect, to rule, govern.
 Rĕgĭnā, ae, queen.
 Rĕgnĕrĕ, Āv, āt, to reign.
 Rĕgnŭm, ĭ, kingdom, government.
 Rĕliquŭs, ā, ūm, remaining, the rest.
 Rĕpĕrĭrĕ, rĕpĕr, rĕpert, to find.
 Rĕs, rĕl, thing, affair.
 Rĕsistĕrĕ, stĭt, to resist.
 Respondĕrĕ, d, s, to answer.
 Responsŭm, ĭ, answer, response.
 Respuĕrĕ, pu, to reject.
 Reŭs, ĭ, criminal.
 Rĕvertĕrĕ, vert, vers, to return, t:rr
 back.
 Rex, rĕgĭs, king.
 Rhĕnŭs, ĭ, Rhine.
 Rĭdĕrĕ, rĭs, rĭs, to laugh, laugh at.
 Rōbustŭs, ā, ūm, robust, strong.
 Rōgĕrĕ, Āv, āt, to ask, entreat.
 Rōmā, ae, Rome.
 Rōmānŭs (Rōmā), ā, ūm, Roman.

Römülüs, i, *Romulus*.
 Rötundüs, ä, üm, *round*.
 Ruëř, ru, rüt (ruit), *to rush*.
 Rümör, öris, *rumor*.
 Rumpëř, rūp, rupt, *to break, violate*.
 Rūs, rūris, n., *country*.

S.

Săcerdös, ötis, *priest, priestess*.
 Saepë, *often*.
 Saevire (saevüs), iv (i), it, *to rage*.
 Săgittă, ae, *arrow*.
 Saltăř, äv, ät, *to dance*.
 Sălüs, ütis, *safety*.
 Sănăř, äv, ät, *to cure, reform*.
 Sancire, x, ct, *to enact, confirm*.
 Sanguis, inis, m., *blood*.
 Săpëř, iv or i, *to be wise*.
 Săpiens, entis, *wise*.
 Săpientiă, ae, *wisdom*.
 Sătiăř, äv, ät, *to satisfy*.
 Sătis, *enough*.
 Sceptrüm, i, *sceptre*.
 Scientiă, ae, *knowledge*.
 Scipiö, önis, *Scipio, a distinguished Roman*.
 Scire, iv, it, *to know*.
 Scriberë, ps, pt, *to write*.
 Sëcundüs, ä, üm, *second*.
 Sëd, *but*.
 Sëmën, inis, *seed*.
 Sempër, *always*.
 Sempiternüs, ä, üm, *lasting, eternal*.
 Sënătör, öris, *senator*.
 Sënătüs (senex), üs, *senate*.
 Sënectüs, ütis, *old age*.
 Sënex, sënis, *an old man*.
 Sensüs, üs, *feeling, perception*.
 Sententiă, ae, *sentiment*.
 Sentire, s, s, *to perceive, to feel (as pain)*.
 Sëpëlire, pëliv or i, pult, *to bury*.
 Sermö, önis, *discourse*.
 Servăř, äv, ät, *to keep, observe, save*.
 Servire, iv, it, *to serve, be slave to*.
 Serviüs, i, *Servius, a man's name*.
 Servüs, i, *slave*.
 Seu—seu, *whether—or, either—or*.

Sex, *six*.
 Si, *if*.
 Sic, *so*.
 Sicüt, *so as, just as*.
 Simplex, icis, *simple*.
 Simülätiö, önis, *assumed appearance, pretence*.
 Sinë (prep. with abl.), *without*.
 Sinüs, üs, *bosom*.
 Sirën, ënis, *siren*.
 Sitrë, iv, it, *to thirst*.
 Sivë—sivë, *whether—or*.
 Söcrätës, is, *Socrates, the celebrated Grecian philosopher*.
 Söl, sölis, m., *sun*.
 Somnüs, i, *sleep*.
 Sönüs, i, *sound*.
 Sörör, öris, *sister*.
 Spargëř, rs, rs, *to scatter, sow*.
 Spëciösüs (species), ä, üm, *specious, plausible*.
 Spectăř (specëre), äv, ät, *to look at, behold*.
 Spërăř, äv, ät, *to hope for*.
 Spës, ei, *hope*.
 Splendens, tis, *shining*.
 Spöliăř, äv, ät, *to rob of, de spoil*.
 Stăbilită, atis, *firmness, stability*.
 Stătüm (stăre), *immediately*.
 Stellă, ae, *star*.
 Stüdëř, u, *to study, strive for*.
 Stüdiösüs, ä, üm, *studious*.
 Stultitiă, ae, *folly*.
 Suădëř, s, s, *to advise*.
 Subvënire, vën, vent, *to aid*.
 Succurrëř, curr, curs, *to aid, succor*.
 Suëř, su, süt, *to sew, stitch*.
 Suī, sibī (257), *of himself, herself, &c*.
 Sullă, ae, *Sulla, a man's name*.
 Summüs, ä, üm, *highest, greatest, sometimes the top of (267); summüs mons, the top of the mountain*.
 Sumptüs, üs, *expense*.
 Süpëřăř, äv, ät, *to surpass, conquer, to go over*.
 Süpëřficiës, eī, *surface*.
 Süpëřväcuüs, ä, üm, *unnecessary*.
 Supplicätiö, önis, *thanksgiving*.

Šŭprā (*adv. and prep. with acc.*),
above.

Sustĭnĕrĕ, u, tent, *to sustain, en-*
dure.

Suŭs, ā, ŭm, *his, her, &c.*

T.

Tācĕrĕ, u, ĭt, *to be silent, to pass over*
in silence.

Tām, so; tām—quām, so—as.

Tāmĕn, *yet.*

Tangĕrĕ, tĕtĭg, tact, *to touch.*

Tanquām, *as if.*

Tantŭs, ā, ŭm, *so great.*

Tārentŭm, ĭ, *Tarentum, a town in*
Italy.

Tardŭs, ā, ŭm, *slow.*

Tarquinĭŭs, ĭ, *Tarquin, one of the*
kings of Rome.

Tectŭm (*tegĕre*), ĭ, *roof, house.*

Tĕgĕrĕ, tex, tect, *to cover.*

Tempŭs, ōris, *time.*

Tĕnĕrĕ, u, t, *to hold.*

Tentārĕ, āv, āt, *to try, attempt.*

Terrā, ae, *the earth.*

Terrĕrĕ, u, ĭt, *to terrify.*

Tertiŭs, ā, ŭm, *third.*

Tĭbŭr, ŭris, *Tibur, a town in Italy.*

Tĭmĕrĕ, u, *to fear.*

Tĭmidŭs, ā, ŭm, *timid.*

Tondĕrĕ, tōtōnd, tons, *to shear,*
shave.

Tōtŭs, ā, ŭm (113, R.), *the whole, the*
entire.

Tranquillŭs, ā, ŭm, *calm, tranquil.*

Transĭrĕ, ĭ, ĭt, *to go over.*

Trĕs, triā, *three.*

Trojānŭs (*Trojā*), ā, ŭm, *Trojan.*

Tŭ, tuĭ, *thou.*

Tullia, ae, *Tullia, a queen of*
Rome.

Turpŭs, ĕ, *base, disgraceful.*

Turrĭs, ĭs (acc., ĕm or ĭm; abl., ĕ or ĭ),
tower.

Tuŭs, ā, ŭm, *your.*

U.

Ullŭs, ā, ŭm (113, R.), *any.*

Undĕ, *whence.*

Unquām, *ever.*

Unŭs, ā, ŭm (113, R.), *one, single,*
single one.

Urbs, ĭs, *city.*

Ursŭs, ĭ, *bear.*

Usquĕ, *as far as; usquĕ ād, even*
to.

Ūt (*conj.*), *that, as.*

Ūtĭ, ŭs, *to use.*

Ūtilĭs, ĕ, *useful.*

Ūtilĭtās (*ūtilĭs*), ātĭs, *utility, advan-*
tage.

Ūtĭnām (*conj.*), *would that.*

Ūtrŭm (*interrog. part.*), *whether;*
utrŭm—ān, whether—or.

Uvā, ae, *grape.*

V.

Vācārĕ, āv, āt, *to have leisure for.*

Vĕl (*conj.*), *or; vĕl—vĕl, either—*
or.

Vellĕ, vōlu (410), *to wish, be wil-*
ling.

Vĕlox, ōcis, *swift.*

Vĕnārĭ, āt, *to hunt.*

Vendĕrĕ, did, dĭt, *to sell.*

Vĕnĭrĕ, vĕn, vent, *to come.*

Vĕr, vĕris, n., *spring.*

Verbŭm, ĭ, *word.*

Vĕrĕrĭ, ĭt, *to fear.*

Vĕrō, *indeed, truly.*

Vĕrŭs, ā, ŭm, *true, real; vĕrŭm,*
truth.

Vĕruntāmĕn, *but yet.*

Vestĕr, trā, trŭm, *your.*

Vestĭs, ĭs, *garment.*

Vĕtustŭs, ā, ŭm, *ancient.*

Viā, ae, *way, road.*

Victĭmā, ae, *victim.*

Victōriā, ae, *Victoria.*

Vĭdĕrĕ, vĭd, vĭs, *to see; pass., vĭ-*
dĕrĭ, to seem.

Vĭgilārĕ (*vĭgil*), āv, āt, *to watch.*

Vĭgintĭ, *twenty.*

Vincĕrĕ, vic, vict, *to conquer.*

Vincĭrĕ, vinx, vinct, *to bind.*

Vincŭlŭm, ĭ, *chain.*

Vindicārĕ, āv, āt, *to avenge.*

Viōlārĕ, āv, āt, *to violate, wrong,*
break.

Vĭr, vĭrĭ, *man, hero.*

Virgō, ĭnĭs, *virgin, maiden.*

Virtūs, ūtīs, <i>virtue, manliness.</i>	Vŏcārĕ, āv, āt, <i>to call.</i>
Vis, vīs (<i>acc., vīm</i>), <i>pl., vīrēs, vīriūm,</i> &c., <i>force, strength.</i>	Vŏlārĕ, āv, āt, <i>to fly.</i>
Vitā, ae, <i>life.</i>	Vŏluptās, ātīs, <i>pleasure.</i>
Vitārĕ, āv, āt, <i>to shun, avoid.</i>	Vox, vŏcis, <i>voice.</i>
Vitŭpĕrārĕ, āv, āt, <i>to blame, criticise.</i>	Vulnĕrārĕ, āv, āt, <i>to wound.</i>
Vivĕrĕ. <i>vix, vict, to live.</i>	Vulnŭs, ěrīs, <i>wound.</i>
	Vulpĕs, ěs, <i>fox.</i>

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

- Ability*, ingēniūm, ī.
About, dē (*with abl.*).
Above, sūprā (*adv. and prep. with acc.*).
Abridgment, ěpitōmē, ěs.
Accept, accipērē (iō), cēp, cept (550).
Accomplish, effīcērē (iō), fēc, fect.
Accuse, accūsārē, āv, āt.
Achilles, Achillēs, īs.
Acquire, obtīnērē, tīnu, tent.
Acquit, absolvērē, v, ūt.
Act, v., fācērē (iō), fēc, fact.
Admiration, admīrātiō, ōnis.
Admonish, mōnērē, u, īt, admōnērē, &c.
Adorn, ornārē, āv, āt.
Advance, prōmōvērē, mōv, mōt.
Advantage, ūtīlitās, ātis.
Advice, consīliūm, ī.
Advise, suādērē, s, s; mōnērē, u, īt.
Aeneas, Aenēās, ae.
Affair, rēs, rēi.
After, post (*with acc.*).
Again, itērūm.
Again and again, ětiām atquē ětiām.
Against, īn (*acc.*); contrā (*acc.*).
Aid, s., adjūmentūm, ī; auxiliūm, ī.
Aid, v., subvĕnīrē, vĕn, vent, adjūvārē, jūv, jūt.
All (as a whole), cunctūs, ā, ūm.
All (every), omnīs, ě.
Alps, Alpēs, iūm.
Also, ětiām, quōquē.
Altar, ārā, ae.
Although, licēt.
Always, sempēr.
Ambassador, lĕgātūs, ī.
American, Amĕricānūs, ā, ūm.
- Amphibious animal*, amphībiūm, ī
Ample, amplūs, ā, ūm.
Anchises, Anchīsēs, ae.
Ancient, vĕtustūs, ā, ūm.
And, ět, quē (*enclitic*), āc.
Anger, irā, ae.
Animal, ānīmāl, ālis.
Announce, nuntiārē, āv, āt (540).
Answer, s., responsūm, ī.
Answer, v., respondērē, d, s.
Any, ullūs, ā, ūm (113, R.).
Any one, āliquis, ā, quīd.
Appearance, fāciēs, ěi.
Appeal, plācārē, āv, āt.
Appoint, constītuērē, u, ūt.
Approach, s., adventūs, ūs (521).
Approach, v., apprōpinquārē, āv, āt; accĕdērē, cess, cess.
Arm, brāchiūm, ī
Armor-bearer, armīgĕr, ī.
Army, exercītūs, ūs.
Arouse, excitārē, āv, āt.
Arrange, constītuērē, u, ūt.
Arrange, array, instruērē, ux, uct.
Arrest, comprĕhendērē, d, s.
Arrival, adventūs, ūs (521).
Arrive at, pervĕnīrē, vĕn, vent.
Arrow, sāgittā, ae.
Art, ars, artīs.
As, ūt.
As far as, usquē.
As if, quāsi, tanquām.
As possible, quām with superl. (309).
Ascanius, Ascāniūs, ī.
Ascertain, cōgnoscērē, nōv, nīt.
Ask, rōgārē, āv, āt.
Ask advice, consūlērē, lu, lt.
Ass, asīnūs, ī.
Asssemble, convĕnīrē, vĕn, vent (550).
Assent, give assent, annuērē, u, ūt.
Assumed appearance, sīmūlātiō, ōnis

At a high price, māgnī; *at a very high price*, maxīmī.
At a low price, parvī
At home, dōmī.
Athenian, Athēniensīs, ē.
Athens, Athēnae, ārūm.
Attack, impētūs, ūs.
Attain, attingērē, tīg, tact.
Attempt, tentārē, āv, āt.
Audacious, audax, ācīs.
Author, auctōr, ōrīs.
Autumn, auctumnūs, ī.
Avarice, āvāritiā, ae.
Avaricious, āvārūs, ā, ūm.
Avenge, vindicārē, āv, āt.
Avoid, vitārē, āv, āt.

B.

Bad, imprōbūs, ā, ūm; *mālūs*, ā, ūm.
Badly, mālē.
Bake, cōquērē, cox, coct.
Balbus, Bālbūs, ī.
Banish, expellērē, pūl, puls.
Base, turpis, ē.
Battle, proeliūm, ī.
Be, esse, fu, fūt.
Be able, posse, pōtu.
Be born, nascī, nāt.
Be engaged in, interessē, fu, fūt.
Be ignorant of, nescīre, īv (ī), īt.
Be made, fierī, fact.
Be on one's guard against, cāvērē, cāv, caut.
Be prejudicial to, ōbessē, fu, fūt.
Be present, ādessē, fu, fūt.
Be quiet, quiescērē, quiēv, quiēt.
Be silent, tēcērē, u, īt.
Be slave to, servīrē, īv, īt.
Be unwilling, nollē, nōlu.
Be willing, vellē, vōlu.
Be wise, sāpērē, īv or ī.
Bear, s., ursūs, ī.
Bear, v., ferrē, tūl, lāt.
Beard, barbā, ae.
Beautiful, pulchēr, chrā, chrūm.
Because, quīā.
Become, fierī, fact.
Before (adv.), antē.
Before (prep.), antē, cōrām, prae, prō.
Beg for, sue for, pētērē, īv (ī), īt.
Begin to bloom, flōrescērē (544).

Beginning, inceptūm, ī.
Behold, spectārē, āv, āt.
Believe, crēdērē, crēdīd, crēdīt.
Below, infā (with acc.).
Benefit, bēnēficiūm, ī.
Between, intēr (with acc.).
Bind, vincērē, vinx, vinct.
Bird, āvis, īs, f.
Bite, mordēre, mōmord, mors.
Blame, s., culpā, ae.
Blame, v., vitūpērārē, āv, āt.
Blind, caecūs, ā, ūm.
Blood, sanguis, īnis, m.
Bloom, flōrērē, u.
Body, corpūs, ōrīs.
Book, libēr, librī.
Booty, praedā.
Bosom, sinūs, ūs.
Both—and, et—et; quā.n—tūm.
Boy, puēr, ī.
Brave, fortīs, ē.
Bravely, fortītēr.
Break, frangērē, frāg, fract; rum-pērē, rūp, rupt; violārē, āv, āt:
break one's word, fīdēm violārē.
Bribery, ambitūs, ūs.
Bridge, pons, tīs, m.
Bring, bring to, afferē, attūl, allāt.
Bring water, āquārī, āt.
Brother, frātēr, tūs.
Brutus, Brūtūs, ī.
Build, aedificārē, āv, āt; construērē, x, ct; condērē, did, dīt.
Building, aedificiūm, ī.
Burn, incendērē, d, s.
Bury, sēpēlīrē, īv (ī), pult.
But, sēd, āt, autēm.
But, now (in reasoning), atquī.
But, but yet, attāmēn, vēruntāmēn.
But that, quān.
Buy ēmērē, ēm, empt.
By (with voluntary agent), ā, ī, aq, in other cases indicated by alī.

C.

Caesar, Caesār, ārīs.
Caius, Caiūs, ī.
Calamity, cālāmītās, ātis.
Call, vōcārē, āv, āt.
Call to mind, rēcordārī, āt.
Calm, tranquillūs, ā, ūm.

Camp, castrā, ōrūm.
Captive, captīvūs, ī.
Card, carpērē, ps, pt.
Carry, ferrē, tūl, lāt.
Carry on (as war), gērērē, gess, gest.
Carthage, Carthāgō, īnis.
Carthaginian, Carthāgīniensis, ě.
Catch, dēprēhendērē, d, s.
Cautious, prūdēns, tīs; prōvīdūs, ā, ūm.
Cavalry, equitātūs, ūs.
Cave, antrūm, ī.
Celebrated, cělēbēr, brīs, brē.
Censure, vītūpērārē, āv, āt.
Certain, certūs, ā, ūm.
Chain, vincūlūm, ī; cātēnā, ae.
Change, mūtārē, āv, āt.
Chariot, currūs, ūs.
Chastise, castīgārē, āv, āt.
Chief, princeps, cīpis.
Children, libērī, ōrūm.
Choice, optiō, ōnis.
Christian, Christiānūs, ī.
Cicero, Cīcērō, ōnis.
Citadel, arx, arcīs.
Citizen, cīvīs, īs.
City, urbs, urbīs.
Civil, cīvilīs, ě (528).
Clemency, clēmēntiā, ae.
Cloak, palliūm, ī.
Cloud, nūbēs, īs.
Cold, frīgūs, ōris.
Collect, compārārē, āv, āt.
Color, cōlōr, ōris.
Come, vēnīrē, vēn, vent.
Come together, convēnīrē, vēn, vent.
Command, v., impērārē, āv, āt.
Commands, s., impērātā, ōrūm.
Commander, impērātōr, ōris (521).
Compel, compellērē, pūl, puls.
Conceal, occultārē, āv, āt.
Concerning, dē (with abl.).
Condemn, damnārē, āv, āt.
Condition, conditiō, ōnis.
Conference, collōquiūm, ī.
Confine, continērē, tīnū, tent.
Confirm, sancīrē, sanx, sanct.
Conquer, supērārē, āv, āt; vincērē, vīc, vīct; dēvincērē, vīc, vīct.
Construct, construērē, x, ct.
Consul, consūl, ūlis.
Consult, consūlērē, lu, lt.

Contend, concertārē, āv, āt.
Contented, contentūs, ā, ūm.
Contest, certāmēn, īnis.
Convert, convertērē, t, s.
Cook, cōquērē, cox, coct.
Correct, corrīgērē, rex, rect.
Corrupt, corrupērē, rūp, rupt.
Council, conciliūm, ī.
Country, rūs, rurīs.
Cover, tēgērē, tex, tect.
Cowardly, īgnāvūs, ā, ūm.
Crime, flāgitiūm, ī.
Criminal, reūs, ī.
Criticise, vītūpērārē, āv, āt.
Crown, s., cōrōnā, ae.
Crown, crown with a garland, cōrōnā cingērē, nx, nct.
Cry out, exclāmārē, āv, āt.
Cultivate, cōlērē, cōlu, cult.
Cure, sārārē, āv, āt.

D.

Dance, saltārē, āv, āt.
Dangerous, pēricūlōsūs, ā, ūm.
Daring, audax, ācis.
Daughter, filiā, ae.
Day, diēs, ēī.
Death, mors, tīs.
Deceive, dēcīpērē (iō), cēp, cept.
Deceptive, fallax, ācis.
Decide, dēcernērē, crēv, crēt.
Declare, indicērē, dix, dict; *declare war*, bellūm indicērē.
Decree, dēcernērē, crēv, crēt.
Defend, dēfendērē, d, s.
Defile, angustiae, ārūm.
Defraud, fraudārē, āv, āt.
Delightful, jūcundūs, ā, ūm.
Demand, poscērē, pōpsc; postūlārē, āv, āt.
Demonstrate, dēmonstrare, āv, āt.
Depart, abīrē, i, īt.
Deprive, prīvārē, āv, āt.
Derive, have, hābērē, u, īt.
Desire, s., cūpīdītās, āūs.
Desire, v., cūpērē (iō), īv or i, īt.
Desirous of, cūpidūs, ā, ūm.
Despoil, spōliārē, āv, āt.
Destroy, dēlērē, ēv, ēt.
Destruction, pernīciēs, ēī.
Deter, dētērrērē, u, īt.

Dido, Dīdō, ōnīs.
Difficult, difficīlis, ě.
Diligence, diligentiā, ae.
Diligent, diligens, tīs.
Direct, order, jūbērě, juss, juss.
Discharge, fungī, funct.
Discourse, sermō, ōnīs.
Discover, conspīcērě (iō), spex, spect.
Disgraceful, turpis, ě.
Dismiss, dīmīttērě, mīs, miss.
Disregard, nēglīgērě, lex, lect.
Distance, intervallūm, ī.
Divide, dīvdērě, vīs, vīs.
Divine, dīvīnūs, ā, ūm.
Divitiacus, Divitiācūs, ī.
Do, fācērě (iō), fēc, fact.
Do good to, prōdessě, prōfu, prōfūt.
Do wrong, peccārě, āv, āt.
Dog, cānis, īs.
Doubt, dūbītārě, āv, āt.
Dove, cōlumbā, ae.
Drink, bībērě, bīb, bībīt.
Drive, āgērě, ēg, act; compellērě, pūl, puls.
During, inter (*with acc.*).
Duty, officiūm, ī.
Dwell, hābītārě, āv, āt.

E.

Eagle, aquilā, ae.
Earth, terrā, ae.
Easy, fācilīs, ě.
Eat, ēdērě, ēd, ēs.
Edifice, aedificiūm, ī.
Effect, effīcērě (iō), fēc, fect.
Eight, octō.
Either—or, aut—aut.
Elegance, ēlėgantiā, ae.
Elephant, ēlēphās, antīs.
Enact, sancīrě, x, ct.
End, fīnīs, īs, m. and f.
Endued with, praeditūs, ā, ūm.
Endure, sustīnērě, tīnu, tent; ferrě, tūl, lāt.
Enemy, hostīs, īs, c.
Engage (as battle), committērě, mīs, miss; *engage battle*, proeliūm committērě.
Enjoy, fruī, fruct (fruit).
Enlighten, illustrārě, āv, āt.
Enough, sātīs.

Entire, tōtūs, ā, ūm 113, R.).
Entreat, rōgārě, āv, īt.
Enumerate, ēnūmērārě, āv, āt.
Envy, invīdērě, vīd, vīs.
Epistle, ěpistolā, ae; *literae*, arūm
Equity, aequītās, ātīs.
Err, errārě, āv, āt.
Estate, fundūs, ī.
Eternal, sempiternūs, ā, ūm.
Even, ětiām.
Even to, usquē ād.
Ever, unquām.
Every, omnīs, e.
Evil, mālūm, ī.
Excellent, praestans, tīs.
Excessive, nīmīūs, ā, ūm.
Excite, excitārě, āv, āt.
Exclaim, exclāmārě, āv, āt.
Exercise, exercērě, u, īt.
Expect, exspectārě, āv, āt.
Expel, expellērě, pūl, puls.
Expense, sumptūs, ūs.
Explain, expōnērě, pōsu, pōsīt.
Eye, oculūs, ī.

F.

Fabulous, fābūlōsūs, ā, ūm.
Face, faciēs, eī.
Faith, fidēs, ěī.
Faithful, fidēlis, ě.
Faithfulness, piētās, ātīs.
Fall, cādērě, cēcīd, cās; occīdērě, cīd, cās.
False, fallax, ācis (535).
Falsehood, mendāciūm, ī.
Farm, fundūs, ī.
Father, pātēr, pātrīs.
Fault, culpā, ae.
Faustulus, Faustūlus, ī.
Favor, s., grātiā, ae.
Favor, v., fāvērě, fāv, faut.
Fear, s., mētūs, ūs.
Fear, v., tīmērě, u; mētūērě, u, ūt vērērī, īt.
Fear greatly, pertimescērě, v u.
Feast, coenā, ae.
Feel (as pain, &c.), sentīrě
Feeling, sensūs, ūs.
Few, paucī, ae, ā.
Fidelity, fidēs, ěī.
Field, āgēr, āgrī.

Fifth, quintūs, ā, ūm.
Fight, pugnārē, āv, āt.
Figure, figurā, ae.
Fill, complerē, ēv, ēt.
Find, invēnirē, ven, vent; rēpērīrē, rēpēr, rēpert.
Fine, beautiful, pulchēr, chrā, chrŭm.
Finish, finīrē, iv, it (540).
Fire, ignīs, is, m.
Firm, firmūs, ā, ūm.
Firmness, stābilitās, ātis.
First, primūs, ā, ūm.
Fish, piscīs, is, m.
Five, quinquē.
Flatterer, ādulātōr, ōris.
Flattery, ādulātiō, ōnis.
Flay, dēglŭbērē, ps, pt.
Flee, fŭgērē (iō), fŭg, fŭgīt.
Flee for refuge, confŭgērē (iō), fŭg.
Flee from, ēvōlārē, āv, āt.
Flight, fŭgā, ae.
Flock, grex, grēgīs, m.
Flourish, flōrērē, u.
Flow, fluērē, x, x.
Flower, flōs, ōris.
Fly, vōlārē, āv, āt.
Fly away, ēvōlārē, āv, āt.
Following, postērā, ūm (*masc. nom. not used*).
Folly, stultitiā, ae.
Food, cibūs, i.
Foot, pēs, pēdis.
For (conj.), ěnim, nām, namquē.
For (prep.), prō (*with abl.*).
For ever, perpētūō.
Forage, pābŭlārī, āt.
Force, mānūs, ūs vīs, vis (*pl. virēs*).
Forces, cōpiae, ārŭm.
Forget, obliviscī, oblit.
Formerly, ōlīm.
Fortune, fortŭnā, ae.
Found, condērē, did, dīt (550).
Four, quātuōr.
Fourth, quartūs, ā, ūm.
Fox, vulpēs, is.
Free, libēr, ā, ūm.
Frequent, crēbēr, brā, brŭm.
Friend, āmicŭs, i.
Friendship, āmicitiā, ae.
Frighten, terrērē, u, it.

From, ā, āb, abs, dē, ex, and sometimes before participial nouns, quōmīnūs.
Fulfil, fungī, funct.
Furnish, praebērē, u, it.
Further, ampliūs.
Future, fŭtŭrūs, ā, ūm.

G.

Gallic, Gallīcŭs, ā, ūm.
Game, lŭdūs, i.
Garden, hortūs, i.
Garland, cōrōnā, ae.
Garment, vestīs, is.
Gate, portā, ae.
Gather, carpērē, ps, pt.
Gaul, a Gaul, Gallūs, i.
Germany, Germāniā, ae.
Get possession of, pōtīrī, it.
Gift, dōnŭm, i.
Girl, puellā, ae.
Give, dārē, dēd, dāt; dōnārē, āv, āt.
Glitter, mīcārē, u.
Glory, glōriā, ae.
Go, irē, iv or i, it.
Go away, ābirē, i, it.
Go over, transīrē, i, it; sŭpērārē, āv, āt.
Gold, aurŭm, i.
Golden, aureūs, ā, ūm.
Good, bōnūs, ā, ūm.
Govern, rēgērē, rex, rect.
Government, rēgnŭm, i.
Grain, grānŭm, i.
Grape, ūvā, ae.
Gratitude, grātiā, ae.
Great, māgnūs, ā, ūm; *at a great price*, māgnī; *it is a great thing*, māgnŭm est.
Greater, majōr, ūs.
Greatest, highest, summūs, ā, ūm.
Greatest, very great, maximūs, ā, ūm; *at a very great price*, maximī.
Greatness, māgnitŭdō, inīs.
Greeks, Graecī, ōrŭm.
Grief, dōlōr, ōris; luctūs, ūs.
Grieve, dōlērē, u, it; lŭgērē, lux.
Grove, lŭcŭs, i.
Guard, custōdīrē, iv, it (540).
Guide, dux, dŭcīs.

H

Hand, mānūs, ūs.
Hang, pendĕrĕ, pĕpĕad.
Hannibal, Hannibāl, ālis.
Happily, beātĕ.
Happiness, felicitās, atīs.
Happy, beātūs, ā, ūm.
Harmless, innoxius, ā, ūm.
Hatred, ōdiŭm, ī.
Have, hābĕrĕ, u, īt.
Hawk, accipitĕr, trīs.
He himself, ipsĕ, ā, ūm.
He, she, it, illĕ, ā, ūd.
He, she, or it is, est.
Head, cāpŭt, itīs.
Hear, audirĕ, iv, īt.
Heart, cōr, cordīs, n.
Heat, ignīs, īs, m.
Heaven, the heavens, coelŭm, ī.
Heavy, grāvis, ě.
Help, s., adjŭmentŭm, ī.
Help, v., adjŭvārĕ, jŭv, jŭt.
Herd, grex, grĕgīs, m.
Hero, vir, virī; hērōs, ōīs.
Hide, occultārĕ, āv, āt.
High, altūs, ā, ūm.
Highest, summŭs, ā, ūm.
Hinder, impĕdirĕ, iv (i), īt.
His, her, its, &c., suŭs, ā, ūm.
History, histōriā, ae.
Hold, tĕnĕrĕ, u, tent.
Home, dōmŭs, ūs or ī, f.
Honest, prōbŭs, ā, ūm.
Honey, mĕl, mellīs.
Honor, hōnōr, ōrīs.
Hope, s., spĕs, ěī.
Hope, hope for, spĕrārĕ, āv, āt.
Horse, ěquŭs, ī.
Horseman, ěquĕs, itīs.
Hostage, obsĕs, idīs.
House, tectŭm, ī; dōmŭs, ūs or ī, f.
How, quā; *how many*, quā; *many*, multī.
How great, quantŭs, ā, ūm; *how much*, quantŭm (*with gen.*).
However, however much, quamvīs.
Human, hŭmānŭs, ā, ūm.
Hunger, fāmĕs, īs.
Hunt, vĕnārī, āt.
Hurt, nōcĕrĕ, u, īt.
Husband, conjux, ūgīs.
Husbandman, āgrīcolā, ae.

I

I, ěgŏ, mĕī.
If, sī, dummŏdŏ.
Ignorance, ignŏrātiŏ, ōnīs.
Ignorant, ignārŭs, ā, ūm.
Illuminate, illustrārĕ, āv, āt.
Immediately, stātīm.
Immense, immensŭs, ā, ūm.
Immortal, immortālīs, ě.
Immovable, immŏbilīs, ě.
Impede, impĕdirĕ, iv (i), īt.
Impious, impiŭs, ā, ūm.
Imprudent, imprŭdens, tīs.
In, īn (*with abl.*).
In all, omnīnŏ.
In comparison with, prĕ.
In order that, quŏ.
In person, in presence of, cōrām.
In the mean time, intĕrīm.
In such a manner, ādĕŏ.
Inclined to, prŏpensŭs, ā, ūm.
Increase, augĕrĕ, aux, auct; crescĕrĕ, crĕv, crĕt.
Incredible, incrĕdībilīs, ě. (535).
Indeed, ěnīm, vĕrŏ.
Indolent, ignāvŭs, ā, ūm.
Indulge, indulgĕrĕ, ls, lt.
Industry, industriā, ae.
Inflict, infligĕrĕ, x, ct.
Inhabit, hābitārĕ, āv, āt.
Inhabitant, incŏlā, ae, (560).
Injury, injŭriā, ae.
Innocent, innŏcens, tīs.
Instruct, ěrŭdirĕ, iv, īt.
Instruction, consiliŭm, ī: prĕcep-
 tŭm, ī.
Into, īn (*with acc.*).
Invade, invādĕrĕ, vās, vās, (550).
Invite, call, vŏcārĕ, āv, āt.
Iron, ferrŭm, ī.
Irritate, irrītārĕ, āv, āt.
It behooves, ōportĕt.
It is better, prĕstāt.
It is well known, is an admitted fact,
 constāt.
It is lawful, licĕt.
It pities, one pities, mīsĕrĕt.
It repents, one repents, pĕnītĕt.
Italy, Itāliā, ae.

J.

Journey, itēr, itīnērīs, n.
Judge, s., jūdex, icīs.
Judge, v., jūdicārē, āv, āt.
Just, justūs, ā, ūm.
Just as, sicūt.
Justice, æquītās, ātīs.

K.

Keep, servārē, āv, āt.
Kid, hādūs, ī.
Kill, occidērē, cīd, cīs; interficērē
 (iō), fēc, fect.
Kind, sort, s., gēnūs, ērīs.
Kind, a., bēnīgñūs, ā, ūm.
King, rex, rēgīs.
Kingdom, rēgnūm, ī.
Know, scīrē, scīv, scīt.
Knowledge, scientiā, ae.
Known, cōgnītūs, ā, ūm.

L.

Labor, s., lābōr, ōrīs.
Labor, v., lābōrārē, āv, āt.
Lamb, āgnūs, ī.
Large, māgnūs, ā, ūm; amplūs, ā,
 ūm.
Larger, majōr, ūs.
Last, dūrārē, āv, āt.
Lasting, sempiternūs, ā, ūm.
Latinus, Lātīnūs, ī.
Laugh, laugh at, ridērē, rīs, rīs.
Lavinia, Lāvīniā, ae.
Law, lex, lēgīs.
Lead, dūcērē, dux, duct; āgērē, ēg,
 act.
Lead back, rēdūcērē, dux, duct.
Lead forth, ēdūcērē, dux, duct.
Lead forward or out, prōdūcērē,
 dux, duct.
Lead to, addūcērē, dux, duct.
Leader, dux, dūcīs.
Learn, discērē, dīdīc.
Legion, lēgiō, ōnīs.
Letter, literāe, ārūm: ēpistōlā, ae.
Levy, compārārē, āv, āt.
Lie, a falsehood, mendāciūm, ī.
Life, vitā, ae.
Light, lux, lūcīs.

Line of battle, āciēs, ēl.
Lion, leō, ōnīs.
Listen to, audīrē, īv, īt.
Little, parvūs, ā, ūm; a little, par
 vūm: paucūs, ā, ūm.
Little garden, hortūlūs, ī. (515).
Live, vivērē, vix, vict.
Lofty, altūs, ā, ūm.
Look at, spectārē, āv, āt.
Lose, āmittērē, mīs, miss.
Love, āmārē, āv, āt.

M.

Maiden, virgō, īnīs.
Make, faciērē (iō), fēc, fact: make a
 reply, responsūm dārē.
Man, hōmō, īnīs: vīr, ī.
Manliness, virtūs, ūtīs.
Many, multūs, ā, ūm; many things
 multā.
March, prōficiscī, fect.
Marine, of the sea, mārīnūs, ā, ūm.
Master as teacher, māgīstēr, trī.
Master as owner, dōmīnūs, ī.
Matron, mātṛonā, ae.
Meadow, prātūm, ī.
Meanwhile, intērīm.
Meeting, concīliūm, ī.
Melt, liquescērē, licu.
Merciful, clēmēns, tīs: lēnīs, ē.
Messenger, nuntiūs, ī.
Middle, midst of, middle of, mēdiūs,
 ā, ūm, (267.)
Mild, lēnīs, ē: clēmēns, tīs.
Mildness, clēmēntiā, ae.
Military service, milītiā, ae.
Mind, ānīmūs, ī; mind, the reason-
 ing faculty, mens, tīs.
Miserable, misēr, ā, ūm.
Misfortune, cālāmītās, ātīs: mālūm, ī.
Mislead, corrumpērē, rūp, rupt.
Modesty, pūdōr, ōrīs.
Money, pecūniā, ae.
Month, mensīs, īs, m.
Moon, lūnā, ae.
More, ampliūs, (adv.).
Mortal, mortālīs, ē.
Mother, mātēr, trīs.
Mountain, mons, tīs, m.
Mourn, wear mourning for, lūgērē,
 z, ct.

Movable, mōbilis, ě.
Move, mōvērĕ, mōv, mōt.
Move forward, prēmōvērĕ, mōv, mōt.
Much, multus, ā, ūm; *much good*,
 multum boni; *much time*, mul-
 tum temporis.
Multitude, multitudō, inis.
My, meus, ā, ūm.

N.

Name, nōmĕn, inis.
Narrate, narrārĕ, āv, āt.
Narration, narratīo, ōnis,
 (521.)
Narrow pass, angustiae, arum.
Nation, natiō, ōnis.
Native country, patriā, ae.
Natural to man, hūmānus, ā, ūm.
Nature, gĕnus, ěris.
Nearer, prōpior, ūs.
Neither, nĕc; *neither—nor*, nĕc—
 nĕc.
Nest, nidus, i.
Never, nunquām.
Next, nearest, proximūs, ā, ūm;
next following, postĕrā, ūm (*masc.*
nom. not used).
Night, nox, noctis.
Nightingale, lusciniā, ae.
No, no one (adj.), nullus, ā, ūm
 (113, R.).
No one, nobody, (sub.), nĕmō, (inis).
Not, nōn; with imperat. or subj., nĕ;
not only—but also, nōn solum—
 sĕd ětiām.
Not even, nĕquidĕm.
Not to know, nescirĕ, iv, it.
Not yet, nondum.
Nothing, nihil (*indec.*).
November, Nōvembĕr, bris (abl. i.).
Numa, Nūmā, ae.
Number, s., nūmĕrus, i.
Number, v., nūmĕrārĕ, āv, āt.

O.

O, O.
O if, o sī.
Obey, pārĕrĕ, u, it.
Observe, servārĕ, āv, āt.
Obtain, obtinĕrĕ, u, tent.

Occasion, occasiō, ōnis.
Of himself, sui.
Of yesterday, hesternus, ā, ūm.
Offend-against, violārĕ, āv, āt.
Offer, prābĕrĕ, u, it.
Often, saepe.
Old age, sĕnectus, ūtis.
Old man, sĕnex, sĕnis.
On service, militiae.
On this side, cis.
One, single one, unus, ā, ūm (113, R.).
One is grieved at, pigĕt; *I am grieved*
 at, mĕ pigĕt.
One ought, oportĕt.
Only, mōdō.
Open, āpĕrirĕ, u, t.
Openly, cōrām.
Opportunity, occasiō, ōnis.
Oppose, obstārĕ, stit, stāt.
Or, aut, vĕl; either—or, vĕl—vĕl.
Or, in double questions, an.
Oration, ōratiō, ōnis.
Orator, ōrātōr, ōris.
Order, jūbĕrĕ, juss, juss.
Other, aliūs, ā, ūd (113, R.).
Our, nostrĕr, trā, trūm.
Overhang, impendĕrĕ.
Overthrow, ēvertĕrĕ, rt, rs.

P.

Pain, dōlōr, ōris.
Pardon, ignoscĕrĕ, nōv, nōt.
Parent, pārens, entis.
Part, pars, tis.
Pass over in silence, tēcĕrĕ, u, it.
Passion, cūpiditās, ātis.
Past, praetĕrītus, ā, ūm; *the past*,
 praetĕrītā.
Pausanias, Pausāniās, ae.
Peace, pax, cis.
Peacock, pāvō, ōnis.
People, pĕpŭlŭs, i.
Perceive, sentirĕ, s, s; *perspicĕrĕ*
 (iō), spex, spect.
Perception, sensus, ūs.
Perfidy, perfidiā, ae.
Personal, privātus; ā, ūm.
Persuade, persuādĕrĕ, s, s.
Philosopher, philōsōphus, i.
Physician, mĕdicus, i.
Picky, piētās, ātis.

Pious, piūs, ā, ūm,
Pity, mīserēri, īt.
Place, s., lōcūs, ī. (*pl. ī, or ā.*)
Place, v., pōnērē, pūsu, pōsit.
Plainty, plānē.
Plausible, spēciōsūs, ā, ūm.
Play, s., lūdūs, ī.
Play, v., lūdērē, s. s.
Pleasant, jūcundūs, ā, ūm.
Please, plācērē, u, īt.
Pleasure, vōluptās, ātis.
Plough, ārārē, āv, āt.
Pluck, carpērē, ps, pt.
Plunge into, immergērē, rs, rs.
Poem, poēmā, ātis.
Poet, poētā, ae.
Poor man, paupēr, ēris.
Popular, pōpūlāris, ē (528).
Possess, possidērē, ēd, ess.
Practise, colērē, u, cult; exercērē, u, īt.
Praise, s., laus, dīs.
Praise, v., laudārē, āv, āt.
Precept, praeceptūm, ī.
Prefer, mallē, mālu.
Prepare, pārārē, āv, āt; praepārārē.
Present (adj.), praesens, tīs.
Present, to make a present, dōnārē, āv, āt.
Preserve, conservārē, āv, āt.
Preterence, sīmūlātiō, ōnis.
Prevent, dētterrērē, u, īt; obstārē, stīt, stāt.
Priest, priestess, sācerdōs, ōtis.
Private, prīvātūs, ā, ūm.
Prize, aestīmārē, āv, āt; *prize highly*, māgnī aestīmārē.
Procure, compārārē, āv, āt.
Profit, prōdessē, prōfu, prōfūt.
Promise, prōmittērē, mīs, miss.
Provided, dummōdō.
Province, prōvincia, ae.
Prudence, prūdentiā, ae.
Prudent, prūdēns, tīs; prōvīdūs, ā, ūm.
Pull down, ēvertērē, t, s.
Punish, pūnērē, īv, īt.
Pupil, discipulūs, ī.
Purchase, ēmērē, ēm, empt.
Put confidence in, crēdērē, crēdīd, crēdit.
Put to flight, fūgārē, āv, āt, (540).

Q.

Quarrel, concertārē, āv, āt.
Queen, rēgīnā, ae.
Question, quaestiō, ōnis.
Quickly, cēlērītēr.

R.

Rage, saevīrē, īv, īt.
Raise, compārārē, āv, āt.
Reach, attingērē, tīg, tact; pervēnīrē, vēn, vent.
Read, lēgērē, lēg, lect.
Real, vērūs, ā, ūm.
Reason, rātiō, ōnis.
Receive, accipērē (iō), cēp, cept; rēcīpērē (iō); cāpērē (iō), cēp, capt.
Reform, sānārē, āv, āt.
Refuge, perfūgiūm, ī.
Regard, pūtārē, āv, āt.
Reign, rēgnārē, āv, āt.
Reject, respuērē, pu.
Relate, narrārē, āv, āt; rēferrē, tūl, lāt.
Relying on, frētūs, ā, ūm.
Remain, mánērē, mans, mans.
Remaining, rēlīquūs, ā, ūm.
Remember, rēcordāri, āt.
Render thanks, grātiās āgērē.
Repent, one repents, poenītēt (435).
Report, s., rūmōr, ōris.
Report, nuntiārē, āv, āt.
Repress, compescērē, cu.
Resist, rēsistērē, stīt, stīt.
Response, responsūm, ī.
Rest, the rest, rēlīquūs, ā, ūm.
Rest, quiescērē, quīēv, quīēt.
Restrain, continērē, u, tent; compescērē, cu.
Return, rēdirē, i, īt; rēvertērē, t, s (551.)
Rhine, Rhēnūs, ī.
Rich, lōcuplēs, ētis.
Ring, anūlūs, ī.
Ripen, cōquērē, cox, coct.
River, flūmēn, īnis.
Road, viā, ae.
Rob of, spōliārē, āv, āt.
Robust, rōbustūs, ā, ūm.
Roman, Rōmānūs, ā, ūm.
Rome Rōmā, ae.

Romulus, Römülüs, i.
Roof, tectüm, i.
Round, rötundüs, ä, üm.
Rule, rëgërë, rex, rect.
Rumor, rümör, örís.
Run, currërë, cücurr, curs.
Rush, ruërë, ru, rüt.

S.

Safe, incöllumís, ë.
Safety, sälüs, ütís.
Same, idëm, eädëm, idëm.
Satisfy, sätiärë, äv, ät.
Save, servärë, äv, ät.
Say, dicërë, dix, dict.
Scatter, spargërë, spars, spars.
Sceptre, sceptrüm, i.
Scipio, Scipiö, onís.
Sea, märe, is.
Second, sëcundüs, ä, üm.
See, vidërë, vid, vís; conspicërë
 (iö), spex, spect.
Seed, sëmën, inís.
Seek, pëtërë, iv or i, it.
Seem, vidëri, vís.
Seize, arripërë (iö), ipu, ept; dëprë-
 hendërë, hend, hens.
Self, ipsë, ä, üm.
Sell, vendërë, did, dít.
Senate, sënätüs, üs, (517.)
Senator, sënätör, örís.
Send, mittërë, mís, miss.
Send before, praemittërë, mís, miss.
Sentiment, sententiä, ae.
Separate, disjungërë, x, ct.
Serve, servirë, iv (i), it.
Servius, Serviüs, i.
Set forth, expönërë, pôsu, pôsit.
Set on fire, incendërë, d, s.
Set out, próficiscí, fect.
Severe, äcër, äcrís, äcrë.
Sew, stíth, suërë, su, süt.
Shame, püdü, örís.
Sharp, äcër, äcrís, äcrë.
Shave, tondërë, tötönd, tons.
Shear, tondërë, tötönd, tons.
Sheep, övís, is.
Shepherd, pastör, örís. (520.)
Shield, clipeüs, i.
Shine, micärë, u; lücërë, x.
Shining, splendens, tis.

Short, brëvís, ë.
Shoulder, hümërüs, i.
Show, monsträrë, äv, ät; démon-
 strärë, äv, ät.
Shrub, frütex, icís, m.
Shun, vitärë, äv, ät.
Shut, claudërë, s, s.
Silver, argentüm, i.
Simple, simplex, icís.
Sin, peccärë, äv, ät.
Since, cüm, quüm.
Sing, canërë, cëcím, cant; cantärë,
 äv, ät.
Single, single one, ünüs, ä, üm
 (113, R.).
Siren, sīrēn, ēnís.
Sister, sörör, örís.
Six, sex.
Size, mägñitüdü, inís.
Skilful, skilled in, përitüs, ä, üm.
Skin, dëglübërë, ps, pt.
Slave, servüs, i.
Sleep, s., somnüs, i.
Sleep, dormirë, iv, it.
Slow, tardüs, ä, üm.
Small, parvüs, ä, üm.
Smaller, minör, üs.
Snake, anguis, is, m.
Snatch, arripërë (iö), ipu, ept.
Snow, nix, nivís.
So, sic, ädeö, täm; so—as, täm--
 quäm, sicüt.
So great, tantüs, ä, üm.
Socrates, Söcrätēs, is.
Soldier, milēs, itís.
Some, äliquís, quä, quíd (quöd);
 some time, äliquíd tempörís.
Some time, some time or other, äli-
 quandö.
Sometimes, intërim.
Son, filiüs, i.
Son-in-law, gëñer, i.
Sorrow, dölor, örís; luctüs, üs.
Soul, änimüs, i.
Sound, söñüs, i.
Sow, spargërë, rs, rs.
Space, intervallüm, i.
Spare, parcërë, pëperc (pars), parcit
 (pars).
Speak, löquí, löcütüs.
Spear, hastä, ae.
Specious, spēciösüs, ä, üm (530).

Spin, nĕrĕ, nĕv, nĕt.
Sport, lūdŭs, ĭ.
Spouse, conjux, gĭs.
Spring, vĕr, vĕrĭs, n.
Sprinkle, aspergĕrĕ, rs, rs.
Stability, stābilitās, ātĭs
Stain, mǎcŭlārĕ, āv, āt.
Star, stellā, ae.
State, cĭvĭtās, ātĭs.
Storm, expŭgnārĕ, āv, āt.
Stream, flŭmĕn, ĭnĭs.
Strength, vĭs, vis (*pl.*, vĭrĕs).
Strive for, stŭdĕrĕ, u.
Strong, rōbustŭs, ā, ūm.
Studious, stŭdĭōsŭs, ā, ūm.
Study, stŭdĕrĕ, u.
Successive, continuŭs, ā, ūm.
Succor, succurrĕrĕ, rr, rs.
Sue for, pĕtĕrĕ, ĭv (i), ĭt.
Sulla, Sullā, ae.
Summer, aestās, ātĭs.
Sun, sōl, sōlĭs, m.
Supper, coĕnā, ae.
Supplicate, exōrārĕ, āv, āt.
Surface, sŭperficiĕs, ĕi.
Surpass, sŭpĕrārĕ, āv, āt.
Surrender, dĕdĕrĕ, dĭd, dĭt.
Surround, circumdārĕ, dĕd, dāt; cin-
 gĕrĕ, x, ct.

Sustain, sustĭnĕrĕ, u, tent.
Swear, jŭrārĕ, āv, āt.
Swift, vĕlox, ocĭs.
Swim, nārĕ, āv, āt.
Sword, glādiŭs, ĭ.

T.

Take, cǎpĕrĕ (iŏ), cep, capt.
Take care, cǎvĕrĕ, cǎv, caut.
Take care of, cŭrārĕ, āv, āt.
Take by storm, expŭgnārĕ, āv, āt
 (550).
Talent, ĭngĕniŭm, ĭ.
Tarentum, Tǎrentŭm, ĭ.
Tarquin, Tarquĭniŭs, ĭ.
Teach, dōcĕrĕ, u, doct.
Tear in pieces, dilāniārĕ, āv, āt.
Ten, dĕcĕm.
Tenth, dĕcĭmŭs, ā, ūm.
Terms, condĭtiŏ, ōnĭs.
Terrify, terrĕrĕ, u, ĭt.
Than, quā̄m.
Thanks, grātĭae, ārŭm.

Thanksgiving, supplicātiŏ, ōnĭs.
That (*pron.*), illĕ, ā, ūd; is, eā, ĭd;
 istĕ, ā, ūd.
That (*conj.*), ūt, *with comp.* (469),
 quō.
That not, quōmĭnŭs, quĭn.
The entire, tōtŭs, ā, ūm (113, R.).
Theft, furtŭm, ĭ.
There, ĭbĭ.
Therefore, ergŏ, ĭtāquĕ, ĭdeŏ, ĭgĭtŭr.
Thing, rĕs, rĕi.
Think, pŭtārĕ, āv, āt; *think about*,
 cŏgĭtārĕ, āv, āt; *think little of*
 parvĭ aestĭmārĕ, āv, āt.
Third, tertĭŭs, ā, ūm.
Thirst, sitĭrĕ, ĭv, ĭt.
This, hĭc, haec, hōc.
Thou, you, tŭ, tuĭ.
Thousand, millĕ.
Threaten, impendĕrĕ.
Three, trĕs, triā.
Through, pĕr.
Tibur, Tibŭr, ūrĭs.
Till, cŏlĕrĕ, u, cult.
Time, tempŭs, ōrĭs.
Timid, tĭmĭdŭs, ā, ūm.
To, ād, ĭn (*with acc.*).
To death, cōpĭtŭs.
Too much, nimĭŭs, ā, ūm.
Top, the top, summŭs, ā, ūm; *agree-*
ing with the noun, as, summĭs
mons, the top of the mountain.
Torture, exercĭciārĕ, āv, āt.
Touch, tangĕrĕ, tĕtig, tact.
Towards, ergā (*with acc.*).
Tower, arx, cis; turris, ĭs (*acc.*, ĕm
 or ĭm, *abl.* ĕ or ĭ).
Traitor, prŏdĭtŏr, ōrĭs.
Tranquil, tranquillŭs, ā, ūm.
Treachery, treason, prŏdĭtiŏ, ōnĭs.
Treaty, foedŭs, ĕrĭs.
Tree, arbŏr, ōrĭs, f.
Trojan, Trojānŭs, ā, ūm.
True, vĕrŭs, ā, ūm.
Truly, vĕrŏ.
Truth, vĕrŭm, ĭ.
Try, tentārĕ, āv, āt.
Tullia, Tullĭā, ae.
Turn, convert, convertĕrĕ, t, s.
Turn back, revertĕrĕ, t, s.
Twelve, duŏdĕcĭm.
Twenty, vĭgĭntĭ.

Two, duō, duae, duó.
Two hundred, dūcentī, ae, ā.
Two years, space of two years, bien-
 niūm.

U.

Uncertain, incertūs, ā, ūm (550).
Uncover, āpērīrē, ru, rt.
Understand, intelligērē, lex, lect.
Uninjured, incōlūmis, ē.
Unknown, incōgnītūs, ā, ūm.
Unlearned, indoctūs, ā, ūm.
Unnecessary, sūpervacuūs, ā, ūm.
Unwilling, invitūs, ā, ūm.
Unworthy, indignūs, ā, ūm.
Use, v., ūtī, ūs.
Useful, ūtilīs, ē.
Useless, inūtilīs, ē.
Utility, ūtilitās, ātis.

V.

Valuable, prētiosūs, ā, ūm.
Value, aestimārē, āv, āt.
Very (before a noun or pronoun,
sometimes), ipsē, ā, ūm.
Very fond, stūdiōsūs, a, um.
Very much or great, plūrīmūs, ā,
 ūm; *very many*, plūrimī.
Victim, victimā, ae.
Victoria, Victōriā, ae (*prop. name*).
Victory, victōriā, ae.
Violate, violārē, āv, āt; rumpērē,
 rūp, rupt.
Virgin, virgō, imīs.
Virtue, virtūs, ūtis.
Voice, vox, vocīs.

W.

Wage (as war), gērērē, gess, gest;
 inferrē, tūl, lāt.
Walk, ambulārē, āv, āt.
Wall, mūrūs, ī.
War, bellūm, ī.
Warn, admōnārē, u, ūt.
Wash, lāvārē, lāv, laut, and lāvāt.
Wasp, crābrō, ōnis.
Waste, perdērē, did, dīt.
Watch, vīgīlārē, āv, āt.
Water, āquā, ae.
Wax (as moon), crescērē, crēv, crēt.
Way, viā, ae; itēr, itinērīs, n.

Wealthy, locuplēs, ētis.
Weep, flērē, ēv, ēt.
Weep for, lūgērē, lux.
Well, bēnē.
When, quūm.
Whence, undē.
Wherefore, quārē.
Whether, utrūm; *whether—or, in*
double questions, utrūm—ān, *in*
other cases, seu—seu; sīvē—sivē.
While, dūm; *while walking*, intēr
 ambulandūm.
White, candidūs, ā, ūm.
Who, which, that (rel.), quī, quae,
 quōd.
Who, which, what? (interrog.), quīs,
 quae, quīd? (*subs.*); quī, quae,
 quōd? (*adj.*).
Whole, tōtūs, ā, ūm (113, R.).
Wicked, imprōbūs, ā, ūm.
Wife, conjux, gīs.
Winter, hiems, īs.
Wisdom, sāpientiā, ae.
Wise, sāpiens, tīs.
Wish, vellē, vōlu.
With, cūm.
Within, intrā (*with acc.*).
Without, sinē (*with abl.*).
Witness, spectārē, āv, āt (543).
Wolf, lūpūs, ī.
Woman, mūliēr, īs.
Wonderful, mirābilīs, ē.
Wool, lānā, ae.
Word, verbūm, ī.
Work, ōpūs, ēris.
World, mundūs, ī; orbīs terrārū.
Worthy, dignūs, ā, ūm.
Would that, ūtinām, o sī.
Wound, s., vulnūs, ēris.
Wound, v., vulnērārē, āv, āt.
Wretched, mīsēr, ā, ūm.
Write, scribērē, ps, pt.
Wrong, v., violārē, āv, āt.

Y.

Year, annūs, ī.
Yesterday, hesternō diē.
Yet, tāmēn.
You, tū, tuī.
Your, thy, tuū, ū, ūm; *your, vestār,*
 trā, trām.

ARNOLD'S FIRST LATIN BOOK;

REMODELLED AND REWRITTEN, AND ADAPTED TO THE OLLENDORFF METHOD OF INSTRUCTION.

By ALBERT HARKNESS, A. M.

12mo. 302 pages. Price 75 Cents.

This book is designed to take the place of the American edition of Arnold's First and Second Latin Book, issued five years since. Under the labors of the present author, the work of Arnold has undergone radical changes, and been adapted to the Ollendorff improved method of instruction, and is superior to the former work in its plan and all of the details of instruction.

From N. W. BENEDICT, Prin. Grammar School, Rochester University.

"Having thoroughly examined Harkness' Arnold's First Latin Book, and watched the results of its introduction into several seminaries of learning in this section of the State, I can safely say that I consider it superior to any of the primary Latin works with which I am acquainted. Its plan and execution are such as to render correct instruction in the Latin language, in its initiatory steps, practicable to a greater number of teachers than have hitherto been accustomed to instruct in that department, and such as to lay open the practical benefits of such instruction to very many who have not heretofore been thought to be in circumstances to derive any benefit from attention to classical studies."

From W. E. TOLMAN, Instructor in Providence High School.

"I have used 'Arnold's First Latin Book, remodelled and rewritten,' by Mr. Harkness, in my classes during the past year, and I find it to be a work not so much 'remodelled and rewritten' as one *entirely new*, both in its plan and in its adaptation to the wants of the beginner in Latin."

From J. R. BOISE, Professor of Ancient Languages, in Michigan University.

"I have examined your First Book in Latin, and am exceedingly pleased both with the plan and execution. I shall not fail to use my influence towards introducing it into the classical schools of this State."

From GEORGE CAPRON, Principal of Worcester High School.

"I have examined the work with care, and am happy to say that I find it superior to any similar work with which I am acquainted. I shall recommend it to my next class."

From MR. A. P. S. STEWART, Principal of Holton High School.

"The clearness with which principles are stated and illustrated, and especially the syntax in which the nature and the relations of the different elements of a sentence are more fully developed than in works of similar kind, have struck me as being among its chief excellencies. It is better suited to the wants of beginners than any other work with which I am acquainted."

From PROF. GAMMELL, of Brown University.

"The book seems to me, as I anticipated it would be, a valuable addition to the works now in use among teachers of Latin in the schools of the United States, and for many of them it will undoubtedly form an advantageous substitute."

SECOND LATIN BOOK ;

Comprising a Historical Latin Reader, with Notes and Rules for Translating, and an Exercise Book, developing a complete Analytical Syntax, in a Series of Lessons and Exercises, involving the Construction, Analysis, and Reconstruction of Latin Sentences.

By ALBERT HARKNESS, A. M.

12mo. 361 pages. Price 90 Cents.

This work is designed as a sequel to the author's "First Latin Book," which has acquired a wide reputation. It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the essential structure of the Latin language from its simplest to its most expanded and modified form.

From J. F. RICHARDSON, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature, Rochester University.

"I have examined it with considerable care, and I am glad to see this addition to the valuable series of classical works now issued by the Appletons.

"A faithful study of the work upon the plan indicated by the author, will greatly facilitate the student's acquisition of the general principles of the language, and prepare him for the intelligent reading of the Latin classics."

From PROF. HAVEN of the University of Michigan

"I am fully convinced that a faithful use of the First and Second Latin Books will place the pupil securely on the right track, and facilitate, more than any other elementary treatises with which I am acquainted, his thorough understanding of the language.

"I heartily wish that all students preparing for this college would study both books thoroughly."

From PROF. ANDERSON, of Lewisburg University, Pa.

"A faithful use of the work would diminish the drudgery of the student's earliest studies, and facilitate his progress in his subsequent course. I wish the work a wide circulation."

From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.

"It seems to me, to carry on most successfully the method pursued in the First Book. Though brief, it is very comprehensive, and combines judicious and skilfully formed exercises with systematic instruction."

From REV. J. A. SPENCER, D. D., late Prof. Latin and Oriental Languages in Burlington College, N. J.

"The present volume appears to me to carry out excellently the system on which the late lamented Arnold based his educational works; and in the selections for Reading, the Notes and Rules for Translating, the Exercises in Translating into Latin, the Analyses, &c., I think it admirably adapted to advance the diligent student, not only rapidly, but soundly, in an acquaintance with the Latin language."

From J. J. OWEN, D. D. Prof. of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy, New York.

"This Second Latin Book gives abundant evidence of the Author's learning and tact to arrange, simplify, and make accessible to the youthful mind the great and fundamental principles of the Latin language. The book is worthy of a place in every classical school, and I trust will have an extensive sale."

DR. ARNOLD'S CLASSICAL SERIES.

FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR. Revised and carefully corrected by J. A. SPENCER, D. D.
1 vol. 12mo Price 75 Cents.

PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. Revised and carefully corrected by J. A. SPENCER, D. D.
1 vol. 12mo. Price \$1 00.

CORNELIUS NEPOS, with Practical Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. Carefully Revised, with Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Prof. of Latin in Univ. of New York. New Edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, &c. 1 vol. 12mo. Price \$1 00.

FIRST GREEK BOOK, on the Plan of the First Latin Book. Revised by J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 1 vol. 12mo. Price 75 cents.

PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION. Revised by J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 1 vol. 12mo. Price 75 Cents.

SECOND PART TO THE ABOVE. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. Price 75 Cents.

GREEK READING BOOK. New Edition, Revised and Corrected. Containing the substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; and copious selections from Greek authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes and a Lexicon. Revised by J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 1 vol. 618 pages. 12mo. Price \$1 25.

In the preparation of the above series, by thorough classical scholars and practical teachers, the utmost care has been devoted to a complete revision of Dr. Arnold's works; they have been rearranged and improved in many important respects, and made to conform, in an eminent degree, to the Ollendorff plan of acquiring languages.

From N. W. BENEDICT, A. M., Prin. Grammar School, Rochester University.

"I am specially pleased with the kind of help afforded in his *Cornelius Nepos*, which is such as to give the student a critical and accurate understanding of the text, and at the same time to stimulate his mind to greater exertion to apprehend the beauties of the language. The plan is designed and well adapted to make the knowledge obtained the property of the scholar."

From R. B. TSCHUDI, Prof. of Ancient Languages, Norfolk, Va.

"After having in constant use since their first appearance, Arnold's Series of both Latin and Greek books, my experience enables me confidently to pronounce upon their unrivalled merits. I state without fear of contradiction, that, even with greater labor and pains on the part of the teacher, equal progress cannot be made without, as can be with them. And they succeed admirably in awakening an interest in the pupil, and in making a lasting impression upon his memory. It is an application of Bacon's principle for forming an accurate man."

CICERO DE OFFICIIS.

CHIEFLY SELECTED AND TRANSLATED FROM ZUMPT AND
BONNELL, ENGLISH NOTES

BY THOMAS A. THACHER, OF YALE COLLEGE.

1 Vol. 12mo. 194 pages. Price 90 Cents.

In this edition, a few historical notes have been introduced in cases where the Dictionaries in common use have not been found to contain the desired information; the design of which being to aid the learner in understanding the contents of the treatises, the thoughts and connections of thought of the author, and to explain the grammatical difficulties, and inculcate a knowledge of grammatical principles. The Editor has aimed throughout to guide rather than to carry the learner through difficulties; requiring of him more study, in consequence of his help, than he would have devoted to the book without it.

"The text is beautifully and correctly printed. The notes are neat, well arranged, and appropriate."—*Presbyterian*.

"A very elegant edition of this well-known work."—*The Wisconsin*.

SELECT ORATIONS OF M. TULLIUS CICERO.

WITH NOTES, FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

BY E. A. JOHNSON,

Professor of Latin in the University of New York.

1 Vol. 12mo. Price \$1.

This edition of Cicero's Select Orations possesses some special advantages for the student which are both new and important. It is the only edition which contains the improved text that has been prepared by a recent careful collation and correct deciphering of the best manuscripts of Cicero's writings. It is the work of the celebrated Orelli, together with that of Madvig and Klotz, and has been done since the appearance of Orelli's complete edition. The Notes, by Prof. Johnson, of the New York University, have been chiefly selected, with great care, from the best German authors, as well as the English edition of Arnold.

From THOMAS CHASE, Tutor in Latin in Harvard University.

"An edition of Cicero like Johnson's has long been wanted; and the excellence of the text, the illustrations of words, particles, and pronouns, and the explanation of various points of construction and interpretation, bear witness to the Editor's familiarity with some of the most important results of modern scholarship, and entitle his work to a large share of public favor."

THE WORKS OF HORACE.

WITH ENGLISH NOTES, FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY J. L. LINCOLN,

Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University.

1 Vol. 12mo. Price \$1 25.

The text of this edition is that of Orelli, in the edition of 1843-44. The comparatively few readings of Orelli, not adopted, are given at the foot of the page. The most important various readings are also given in foot-notes. The method pursued in the preparation of the Notes is the same as that followed by the Editor in his edition of Livy, except so far as it is modified by the character of the present author, and by the fact that his writings belong to a later stage in a course of classical studies. While the grammatical study of the language has been kept in view, it has been a cherished object to take advantage of the means so variously and richly furnished by Horace for promoting the literary culture of the student.

From an article written by PROF. BÄYER of the University of Heidelberg, and Published in the Heidelberg Annals of Literature.

"There are already several American editions of Horace, intended for the use of schools; of one of these, which has passed through many editions, and has also been widely circulated in England, mention has been formerly made in this journal; but that one we may not put upon equality with the one now before us, inasmuch as this has taken a different stand-point, which may serve as a sign of progress in this department of study. The Editor has, it is true, also intended his work for the use of schools and has sought to adapt it in all its parts to such a use; but still, without losing sight of this purpose, he has proceeded throughout with more independence. In respect to the text, all the demands which could be made of the editor are fully met, and yet the limits observed which are necessary in a school edition. In an Introduction which precedes the text, the Editor gives a sketch of the Life of Horace, with a critique of his writings, which is well suited to the purpose of the whole work, and is, in our view, entirely satisfactory. In the preparation of Notes, the Editor has faithfully observed the principles laid down in his Preface; the explanations of the poet's words commend themselves by a compressed brevity, which limits itself to what is most essential, and by a sharp precision of expression; and references to other passages of the poet, and also to grammars, dictionaries, &c., are all wanting; all other learned apparatus is omitted, on grounds which need no lengthened explanation. The entire outward execution of the work merits special and thankful acknowledgment."

From GEORGE TICKNOR, LL. D., Boston.

"I received a few days since a copy of Horace you have lately published. As I have found leisure since, I have read with your notes some of the portions I best like, and have been struck with the correctness of your readings, and the condensed, faithful learning and good taste of the commentary. It seems to me that you have succeeded uncommonly well in your purpose."

C. JULIUS CÆSAR'S
COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR.

WITH ENGLISH NOTES, CRITICAL AND EXPLANATORY; A LEXICON, GEOGRAPHICAL AND HISTORICAL INDEXES, &c.

BY REV. J. A. SPENCER, D. D.

1 Vol. 12mo. with Map. Price \$1 00.

The text which Mr. Spencer has adopted is that of Oudenorp, with such variations as were suggested by a careful collation of the leading critics of Germany. The notes are as they should be, designed to aid the labors of the student, not to supersede them. In addition to these, the volume contains a sketch of the life of Cæsar, a brief Lexicon of Latin words, an Historical and Geographical Index, together with a Map.

BEZA'S LATIN TESTAMENT.

1 Vol. 12mo. Price 75 Cents.

The Editor of the present edition has exerted himself to render it, by superior accuracy and neatness, worthy of patronage, and the publishers flatter themselves that the pains bestowed will insure for it preference over other editions.

SHORT AND COMPREHENSIVE GREEK GRAMMAR.

BY J. T. CHAMPLIN.

Professor of Latin in Waterville College.

12mo. Price 75 Cents.

From REV. MR. ANDERSON, New Orleans.

"I believe the author has fully accomplished what he proposes in his preface. To those wishing to study Greek, I am satisfied he has presented a book which will much tend to simplify the study to beginners—and at the same time without being too voluminous, presents as lucid and full an exposition of the principles of the language, as can be contained within so small a compass.

"The examples under the different declensions are full and well selected; so as fully to illustrate the principles on which the rules are founded.

"His arrangement of Anomalous Verbs we think excellent, and not loaded with superfluous matter.

TACITUS' GERMANIA AND AGRICOLA.

WITH NOTES FOR COLLEGES

BY W. S. TYLER,

Professor of the Greek and Latin Languages in Amherst College

1 Vol. 12mo. Price 62½ Cents.

It has been the endeavor of the Editor to bring down the literature of Tacitus to the present time, and embody in a small compass the most valuable labors of such recent German editors as Grimm, Günther, Gruber, Kiessling, Dronke, Roth, Rapeti, and Walther

From PROF. FELTON, of Harvard University.

"I am much pleased with the book, and you seem to me to have discharged the duty of editor with becoming judgment and skill."

From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.

I have found the book in daily use with my class of very great service, very practical, and well suited to the wants of students. I am very much pleased with the Life of Tacitus, and the Introduction, and indeed with the literary character of the Book throughout. We shall make the book a part of our Latin course."

From PROF. PACKARD, of Bowdoin College.

"I have given it such examination as my time would permit, and shall introduce it this year into my course of study."

THE HISTORIES OF TACITUS.

WITH NOTES FOR COLLEGES.

BY W. S. TYLER.

1 Vol. 12mo. Price \$1 25.

'The editor has at least endeavored to avoid the fault, which Lord Bacon says 'is over usual in annotations and commentaries, viz., to blanch the obscure places, and discourse upon the plain.' The indexes have been prepared with much labor and care, and, it is believed, will add materially to the value of the work."—*Extract from Preface.*

From PROF. THACHER, Newton Theological Seminary.

"The notes appear to me to be even more neat and elegant than those on the 'Germania and Agricola.' They come as near to such notes as I would be glad to write myself on a classic as almost any thing that I have yet seen."

From RE. C. H. TAYLOR, Principal of Philips' Academy.

"I have examined parts of it with some care, and am very highly pleased with it. The Essay on the style of Tacitus, the Preliminary Remarks, the judicious and scholarly Notes afford all the assistance which the student can wish for the study of this somewhat difficult author."

G R E E K O L L E N D O R F F .

BY A. C. KENDRICK, D. D.

Professor of Greek Language and Literature in the University of Rochester.

Vol. 12mo. 371 pages. Price \$1.

This is a progressive exhibition of the principles of the Greek Grammar, designed for beginners in Greek, and as a book for exercises in academies and colleges.

There is probably no elementary treatise upon the Greek language extant which has, in so short a time, secured so large a share of the confidence, popular favor, and patronage of educators throughout the country, as this work. It seems exactly fitted for the purpose intended, viz., by instilling into the minds of the young the more simple elementary principles of the language, thus to prepare them for a more extensive and familiar acquaintance with the ancient Greek Classics.

We think the author pursues the only philosophical method of teaching this language."—(*Dover*) *Morning Star*.

"It is an excellent publication, and is admirably adapted to the purposes in view."—*New Orleans Bee*.

XENOPHON'S MEMORABILIA OF SOCRATES.

BY PROF. ROBBINS, MIDDLEBURY COLLEGE.

1 Vol. 12mo. 420 pages. Price \$1.

The text of the present edition is that of Kuhner, with occasional alterations in pointing and things of minor importance. Where it appeared desirable, various readings have been given in the notes, and reasons for the one adopted briefly stated.

From PROF. HARRISON, *University of Virginia*.

"The Notes contain in much detail, the grammatical and other explanations, which it would be convenient for the learner to have placed before him, instead of having to refer to various books. I have no doubt that the notes are very carefully prepared, and in accordance with the best authorities."

From PROF. A. S. PACKARD, *Bowdoin College*.

"I have examined the work somewhat, and am pleased with it, as being creditable to our American scholarship. I shall recommend it to my classes."

From PROF. WM. H. ALLEN, *Girard College*.

"It is a very handsome and valuable edition of that admirable work, with copious notes, index, and a biography of Socrates, and it will prove highly acceptable to classical scholars and teachers."

From PROF. GEO. BURROWES, *Lafayette College*.

"I have been highly gratified, on examining the work, not only with the way in which it is got up, but with the editorial labor which is such as to leave nothing to be desired by the student, and makes this edition a truly valuable addition to our classical literature."

KUHNER'S GREEK GRAMMAR.

TRANSLATED BY PROFESSORS EDWARDS AND TAYLOR.

One Large 12mo Volume. Price \$1 50.

This is a most concise and comprehensive grammar, based on a profound and accurate knowledge of the genius and principles of Greek grammar, arranged in a clear and satisfactory manner. The fulness of illustration, correctness of the principles advanced, as well as the perfect analysis to which the forms of language are subjected, are all that could be desired in a work of this kind.

From Professor of Greek in Williams College.

"I think highly of your edition of Kuhner's Greek Grammar. We have nothing in use among us that is equal to it as a comprehensive, systematic analysis of the language. In many respects the translators have much improved this edition, and I should be glad to have its pages more generally consulted by our young men."

From Prof. Geo. Burrowes, Lafayette College.

"I beg to tender you my thanks for the copy of the new revised edition of Kuhner's Greek Grammar, translated by Edwards and Taylor. The high character of this book is fully established, and the friends of Greek literature are under obligations as well to the publishers as to the translators for making it accessible to the students of our country."

From Prof. J. T. Champlin, Waterville College.

"Please accept my thanks for a copy of your new edition of Kuhner's Greek School Grammar. The work is greatly improved both in form and substance in this edition. In its improved dress, there can be no doubt that it deserves and will take the very first place among Greek grammars for consultation and reference."

EXERCISES IN GREEK GRAMMAR.

ADAPTED TO THE FIRST BOOK OF XENOPHON'S ANABASIS.

BY JAMES R. BOISE,

Professor in Mich. University.

1 Vol. 12mo. 185 pages Price 75 Cents.

These Exercises consist of easy sentences, similar to those in the Anabasis, in having the same words and constructions, and are designed by frequent repetition to make the learner familiar with the language of Xenophon. Accordingly, the chapters and sections in both are made to correspond.

VOLTAIRE'S HISTORY OF CHARLES XII.,

KING OF SWEDEN.

CAREFULLY REVISED.

BY PROF. GABRIEL SURENNE.

12mo. 262 pages. Price 50 Cents.

This is a neat edition of this valuable history, published under the direction of a distinguished scholar, and well adapted for the use of schools in this country.

"To students of the French language this edition of a history which has not been excelled, in its class, which is like Southey's *Life of Nelson*, in our own tongue, will be particularly acceptable."—*Evening Post*.

A NEW FRENCH MANUAL,
AND TRAVELLER'S COMPANION.

BY G. SURENNE.

16mo. 287 pages. Price 62 Cents.

This work is intended as a Guide for the Tourist, and a Class-book for the Student.

"An excellent work, and one which to a good student will prove most valuable. It seems to be complete in all its departments and arrangements, and to take the place of a French teacher, as far as that may be; giving every aid in pronunciation. We cheerfully recommend it to all engaged in this study."—*Educator Magazine*.

FRENCH CONVERSATION AND DIALOGUES.

BY GUSTAVE CHOUQUET.

1 Vol. 18mo. 200 pages. Price 50 Cents.

This volume contains conversations on ordinary subjects, designed to familiarize the student with the idiomatic expressions which most frequently occur in French conversation. It is very complete, clear, and distinct.

YOUNG LADIES' GUIDE TO FRENCH COMPOSITION.

BY GUSTAVE CHOUQUET.

1 Vol. 12mo. 297 pages. Price 75 Cents.

This useful work consists of two parts; the first part being a General Treatise on Rhetoric, which, as an elementary work, has decided merits.

The second part contains great variety of subjects, with full and well-chosen exercises, with selections from the best and purest French writers.

SERIES OF FRENCH READERS.

NEW ELEMENTARY FRENCH READER. Being an Introduction to the French Language, containing Fables, Select Tales, Remarkable Facts, Amusing Anecdotes, &c. With a Dictionary of all the Words translated into English. By M. DE FIVAS, Member of Several Literary Societies. 16mo. Price 50 Cents.

This little work is used as a Class-Book in nearly all schools in this country where the elements of French are taught. The selection comprises a great variety of subjects, mostly of a lively and familiar style. The Phrases will serve as elements in conversation, and enable the student to read with facility other French books.

THE CLASSIC FRENCH READER; for Advanced Students; Or, Beauties of the French Writers, Ancient and Modern. By ALAIN DE FIVAS. With a Vocabulary, French and English, of all the Words and Idioms contained in the work, by J. L. JEWETT. 1 Vol. 12mo. Price \$1 00.

This work embraces selections from the writings of all the literary periods, and specimens of the various styles of the most distinguished writers, and unites the advantage of a Reader, Lexicon, and Grammar. Occasional Notes are added, which explain and enhance the value of the work. The work has met with universal favor and patronage.

ROEMER'S FIRST FRENCH READER. With an Analytical Study of the French Language, a Treatise on French Poetry, and a Dictionary of Idioms, Peculiar Expressions, &c. Price \$1 00.

This Treatise on the Analytical Study of the French Language, and on the Rules of French Versification, evinces a true and discriminating philological taste. The Selections, from agreeable French literature, are made with great judgment, and by bringing the affinities of the English and French directly in view, the acquisition of the French is made comparatively easy.

ROEMER'S SECOND FRENCH READER. Illustrated with Historical, Geographical, Philosophical, and Philological Notices. Price \$1 25.

This is one of the most original, ingenious, and useful manuals published, and will prove a treasure to the student of the French.

As a compilation of elegant extracts, this volume is second to none; they are marked by good taste and sound judgment, many of them being perfect gems of French literature.

SERIES OF FRENCH READERS

ROWAN'S MODERN FRENCH READER. Selections from modern French authors, adapted to young persons learning the French. With a Vocabulary of the new and difficult words and idiomatic phrases adopted in modern French literature. By J. L. JEWETT. 1 Vol. 12mo. Price 75 Cents.

The chief object of this work is to afford the means of making the youth acquainted with the French language as it is spoken at the present day, and as presented by modern French authors. The selections are choice and unexceptionable.

"The selections are made with great taste and judgment, and the moral of all is good."
—*Com. Advertiser.*

"We do not know any book of the kind better calculated for a reading-book for classes in our schools."—*Boston Atlas.*

SELECT POETRY FOR YOUNG PERSONS. By MADAME H. COUTAN. 12mo. Price \$1 00.

A collection of some of the most choice, beautiful, and interesting poetical productions of the French language.

"It is a very charming collection of some of the sweetest and most graceful verses in the French Language. We were hardly aware, till we looked over this book, that so many distinguished French authors had contributed to a class of productions, so peculiarly suited to readers of an early age."—*Evening Post.*

DRAMATIC FRENCH READER. Being a selection, in progressive order of the chief Dramatic Works of the French language, with notes to facilitate the pupil's progress. By Prof. A. G. COLLOT. 1 Vol. 12mo. \$1 00.

This volume is made up of fourteen complete dramas, taken from the works of the best and purest writers among which are Corneille, Racine, Molière, and Prior.

"It will undoubtedly prove a valuable assistant to those who are engaged in obtaining a knowledge of the language it is intended to teach."—*Courier & Enquirer.*

NEW FRENCH TESTAMENT. According to the Translation of J. OSTERVALD'S Stereotyped Edition, printed by the Edinburgh University. 32mo. Price 38 Cents.

OLLENDORFF'S FRENCH GRAMMARS.

OLLENDORFF'S FIRST LESSONS IN LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE FRENCH LANGUAGE. Being an Introduction to Ollendorff's larger grammar. Third edition, Enlarged and Rewritten by G. W. GREENE, Instructor in Brown University. 16mo. Price 50 Cents.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE FRENCH LANGUAGE. With an Appendix, containing the Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers, and full Paradigms of the Regular and Irregular, Auxiliary, Reflective, and Impersonal Verbs. By J. L. JEWETT. 1 Vol. 12mo. Price \$1 00.

☞ KEY TO EXERCISES. Separate Volume. Price 75 Cents.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE FRENCH LANGUAGE. With the Lessons divided into Sections of a proper length for daily tasks, and numerous corrections, additions, and improvements, suitable for this country; to which is added Value's System of French Pronunciation; his Grammatical Synopsis, a new Index, and Short Models of Commercial Correspondence. By V. VALUE. 1 Vol. 12mo. Price \$1 00.

☞ KEY TO EXERCISES. Separate Volume. Price 75 Cents.

OLLENDORFF'S COMPANION TO NEW METHOD OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE FRENCH LANGUAGE. Containing Dialogues and a Vocabulary. By GEO. W. GREENE. 12mo. Price 75 Cents.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD FOR FRENCHMEN TO LEARN TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. By CHARLES BADOIS. 12mo. Price \$1 00.

☞ KEY TO EXERCISES. Separate Volume. Price 50 Cents.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD FOR SPANIARDS TO LEARN TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE FRENCH LANGUAGE. Containing Progressive, Oral, and Written Exercises, with an Appendix, containing Rules of Syntax and rules for the formation and conjugation. By THEODORE SIMONNE. 12mo. Price \$2 00.

☞ KEY TO EXERCISES. Separate Volume. Price 75 Cents.

Few school manuals have been so highly approved, and used for series of years with such universal acceptance, as the Ollendorff Series, for the acquirement of the French Language; that system being now almost universally acknowledged to be the only correct one.

A NEW AND ENLARGED EDITION, IN LARGE TYPE
STANDARD
PRONOUNCING FRENCH DICTIONARY.

IN TWO PARTS.

I. FRENCH & ENGLISH. II. ENGLISH & FRENCH.

BY GABRIEL SURENNE, F. A. S. E.

1 large Vol. 12mo. 974 pages. Price \$1 50.

The First Part of this well-known and universally popular work contains: Words in common use; Terms connected with science; Terms belonging to the fine arts; and

Four thousand historical names; Four thousand geographical names; and

Upwards of eleven thousand newly published terms.

The pronunciation of every word according to the French Academy and the most eminent lexicographers and grammarians; also,

More than seven hundred critical remarks, in which the various methods of pronouncing employed by different authors, are investigated, and compared with each other.

The Second Part contains: A copious list of English words and expressions, with their proper pronunciation; also, a critical and comprehensive system of French pronunciation.

"Every student of the French language, and every person of taste who is fond of reading French, and wishes to become proficient in that tongue, should possess this comprehensive but complete dictionary. It embraces all the words in common use, and those in science and the fine arts, historical and geographical names, etc., with the pronunciation of every word according to the French Academy, together with such critical remarks as will be useful to every learner. It is published in a form of extreme condensation, and yet contains so full a compilation of words, definitions, etc., as scarcely to leave any thing to be desired."—*New York Observer*.

AN ABRIDGMENT OF THE ABOVE.

1 Vol. 16mo. 556 pages. Price 90 Cents.

It is confidently anticipated that this volume will prove not only a useful auxiliary to the student, but also a convenient Pocket Companion to the traveler, wherever the French language is spoken. A vocabulary of proper names accompanies the work.

"M. Surenne is a very prominent professor in Edinburgh; and all who use his books may rely on having before them the purest style of the French tongue."—*Christian Intelligencer*.

SPIERS & SURENNE'S
FRENCH & ENGLISH, AND ENGLISH & FRENCH
PRONOUNCING DICTIONARY.

EDITED BY G. P. QUACKENBOS, A. M.

1 large Vol. 8vo., of about 1,300 pp., neat type, fine paper, and strong binding. Price \$3 00.

THE PUBLISHERS CLAIM FOR THIS WORK,

- 1st. That it is a revision and combination of (SPIERS') the best defining, and of (SURENNE'S) the most accurate pronouncing dictionary extant.
- 2d. That in this work the numerous errors in Spiers' dictionary have been carefully and faithfully corrected.
- 3d. That some three thousand new definitions have been added.
- 4th. That numerous definitions and constructions are elucidated by grammatical remarks and illustrative clauses and sentences.
- 5th. That several thousand new phrases and idioms are embodied.
- 6th. That upwards of twelve hundred synonymous terms are explained, by pointing out their distinctive shades of meaning.
- 7th. That all of the irregular parts of the verbs are inserted in alphabetical order, so that one reference gives the mood, tense, person, and number.
- 8th. That some four thousand new French words, connected with science, art, and literature, have been added.
- 9th. That every French word is accompanied by an as exact pronunciation as can be represented by corresponding English sounds, and vice versa.
- 10th. That it contains a full vocabulary of the names of persons and places, mythological and classical, ancient and modern.
- 11th. That it is the most complete, accurate, and reliable dictionary of these languages published.

From WASHINGTON IRVING.

"As far as I have had time to examine it, it appears to me that Mr. Quackenbos, by his revision, corrections and additions, has rendered the Paris Edition, already so excellent, the most complete and valuable lexicon now in print."

From WM. H. PRESCOTT.

"In the copiousness of its vocabulary and its definitions, and in the great variety of idiomatic phrases and synonymes, it far exceeds any other French and English dictionary with which I am acquainted."

A MANUAL OF THE FRENCH VERBS.

COMPRISING

The formation of persons, tenses, and moods of the regular and irregular verbs; a practical method to trace the infinitive of a verb out of any of its inflections; models of sentences in their different forms; and a series of the most useful idiomatical phrases. The whole illustrated by numerous examples.

BY T. SIMONNE.

12mo. 108 pages. Price 50 Cents.

This little work has been prepared with a view to simplify the French verbs to beginners in the study of that language, and contains a series of simple but certain rules for forming the numerous inflections of the verb, and for enabling the student to trace out the root from any of the inflections. Its value is further increased by a list of idiomatic phrases, and models of sentences peculiar to the French language."—*Hartford Courant*.

"The student of French will find this little volume an invaluable auxiliary in acquiring a knowledge of the most elegant of languages. It is emphatically *multum in parvo*—containing within the limits of 108 pages, more that is useful, than is to be found in many a folio. It will save the learner a vast amount of unnecessary labor."—*Pennsylvanian*.

"A book that should be in the hands of every French student. It comprises the formation of persons, tenses, and moods of the regular and irregular verbs; a practical method to trace the infinitive of a verb out of any of its inflections; models of sentences in their different forms, and a series of the most useful idiomatical phrases. The whole is illustrated by numerous examples. The student who has experienced the difficulty of tracing the root from the inflections of the verb, will readily conceive that this work must be a great help in his studies."—*Daily Capitol*.

THE STANDARD EDITION.

THE ADVENTURES OF TELEMAQUE

BY FENELON.

EDITED BY GABRIEL SURENNE

1 vol. 18mo. 50 cents.

The above is a neat and convenient School Edition of this work of world-wide celebrity.

SERIES OF SPANISH READERS.

MANDEVILLE'S PRIMARY READER, in Spanish. 16mo. Price 25 ¢

MANDEVILLE'S SECOND READER, in Spanish. 12mo. Price 50 ¢

THE SPANISH TEACHER AND COLLOQUIAL PHRASE-BOOK.
An Easy and Agreeable Method of Acquiring a Speaking Knowledge
of the Spanish Language. By Prof. BUTLER. A new edition.
1 Vol. 18mo. Price 50 cents.

THE ELEMENTARY SPANISH READER AND TRANSLATOR.
By M. F. TOLON. Price 63 Cents.

This is one of the best elementary Spanish Readers, not only for the purposes of self-instruction, but also as a class-book for schools, that has ever been published. The contents are varied in style, including didactic, descriptive, colloquial, and poetical. Also, containing a full Vocabulary. The orthography conforms to that established by the Royal Academy of Madrid.

AN EASY INTRODUCTION TO SPANISH CONVERSATION. Con-
taining all that is necessary to make a rapid progress in it. Parti-
cularly designed for persons who have little time to study, or are
their own instructors. By MARIANO VELASQUEZ DE LA CADENA. 18mo.
100 pages. Price 38 cents.

A NEW SPANISH READER. Consisting of Extracts from the works
of the most approved Authors in Prose and Verse, arranged in pro-
gressive order, with especial reference to those who wish to obtain
a practical knowledge of the Language. With Notes explanatory
of the Idioms and most difficult constructions, and a Copious Voca-
bulary. By M. VELASQUEZ DE LA CADENA. 12mo. Price \$1 25.

CERVANTES' DON QUIXOTTE, in Spanish. New Edition, revised
corrected by DON EUGENIO DE OCHOA. 1 Vol. 12mo. Price \$1 25.

This edition is enriched by the observations, comments, and illus-
trations of Bowle, Pellicer, and other learned authors, whose study
and research have facilitated the understanding of this masterly pro-
duction.

OLLENDORFF'S

SPANISH, GERMAN, AND ITALIAN GRAMMARS.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE AND SPEAK THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. To which is added a Systematic Outline of the different Parts of Speech, their Inflection and Use, with full Paradigms, and a complete List of the 1r regular Verbs. By GEORGE J. ADLER, A. M., Professor of German in the University of the City of New York. One volume. 12mo Price \$1 00.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD FOR GERMANS TO LEARN TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. Arranged and adapted to Schools and Private Academies. By P GANDS. 12mo. Price \$1 00.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE SPANISH LANGUAGE. With an Appendix, containing a brief but comprehensive Recapitulation of the Rules as well as of all the Verbs, both Regular and Irregular, so as to render their use easy and familiar to the most ordinary capacity. Together with Practical Rules for Spanish Pronunciation, and Models of Social and Commercial Correspondence. The whole designed for Young Learners and persons who are their own Instructors. By M. VELAZQUEZ and T. SIMMONE, Professors of the Spanish and French Languages. 12mo. 560 pages. \$1 50.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD FOR SPANIARDS TO LEARN TO READ, WRITE AND SPEAK THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. With a Treatise on Pronunciation, and an Appendix, by Palenzuela and Carenno. 12mo Price \$2 00.

 KEYS TO EACH OF THE ABOVE, in Separate Volumes. Price 75 Cents each.

OLLENDORFF'S PRIMARY LESSONS IN LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE. Introductory to the larger Grammar. By GEO. W. GREENE. 18mo. Price 50 c

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE. With Additions and Corrections By FELIX FORESTI. Price \$1 50.

 KEY TO THE EXERCISES, in Separate Volumes. Price 75 c

D. APPLETON & CO., PUBLISHERS.

GRAMMAR OF THE SPANISH LANGUAGE

WITH A HISTORY OF THE LANGUAGE AND PRACTICAL EXERCISES,

BY M. SCHELE DE VERE,

OF THE UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA.

12mo. 273 Pages. Price \$1.

No Student of the Castilian dialect should be without this grammar. It possesses several advantages over most other Spanish grammars published in this country, not excepting the "System" of Ollendorff. It is at once concise and comprehensive—*multum in parvo*—containing nothing that is redundant, yet omitting nothing that is essential to the learner. The conjugations are so admirably arranged as no longer to present that stumbling-block which has frightened so many from the study of one of the richest and most majestic of languages.—*Philadelphia Daily News.*

BOOK-KEEPING. IN SPANISH.

BY C. C. MARSH.

8vo. Price \$1 50.

FIRST BOOK IN ORTHOGRAPHY. IN SPANISH

12mo. Price 50 cents.

Designed for the use of Primary Schools.

FIRST BOOK IN GEOGRAPHY.

Illustrated by 100 engravings and 14 maps. By Asa Smith, A. M. Translated and adapted to the use of schools in South America, Mexico, and the West Indies.

BY THEMISTOCLES PAREDES,

SECRETARY OF LEGATION OF NEW GRANADA

Just Ready.

GESENIUS' HEBREW GRAMMAR.

Fourteenth Edition, as revised by Dr. E. RODIGER. Translated by T. J. CONANT, Professor of Hebrew in Madison University, N. Y. With the Modifications of the Editions subsequent to the Eleventh, by Dr. DAVIES, of Stepney College, London. To which are added a Course of Exercises in Hebrew Grammar, and a Hebrew Chrestomathy, prepared by the Translator.

12mo. 447 pages. Price \$1 25.

SEOANE'S EDITION OF NEUMAN AND BARETTI'S
SPANISH & ENGLISH, AND ENGLISH & SPANISH
PRONOUNCING DICTIONARY.

NEWLY COMPOSED FROM THE SPANISH DICTIONARIES OF THE SPANISH ACADEMY, TER-
REROS AND SALVA, AND FROM THE ENGLISH DICTIONARIES OF
WEBSTER, WORCESTER, AND WALKER.

BY MARIANO VELAZQUEZ DE LA CADENA.

Professor of the Spanish Language and Literature in Columbia College.

One large Vol. 8vo. of more than 1,300 pp., neat type, fine paper, and
strong binding. Price \$5.

In the revision of this work more than eight thousand words
idioms, and familiar phrases have been added.

Also, the technical terms most frequently used in the arts, and in
chemistry, botany, medicine, and natural history, as well as nautical
and mercantile terms and phrases,—most of which are not found in
other dictionaries.

And also, many Spanish words used only in American countries
which were formerly dependencies of Spain.

The pronunciation of the Castilian language is so clearly set forth in
this dictionary, as to render it well-nigh impossible for any person who
can read English readily, to fail of obtaining the true sounds of the
Spanish words at sight.

It also contains in both languages the exact equivalents and corre-
spondents of the words in general use, both in their literal and meta-
phorical acceptations.

The irregularities of the verbs in Spanish and English are here, for
the first time, given in full, in their alphabetical order.

The work likewise contains a grammatical synopsis of both lan-
guages, arranged for ready and convenient reference.

From His Excellency VALENTINE CANEDO, Captain General of Cuba.

"The Pronouncing Dictionary of the Spanish and English Languages, by Don Ma-
riano Velazquez de la Cadena, published by you, having been examined, and its merits
acknowledged, I have ordered it to be recommended by the Board of Education."

ABRIDGMENT OF THE ABOVE.

12mo. 888 pages. Price \$1 75.

712



Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: July 2006

Preservation Technologies

A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 037 376 5

